

PCT

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification ⁶ : C07D 255/02, 487/04, C07F 9/60, 9/6509		A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 95/07269
			(43) International Publication Date: 16 March 1995 (16.03.95)
<p>(21) International Application Number: PCT/AU94/00538</p> <p>(22) International Filing Date: 12 September 1994 (12.09.94)</p> <p>(30) Priority Data: PM 1161 10 September 1993 (10.09.93) AU PM 6446 24 June 1994 (24.06.94) AU</p> <p>(71) Applicant (<i>for all designated States except US</i>): NARHEX AUSTRALIA PTY. LTD. [AU/AU]; Suite 5, 27 Old Barrenjoey Road, Avalon, NSW 2107 (AU).</p> <p>(72) Inventor; and (75) Inventor/Applicant (<i>for US only</i>): GROBELNY, Damian [PL/AU]; 11 Longfield Court, Watsonia North, VIC 3087 (AU).</p> <p>(74) Agent: SPRUSON & FERGUSON; G.P.O. Box 3898, Sydney, NSW 2001 (AU).</p>			
<p>(81) Designated States: AM, AT, AU, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, HU, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LK, LR, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MN, MW, NL, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SI, SK, TJ, TT, UA, US, UZ, VN, European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG), ARIPO patent (KE, MW, SD).</p> <p>Published <i>With international search report.</i> <i>Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i></p>			

(54) Title: **POLAR-SUBSTITUTED HYDROCARBONS**

(57) Abstract

The invention relates to retroviral protease inhibitors of the general formula (I): $W-(A)_n-B-(A^*)_m-V$ where W, A, B, A*, V, n and m are as defined herein, including related prodrugs of general formula (I) comprising a solubilising group which is labile *in vivo*.

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AT	Austria	GB	United Kingdom	MR	Mauritania
AU	Australia	GE	Georgia	MW	Malawi
BB	Barbados	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BE	Belgium	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BF	Burkina Faso	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BG	Bulgaria	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BJ	Benin	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BR	Brazil	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BY	Belarus	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
CA	Canada	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CF	Central African Republic	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SD	Sudan
CG	Congo	KR	Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CH	Switzerland	KZ	Kazakhstan	SI	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LI	Liechtenstein	SK	Slovakia
CM	Cameroon	LK	Sri Lanka	SN	Senegal
CN	China	LU	Luxembourg	TD	Chad
CS	Czechoslovakia	LV	Larvia	TG	Togo
CZ	Czech Republic	MC	Monaco	TJ	Tajikistan
DE	Germany	MD	Republic of Moldova	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
DK	Denmark	MG	Madagascar	UA	Ukraine
ES	Spain	ML	Mali	US	United States of America
FI	Finland	MN	Mongolia	UZ	Uzbekistan
FR	France			VN	Viet Nam
GA	Gabon				

POLAR-SUBSTITUTED HYDROCARBONS

TECHNICAL FIELD

The invention relates to certain hydrocarbon derivatives bearing polar substituents and their use in the inhibition of retroviral proteases, for example in the 5 treatment of HIV viral infections such as acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS). The invention also relates to processes for preparing such hydrocarbon derivatives bearing polar substituents, to pharmaceutical compositions comprising them and to methods for the treatment or prophylaxis of retroviral infections. The invention also relates to a process for enhancing the water-solubility of a pharmaceutical or veterinary substance.

10

BACKGROUND ART

Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) is a pathogenic retrovirus causing AIDS and its related disorders. The development of antiviral chemotherapy against AIDS has been the subject of an intense research effort since the discovery of HIV. (For a recent review on molecular targets for AIDS therapy see Mitsua et al, *Science*, 1990, pp 1533-1544). The HIV Proteases (HIV PR), and aspartyl proteases, were first suggested as a potential target for AIDS therapy by Kramer et al. (*Science* 231, 1580 (1986)). Since that time the potential usefulness of HIV PR inhibitors as effective agents in treatment of AIDS has been widely recognized (for a review of the HIV PR as a therapeutic target see Tomaselli et al. *Chimica Oggi*, May 1991, pp 6-27 and Huff J.R., *J. Med. Chem.* 34, 20 2314-2327 (1991)). Of the classical transition state mimics for aspartyl proteases, the hydroxyethylene, dihydroxyethylene, hydroxyethylamine and phosphinic acid isosteres appear to provide the greatest affinity for HIV PR. Many inhibitors of HIV PR have been shown to have an antiviral activity at concentrations in the nanomolar range in the different cell systems and are described as such in the patent literature.

25

OBJECTS OF THE INVENTION

It is an object of the present invention to provide compounds useful as retroviral protease inhibitors. It is another object of the present invention to provide pharmaceutical compositions comprising compounds useful for the treatment or prophylaxis of retroviral infections. It is a further object of the present invention to provide methods for the 30 treatment or prophylaxis of retroviral infections, in particular AIDS. Other objects of the present invention are to provide processes for preparing compounds useful as retroviral protease inhibitors, and processes for enhancing the water-solubility of pharmaceutical or veterinary substances, in particular retroviral protease inhibitors.

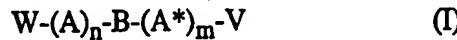
SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

35 The invention provides compounds which are useful as inhibitors of retroviral proteases, particularly aspartyl proteases and more particularly HIV proteases, and which are effective in treating conditions characterized by unwanted activity of these enzymes, in particular acquired immune deficiency syndrome.

In the following description of the invention, the teaching of each of the publications mentioned is incorporated herein by reference.

A first embodiment of the invention is directed to compounds of the general formula (I) or pharmaceutically acceptable salts or prodrugs thereof:

5



wherein

W is selected from the group consisting of R_1-X- , R_1-X^*- , $-Y^*$, $-CN$, $-N=CR_5R_5^*$, $-C(R_5)=NR_3$, $-C(R_5)=NOR_3$, $-C(NR_3R_4)=NR_5^{**}$, $-C(D)OR_3$, $-C(D)SR_3$ and $-C(D)NR_3R_4$, wherein

10

Y^* is as defined below,

R_1 , R_3 and R_4 are independently selected from the group consisting of R_6 and a solubilising group Px which is labile *in vivo*, wherein R_6 is selected from the group consisting of

hydrogen,

15

R_{20} , wherein R_{20} is selected from the group consisting of

optionally substituted $(C_1-C_{18})alkyl$,

optionally substituted $(C_2-C_{18})alkenyl$,

optionally substituted $(C_2-C_{18})alkynyl$,

optionally substituted $(C_3-C_{18})cycloalkyl$,

optionally substituted $(C_3-C_{18})cycloalkyl(C_1-C_{18})alkyl$,

optionally substituted $(C_3-C_{18})cycloalkyl(C_2-C_{18})alkenyl$,

optionally substituted $(C_3-C_{18})cycloalkyl(C_2-C_{18})alkynyl$,

optionally substituted $(C_6-C_{24})aryl$,

optionally substituted $(C_6-C_{24})aryl(C_1-C_{18})alkyl$,

optionally substituted $(C_6-C_{24})aryl(C_2-C_{18})alkenyl$,

optionally substituted $(C_6-C_{24})aryl(C_2-C_{18})alkynyl$,

optionally substituted $(C_1-C_{18})acyl$,

optionally substituted heterocyclic,

optionally substituted heterocyclic $(C_1-C_{18})alkyl$,

optionally substituted heterocyclic $(C_2-C_{18})alkenyl$, and

optionally substituted heterocyclic $(C_2-C_{18})alkynyl$

20

$C(D)OR_{21}$,

$C(D)SR_{21}$,

$C(D)NR_{21}R_{22}$,

$C(NR_{21})R_{22}$,

$C(NR_{21})OR_{22}$, and

25

$C(NR_{21})NR_{22}R_{23}$, wherein R_{21} , R_{22} and R_{23} independently are selected from hydrogen and R_{20} as previously defined, or

30

35

R₂₁ and R₂₂ together, or R₂₂ and R₂₃ together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below,

5 or R₃ and R₄, when present, together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below,

D is selected from O and S,

X is selected from the group consisting of Y, S(O) and S(O)₂ wherein Y is as defined below,

10 X* is selected from the group consisting of NR₁₀, O and S, wherein R₁₀ has the meaning of R₆ as previously defined,

R_{1*} is selected from the group consisting of R₁ as previously defined, P(O)(OR₇)R₈, S(O)_zOR₇ and S(O)_zNR₇R₈, wherein z is 1 or 2 and R₇ and R₈ independently have the meaning of R₂₀ as previously defined, or R₇ and R₈ together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below,

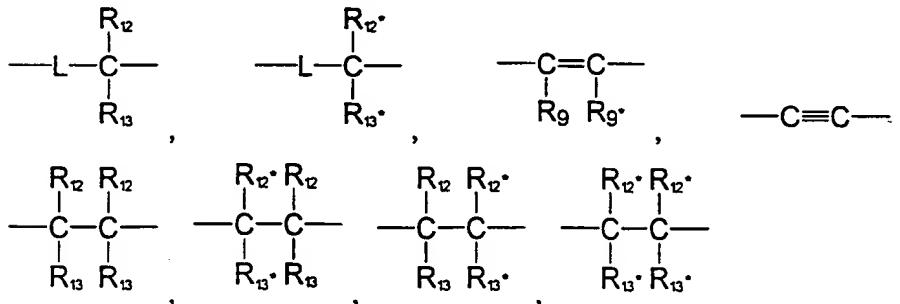
15 R₅ and R_{5*} are independently selected from the group consisting of H, CF₃, C(D)OR₁₀₃, C(D)SR₁₀₃ C(D)NR₁₀₃R₁₀₄ and R₂₀ as previously defined, wherein D is as previously defined, and wherein R₁₀₃ and R₁₀₄ have the meaning of R₆ as previously defined, or R₁₀₃ and R₁₀₄ together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below, and

20 R_{5**} is selected from hydrogen and R₂₀ as previously defined;

n is 0-6;

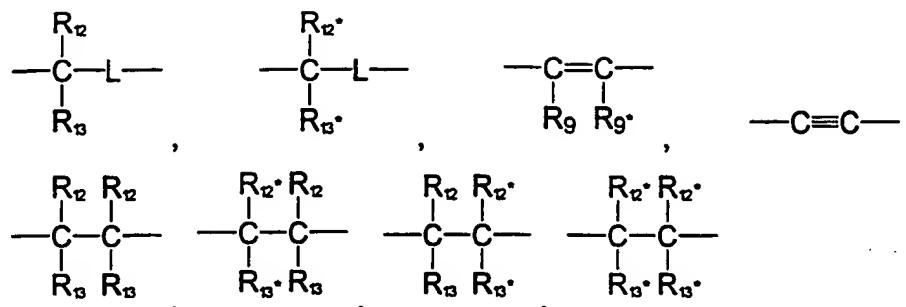
25 m is 0-6 and n+m ≥ 1;

A at each occurrence is independently selected from the group consisting of



and a residue of a naturally occurring or synthetic amino acid;

30 A* at each occurrence is independently selected from the group consisting of



and a residue of a naturally occurring or synthetic amino acid; wherein

5 R_{12}^* , R_{13}^* , R_9 and R_9^* are independently selected from the group consisting of F, Cl, Br, I and R_5 as previously defined,

R_{11} has the meaning of R_1 as previously defined,

R_{12} has the meaning of R_6 as previously defined,

10 R_{13} is selected from the group consisting of

F , Cl, Br, I, R_6 as previously defined, and R_{200} , wherein R_{200} is selected from the group consisting of

CN,

NCO,

NCS,

OCN,

15 SCN,

N_3 ,

OR_{60} ,

SR_{60} ,

$NR_{60}R_{61}$,

20 $D_1C(D_2)R_{60}$,

$D_1C(D_2)D_3R_{60}$,

$D_1C(D_2)NR_{60}R_{61}$,

$NR_{60}C(D_1)R_{61}$,

$NR_{60}C(D_1)D_2R_{61}$,

25 $NR_{60}C(D_1)NR_{61}R_{62}$,

$NR_{60}OR_{61}$,

amidino,

guanidino,

$S(O)R_{60}$,

30 $S(O)_2D_1R_{60}$,

$S(O)NR_{60}R_{61}$,

$S(O)_2NR_{60}R_{61}$,

$D_1S(O)R_{60}$,

D₁S(O)₂OR₆₀,

D₁S(O)NR₆₀R₆₁,

D₁S(O)₂NR₆₀R₆₁,

P(D₁)(D₂R₆₀)R₆₁,

P(D₁)(D₂R₆₀)D₃R₆₁,

P(D₁)(D₂R₆₀)NR₆₁R₆₂,

P(D₁)R₆₀R₆₁,

D₁P(D₂)(D₃R₆₀)R₆₁,

D₁P(D₂)(D₃R₆₀)D₄R₆₁,

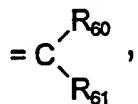
D₁P(D₂)(D₃R₆₀)NR₆₁R₆₂,

D₁P(D₂)R₆₀R₆₁,

NR₆₀NR₆₁R₆₂ and

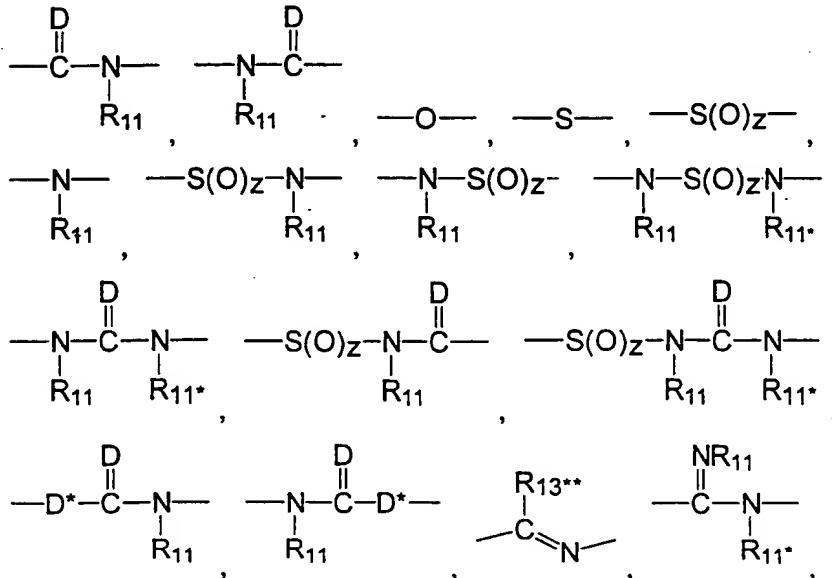
ONR₆₀R₆₁, wherein D₁, D₂, D₃ and D₄ independently have the meaning of D as previously defined, and R₆₀, R₆₁ and R₆₂ independently have the meaning of R₆ as previously defined or any two or more of R₆₀, R₆₁ and R₆₂ form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below,

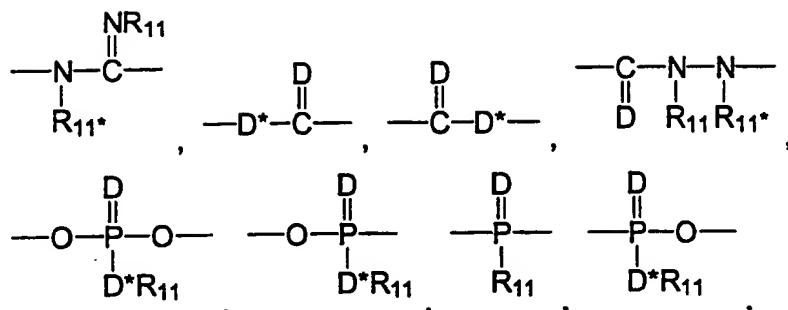
or R₁₂ and R₁₃ together are selected from the group consisting of =O, =S,



20 =NOR₆₀, =NR₆₀, -OQO-, -SQS- and -SQO-, wherein Q is optionally substituted (C₁-C₁₂)alkylidene as defined below and R₆₀ is as previously defined, and

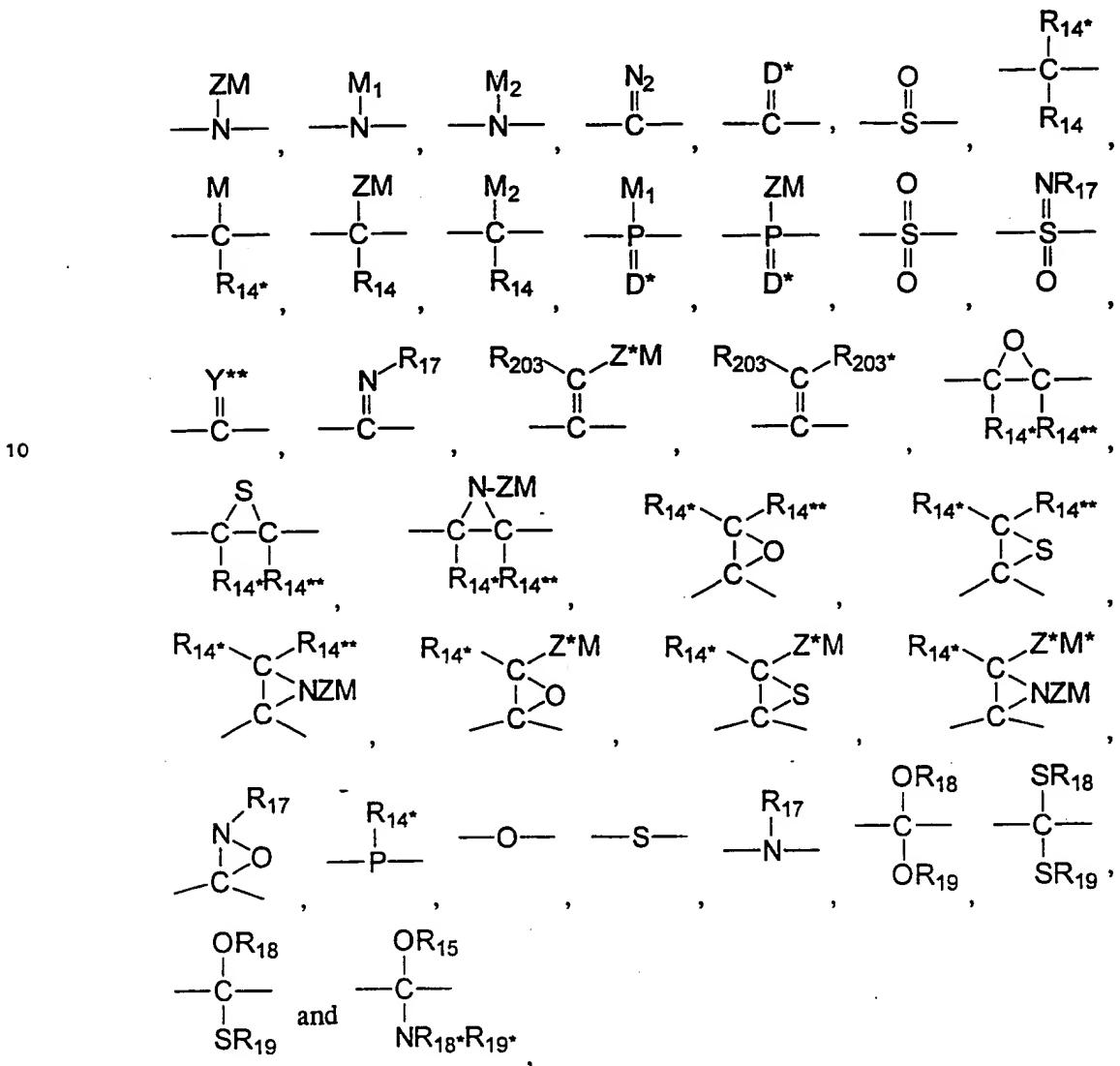
L is selected from the group consisting of a bond,





-CH₂- and -CH₂-CH₂-, wherein R₁₁ and D are as previously defined, R₁₁* and D* have the meaning of R₁₁ and D respectively, and z is 1 or 2;
 R₁₃** is F, Cl, Br, OR₆₀ or NR₆₀R₆₁ wherein R₆₀ and R₆₁ are as previously defined,
 5

B is selected from the group consisting of



wherein R_{203} and R_{203*} independently have the meaning of R_6 as previously defined,

R_{14*} and R_{14**} are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen,

5 R_{20} as previously defined,

CF_3 ,

$C(D^*)OR_{40}$,

$C(D^*)SR_{40}$ and

10 $C(D^*)NR_{40}R_{41}$, wherein R_{40} and R_{41} independently have the meaning of R_{21} and R_{22} as previously defined or R_{40} and R_{41} form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below,

R_{14} is selected from the group consisting of F, Cl, Br, I, R_{14*} as previously defined and R_{200} as previously defined,

15 R_{17} and R_{17*} independently have the meaning of R_6 as previously defined, D^* has the meaning of D as previously defined,

Z is a saturated or unsaturated (C_2 - C_4)alkylidene radical which is optionally substituted with one or more groups selected from F, Cl, Br, I and R_{14*} as previously defined,

20 Z^* is a saturated or unsaturated (C_1 - C_3)alkylidene radical which is optionally substituted with one or more groups selected from F, Cl, Br, I and R_{14*} as previously defined,

M_1 is selected from the group consisting of OR_{15} , SR_{15} and $NR_{15}R_{17}$, wherein R_{15} is selected from the group consisting of:

25 Px as previously defined, and

R_6 as previously defined, and

a glycosyl radical which is derived from a synthetic or naturally occurring aldose, ketose, deoxyaldose, deoxyketose, aminoaldose, aminoketose or an oligosaccharide thereof, and

30 R_{17} is as previously defined, or

R_{15} and R_{17} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below,

35 M and M^* are independently selected from the group consisting of M_1 as previously defined, OCN , SCN , YR_2 , Y^* and $N=CR_{30}R_{31}$, wherein Y , Y^* and R_2 are as defined below, and R_{30} and R_{31} independently have the meaning of R_{20} as previously defined,

M_2 is selected from the group consisting of R_{14*} as previously defined, $-CR_{30*}=Y^{**}$ and $-CR_{30*}=NR_{17*}$, where Y^{**} is as defined below, R_{30*}

has the meaning of R_{20} as previously defined, and R_{17*} is as previously defined,

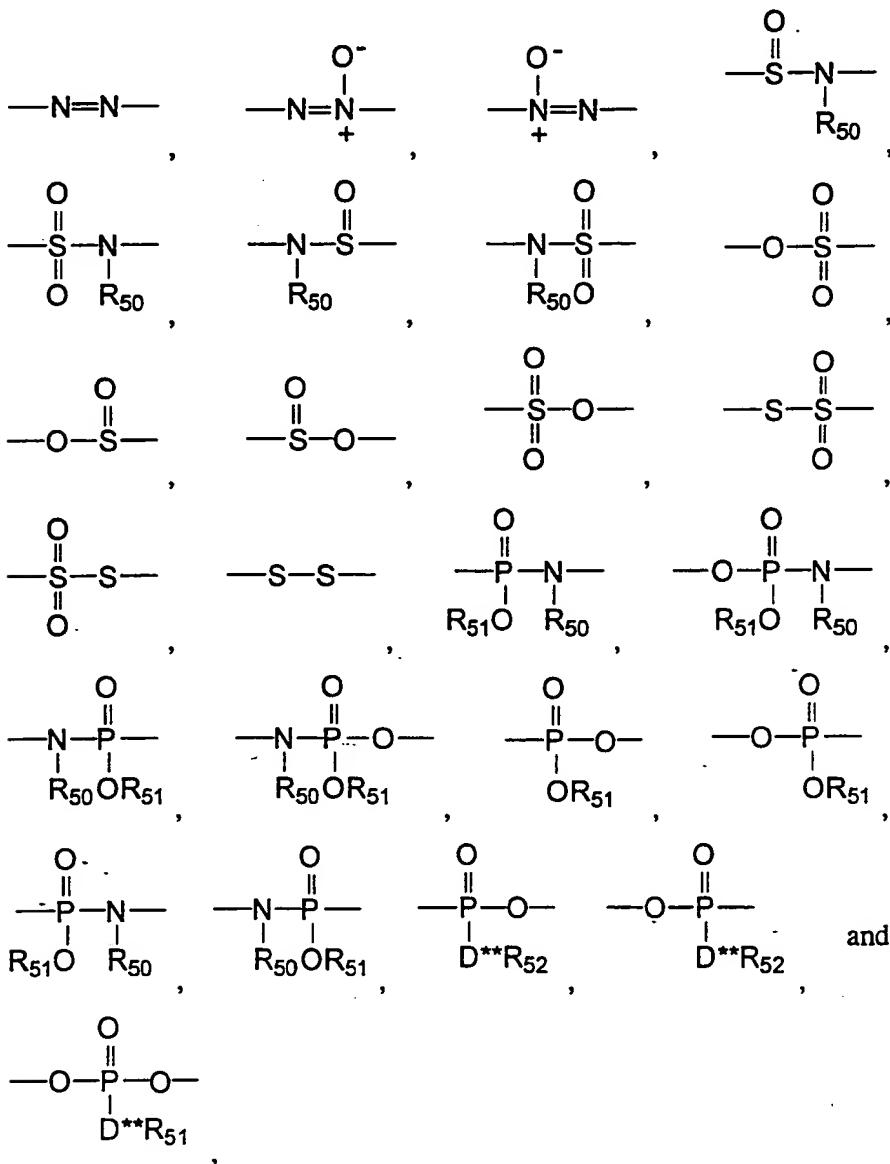
R_{18} and R_{19} independently have the meaning of R_{20} as previously defined or R_{18} and R_{19} together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below, and

R_{18*} and R_{19*} together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below;

V is selected from the group consisting of YR_2 , Y^* and $C(R_{30})=Y^{**}$, wherein

Y is absent or is selected from the group consisting of:

10



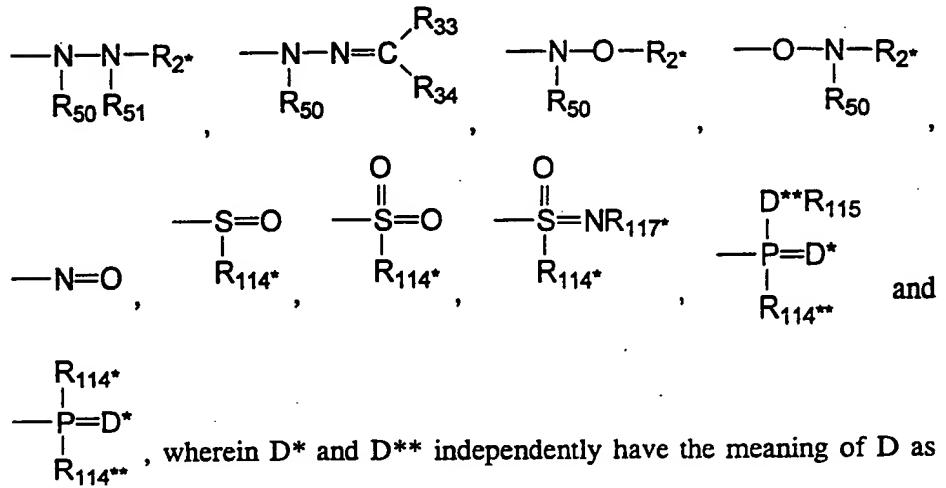
15

wherein D^{**} is selected from the group consisting of a bond, O , S and NR_{50} , R_{50} has the meaning of R_6 as previously defined, R_{51} has the meaning of R_{15} as previously defined and R_{52} has the meaning

of R_{20} as previously defined, or R_{50} and R_{51} , when present, together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below, and

R_2 has the meaning of R_6 as previously defined,

5 Y^* is selected from the group consisting of

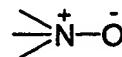


10 R_{114}^* , R_{114}^{**} , R_{15} and R_{17}^* respectively, as previously defined; R_{50} and R_{51} are as previously defined or R_{50} and R_{51} together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below; R_2^* is selected from the group consisting of R_2 as previously defined, P_x as previously defined, $S(O)_zOR_{120}$ and $S(O)_zNR_{120}R_{121}$, wherein z is 1 or 2; R_{33} and R_{34} are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and R_{20} as previously defined, or R_{33} and R_{34} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below, and R_{120} and R_{121} independently have the meaning of R_{20} as previously defined, or R_{120} and R_{121} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below, R_{30} is as previously defined, and Y^{**} is selected from $=N-NR_{115}R_{117}$ and $=N-OR_{115}$, wherein R_{115} and R_{117} have the meaning of R_{15} and R_6 respectively, as previously defined, or R_{115} and R_{117} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below,

15 R_{114}^* , R_{114}^{**} , R_{15} and R_{17}^* respectively, as previously defined; R_{50} and R_{51} are as previously defined or R_{50} and R_{51} together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below; R_2^* is selected from the group consisting of R_2 as previously defined, P_x as previously defined, $S(O)_zOR_{120}$ and $S(O)_zNR_{120}R_{121}$, wherein z is 1 or 2; R_{33} and R_{34} are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and R_{20} as previously defined, or R_{33} and R_{34} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below, and R_{120} and R_{121} independently have the meaning of R_{20} as previously defined, or R_{120} and R_{121} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below, R_{30} is as previously defined, and Y^{**} is selected from $=N-NR_{115}R_{117}$ and $=N-OR_{115}$, wherein R_{115} and R_{117} have the meaning of R_{15} and R_6 respectively, as previously defined, or R_{115} and R_{117} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below,

20 R_{114}^* , R_{114}^{**} , R_{15} and R_{17}^* respectively, as previously defined; R_{50} and R_{51} are as previously defined or R_{50} and R_{51} together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below; R_2^* is selected from the group consisting of R_2 as previously defined, P_x as previously defined, $S(O)_zOR_{120}$ and $S(O)_zNR_{120}R_{121}$, wherein z is 1 or 2; R_{33} and R_{34} are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and R_{20} as previously defined, or R_{33} and R_{34} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below, and R_{120} and R_{121} independently have the meaning of R_{20} as previously defined, or R_{120} and R_{121} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below, R_{30} is as previously defined, and Y^{**} is selected from $=N-NR_{115}R_{117}$ and $=N-OR_{115}$, wherein R_{115} and R_{117} have the meaning of R_{15} and R_6 respectively, as previously defined, or R_{115} and R_{117} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below,

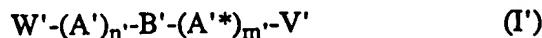
25 R_{114}^* , R_{114}^{**} , R_{15} and R_{17}^* respectively, as previously defined; R_{50} and R_{51} are as previously defined or R_{50} and R_{51} together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below; R_2^* is selected from the group consisting of R_2 as previously defined, P_x as previously defined, $S(O)_zOR_{120}$ and $S(O)_zNR_{120}R_{121}$, wherein z is 1 or 2; R_{33} and R_{34} are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and R_{20} as previously defined, or R_{33} and R_{34} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below, and R_{120} and R_{121} independently have the meaning of R_{20} as previously defined, or R_{120} and R_{121} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below, R_{30} is as previously defined, and Y^{**} is selected from $=N-NR_{115}R_{117}$ and $=N-OR_{115}$, wherein R_{115} and R_{117} have the meaning of R_{15} and R_6 respectively, as previously defined, or R_{115} and R_{117} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below,



and wherein any tertiary amino nitrogen atom may be replaced by the group
 and, wherein any hydroxyl, mercapto or amino group may be protected by a protecting
 group which is labile *in vivo*.

Compounds of the general formula (I) are useful as inhibitors of retroviral
 5 proteases, in particular HIV proteases.

One form of the first embodiment of the invention is directed to compounds of the
 general formula (I') or pharmaceutically acceptable salts or prodrugs thereof:



wherein

10 W' is selected from the group consisting of R₁-X-, R₁-X*-, -Y*, -CN,
 -N=CR₅R₅*, -C(R₅)=NR₃, -C(R₅)=NOR₃, -C(D)OR₃, -C(D)SR₃ and
 -C(D)NR₃R₄, wherein
 Y* is as defined below,
 R₁, R₃ and R₄ are independently selected from the group consisting of R₆ and
 15 a solubilising group Px which is labile *in vivo*, wherein R₆ is selected
 from the group consisting of
 hydrogen,
 R₂₀, wherein R₂₀ is selected from the group consisting of
 optionally substituted (C₁-C₁₈)alkyl,
 20 optionally substituted (C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl,
 optionally substituted (C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl,
 optionally substituted (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl,
 optionally substituted (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl,
 optionally substituted (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl(C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl,
 25 optionally substituted (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl(C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl,
 optionally substituted (C₆-C₂₄)aryl,
 optionally substituted (C₆-C₂₄)aryl(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl,
 optionally substituted (C₆-C₂₄)aryl(C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl,
 optionally substituted (C₆-C₂₄)aryl(C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl,
 30 optionally substituted (C₁-C₁₈)acyl,
 optionally substituted heterocyclic,
 optionally substituted heterocyclic(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl,
 optionally substituted heterocyclic(C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl, and
 optionally substituted heterocyclic(C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl
 35 C(D)OR₂₁,
 C(D)SR₂₁, and

C(D)NR₂₁R₂₂, wherein R₂₁ and R₂₂ independently are selected from hydrogen and R₂₀ as previously defined, or R₂₁ and R₂₂ together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below.

5 or R₃ and R₄, when present, together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below,

D is selected from O and S,

10 X is selected from the group consisting of Y', S(O) and S(O)₂ wherein Y' is as defined below,

X* is selected from the group consisting of NR₁₀, O and S, wherein R₁₀ has the meaning of R₆ as previously defined,

15 R_{1*} is selected from the group consisting of R₁ as previously defined, S(O)_zOR₇ and S(O)_zNR₇R₈, wherein z is 1 or 2 and R₇ and R₈ independently have the meaning of R₂₀ as previously defined, or R₇ and R₈ together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below,

20 R₅ and R_{5*} are independently selected from the group consisting of H, CF₃, C(D)OR₁₀₃, C(D)SR₁₀₃ C(D)NR₁₀₃R₁₀₄ and R₂₀ as previously defined, wherein D is as previously defined, and wherein R₁₀₃ and R₁₀₄ have the meaning of R₆ as previously defined, or R₁₀₃ and R₁₀₄ together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below;

n' is 0-8;

25 m' is 0-8 and n'+m' ≥ 1;

A' and A'* are independently at each occurrence selected from the group consisting of O, S, S(O), S(O)₂, NR₁₁, CR₁₂R₁₃ and CR₁₂*R_{13*}, or two consecutive

groups A'-A' or A''*-A'* are a structural unit selected from $\begin{array}{c} \text{---C=C---} \\ | \quad | \\ \text{R}_9 \quad \text{R}_9^* \end{array}$

—C=C—, wherein

and

30 R_{12*}, R_{13*}, R₉ and R_{9*} are independently selected from the group consisting of F, Cl, Br, I and R₅ as previously defined,

R₁₁ has the meaning of R₁ as previously defined,

R₁₂ has the meaning of R₆ as previously defined,

R₁₃ is selected from the group consisting of

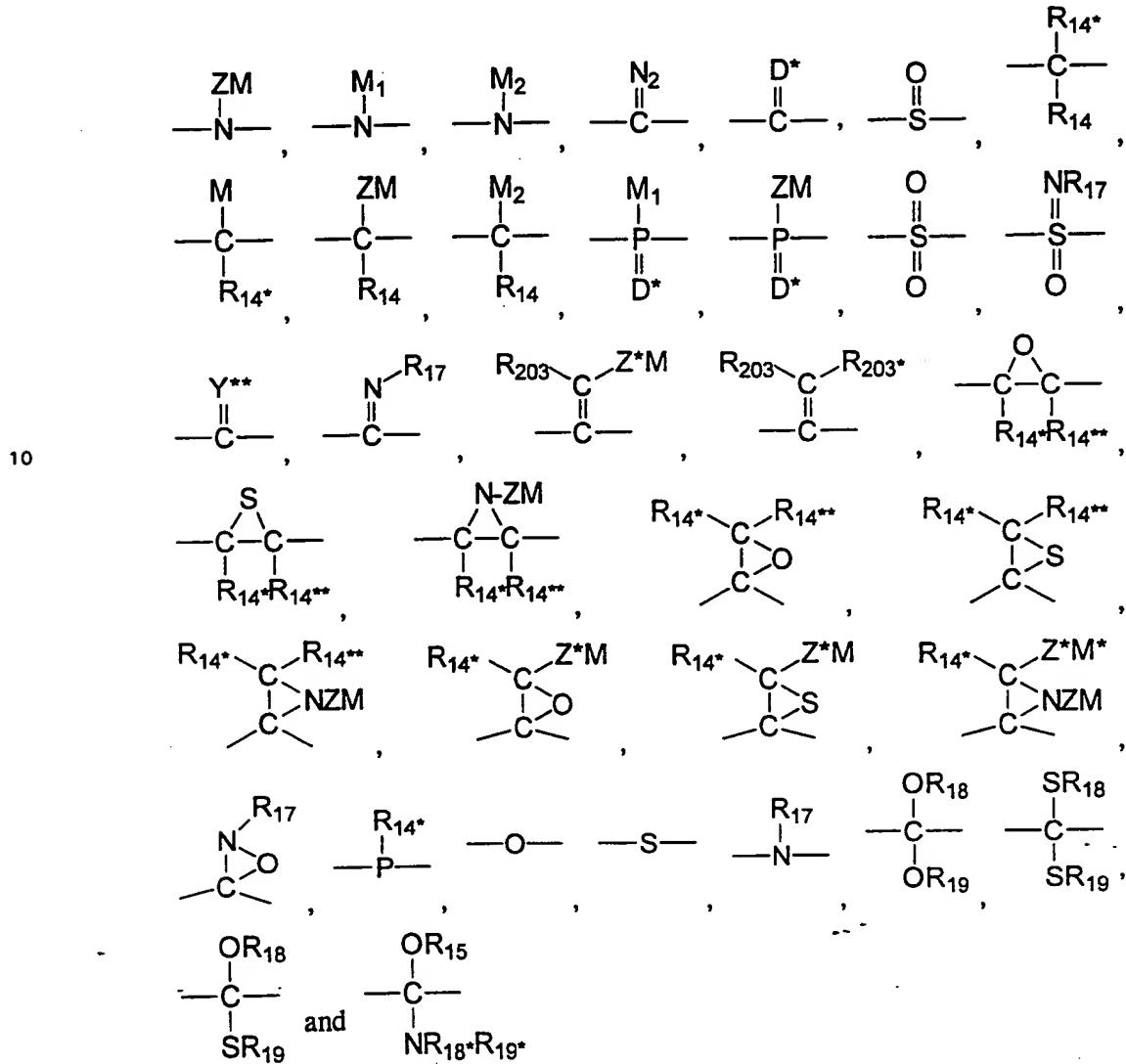
35 F, Cl, Br, I, R₆ as previously defined, and R₂₀₀, wherein R₂₀₀ is selected from the group consisting of

5
CN,
NCO,
NCS,
OCN,
SCN,
N₃,
OR₆₀,
SR₆₀,
NR₆₀R₆₁,
D₁C(D₂)R₆₀,
D₁C(D₂)D₃R₆₀,
D₁C(D₂)NR₆₀R₆₁,
NR₆₀C(D₁)R₆₁,
NR₆₀C(D₁)D₂R₆₁,
NR₆₀C(D₁)NR₆₁R₆₂,
NR₆₀OR₆₁,
amidino,
guanidino,
S(O)R₆₀,
S(O)₂D₁R₆₀,
S(O)NR₆₀R₆₁,
S(O)₂NR₆₀R₆₁,
D₁S(O)R₆₀,
D₁S(O)₂OR₆₀,
D₁S(O)NR₆₀R₆₁,
D₁S(O)₂NR₆₀R₆₁,
P(D₁)(D₂R₆₀)R₆₁,
P(D₁)(D₂R₆₀)D₃R₆₁,
P(D₁)(D₂R₆₀)NR₆₁R₆₂,
P(D₁)R₆₀R₆₁,
D₁P(D₂)(D₃R₆₀)R₆₁,
D₁P(D₂)(D₃R₆₀)D₄R₆₁,
D₁P(D₂)(D₃R₆₀)NR₆₁R₆₂,
D₁P(D₂)R₆₀R₆₁,
NR₆₀NR₆₁R₆₂ and
ONR₆₀R₆₁, wherein D₁, D₂, D₃ and D₄ independently have the
meaning of D as previously defined, and R₆₀, R₆₁ and R₆₂
independently have the meaning of R₆ as previously defined
or any two or more of R₆₀, R₆₁ and R₆₂ form part of a

saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below,

or R_{12} and R_{13} together are selected from the group consisting of $=O$, $=S$, $=NOR_{60}$, $=NR_{60}$, $-OQO-$, $-SQS-$ and $-SQO-$, wherein Q is optionally substituted (C_1-C_{12})alkylidene as defined below and R_{60} is as previously defined;

5 B' is selected from the group consisting of



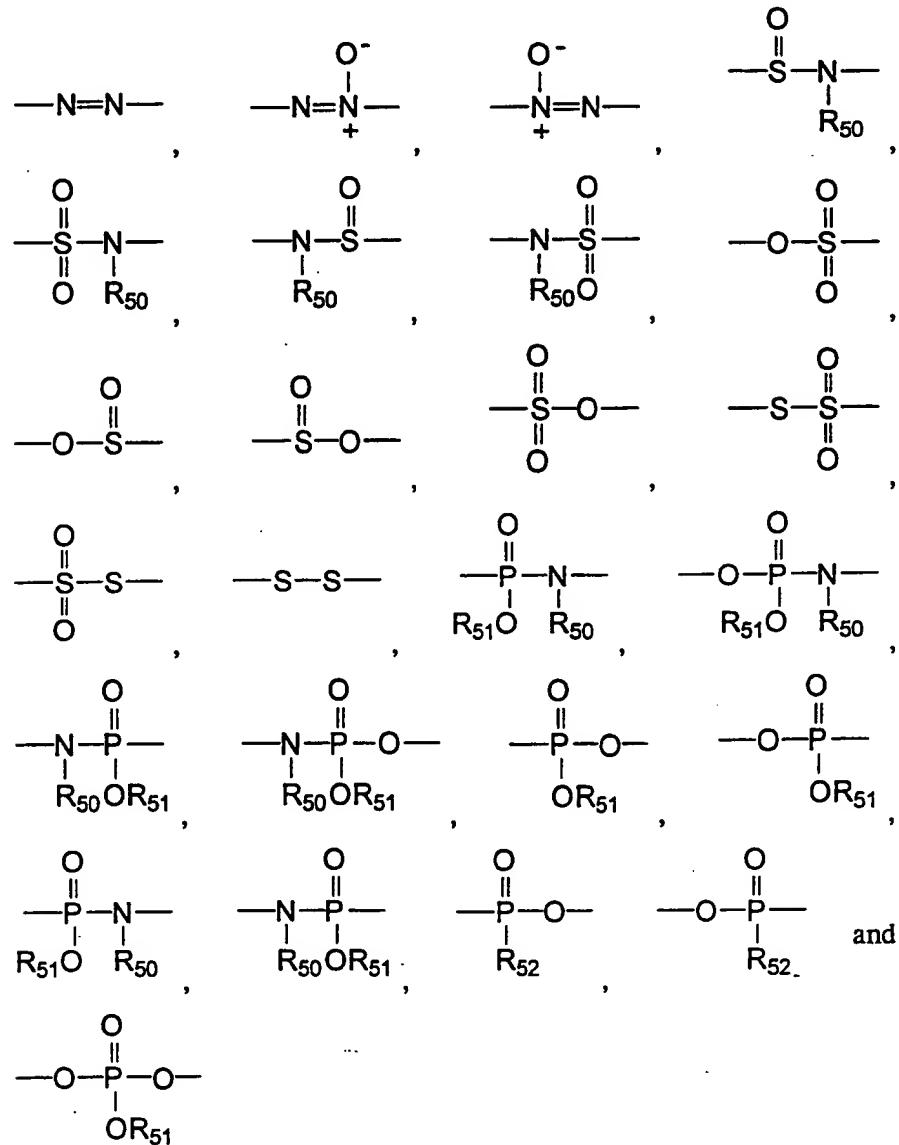
R_{14*} and R_{14**} are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen,

R_{20} as previously defined,

CF_3 ,

C(D*)OR₄₀,
 C(D*)SR₄₀ and
 C(D*)NR₄₀R₄₁, wherein R₄₀ and R₄₁ independently have the meaning of
 5 R₂₁ and R₂₂ as previously defined or R₄₀ and R₄₁ form part of a
 saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as
 defined below,
 R₁₄ is selected from the group consisting of F, Cl, Br, I, R_{14*} as previously
 defined and R₂₀₀ as previously defined,
 R₁₇ and R_{17*} independently have the meaning of R₆ as previously defined,
 10 D* has the meaning of D as previously defined,
 Z is a saturated or unsaturated (C₂-C₄)alkylidene radical which is optionally
 substituted with one or more groups selected from F, Cl, Br, I and R_{14*}
 as previously defined,
 Z* is a saturated or unsaturated (C₁-C₃)alkylidene radical which is optionally
 15 substituted with one or more groups selected from F, Cl, Br, I and R_{14*}
 as previously defined,
 M₁ is selected from the group consisting of OR₁₅, SR₁₅ and NR₁₅R₁₇,
 wherein R₁₅ is selected from the group consisting of:
 Px as previously defined,
 20 R₆ as previously defined, and
 a glycosyl radical which is derived from a synthetic or naturally
 occurring aldose, ketose, deoxyaldose, deoxyketose, aminoaldose,
 aminoketose or an oligosaccharide thereof, and
 R₁₇ is as previously defined, or
 25 R₁₅ and R₁₇ together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused
 ring system as defined below,
 M and M* are independently selected from the group consisting of M₁ as
 previously defined, OCN, SCN, Y'R₂, Y* and N=CR₃₀R₃₁, wherein
 30 Y', Y* and R₂ are as defined below, and R₃₀ and R₃₁ independently
 have the meaning of R₂₀ as previously defined,
 M₂ is selected from the group consisting of R_{14*} as previously defined,
 -CR_{30*}=Y** and -CR_{30*}=NR_{17*}, where Y** is as defined below, R_{30*}
 has the meaning of R₂₀ as previously defined, and R_{17*} is as previously
 defined,
 35 R₁₈ and R₁₉ independently have the meaning of R₂₀ as previously defined or
 R₁₈ and R₁₉ together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic,
 bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below, and
 R_{18*} and R_{19*} together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic
 or fused ring system as defined below;

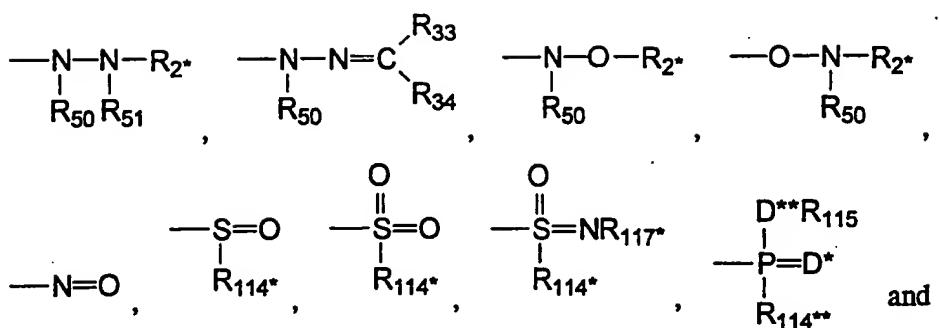
V' is selected from the group consisting of $Y'R_2$, Y^* and $C(R_{30})=Y^{**}$, wherein
 Y' is selected from the group consisting of



10 wherein R_{50} has the meaning of R_6 as previously defined, R_{51} has the meaning of R_{15} as previously defined and R_{52} has the meaning of R_{20} as previously defined, or R_{50} and R_{51} together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below, and

15 R_2 has the meaning of R_6 as previously defined,
 Y^* is selected from the group consisting of

16



previously defined; R_{114*} , R_{114**} , R_{115} and R_{117*} have the meaning of R_{14*} , R_{14**} , R_{15} and R_{17*} respectively, as previously defined; R_{50} and R_{51} are as previously defined or R_{50} and R_{51} together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below; R_{2*} is selected from the group consisting of R_2 as previously defined, $\text{S(O)}_z\text{OR}_{120}$ and $\text{S(O)}_z\text{NR}_{120}\text{R}_{121}$, wherein z is 1 or 2; R_{33} and R_{34} are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and R_{20} as previously defined, or R_{33} and R_{34} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below, and R_{120} and R_{121} independently have the meaning of R_{20} as previously defined, or R_{120} and R_{121} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below,

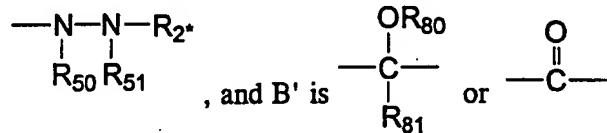
R_{30} is as previously defined, and

Y^{**} is selected from $=\text{N}-\text{NR}_{115}\text{R}_{117}$ and $=\text{N}-\text{OR}_{115}$, wherein R_{115} and R_{117} have the meaning of R_{15} and R_6 respectively, as previously defined, or R_{115} and R_{117} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below,

and wherein any group selected from R_1 , R_{1*} , R_2 , R_{2*} , R_9 , R_{11} , R_{12} , R_{50} and R_{51} may, together with any other group selected from R_1 , R_{1*} , R_2 , R_{2*} , R_{9*} , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_{12} , R_{50} and R_{51} form one or more saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system(s) as defined below,

$\text{N}^+\text{---O}^-$
 25 and wherein any tertiary amino nitrogen atom may be replaced by the group
 and, where the sequence $\text{W}'-(\text{A}')_n\text{---B}'-(\text{A}'*)_m\text{---V}'$ contains a grouping of three heteroatoms together, one atom of those three heteroatoms is oxidised sulfur in the form of S(O) or S(O)_2 , or oxidised phosphorus in the form of P(O) , or the three heteroatoms comprise two nitrogen atoms which form part of a heterocycle,

provided that the sequence $W'-(A')_n\cdot-B'-(A'')_m\cdot-V'$ does not contain two oxygen atoms together or three sulfur atoms together;
and wherein (a) when W' is $R_1\cdot X^*$ wherein X^* is NR_{10} , and V' is Y^* wherein Y^* is



5 wherein R_{81} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, $-R_{100}H$, $-R_{100}C(O)OR_{101}$, $-R_{100}C(O)NR_{101}R_{102}$, $-R_{100}NR_{102}C(O)R_{100*}$ and $-R_{100}C(O)R_{100*}$,

10 wherein R_{101} and R_{102} are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, optionally substituted (C_1-C_{18})alkyl, optionally substituted (C_3-C_{18})cycloalkyl, optionally substituted (C_3-C_{18})cycloalkyl-(C_1-C_{18})alkyl, optionally substituted (C_6-C_{24})aryl, optionally substituted (C_7-C_{25})aralkyl, optionally substituted (C_2-C_{18})alkenyl, optionally substituted (C_8-C_{26})-aralkenyl, optionally substituted (C_2-C_{18})-alkynyl, optionally substituted (C_8-C_{26})-aralkynyl and optionally substituted heterocyclic,

15 and wherein R_{100} and R_{100*} are independently divalent radicals derived from a member selected from the group consisting of (C_1-C_{18})alkyl, (C_3-C_{18})cycloalkyl, (C_3-C_{18})cycloalkyl(C_1-C_{18})alkyl, (C_6-C_{24})aryl, (C_7-C_{25})aralkyl, (C_2-C_{18})alkenyl, (C_8-C_{26})aralkenyl, (C_2-C_{18})-alkynyl, (C_8-C_{26})aralkynyl and heterocyclic, any of which may be optionally substituted as defined below,

20 and R_{80} is selected from the group consisting of R_{81} as previously defined and a solubilising and/or protecting group Px which is labile *in vivo*,

then at least one of the following applies:

25 (i) R_{50} is a group R_{53} , wherein R_{53} is selected from the group consisting of $C(D^*)OR_{21*}$, $C(D^*)NR_{21*}R_{22*}$, $C(D^*)SR_{21*}$, $C(D^*)R_{55}$, CF_3 , R_{55} and a solubilising group Px which is labile *in vivo*, wherein

D^* has the meaning of D as previously defined,

30 R_{21*} and R_{22*} have the meaning of R_{21} and R_{22} respectively, as previously defined,

35 and wherein R_{55} is selected from the group consisting of optionally substituted (C_1-C_{18})alkyl(C_6-C_{24})aryl, optionally substituted (C_2-C_{18})alkenyl(C_6-C_{24})aryl, optionally substituted (C_2-C_{18})-alkynyl(C_6-C_{24})aryl, optionally substituted (C_3-C_{18})cycloalkyl-(C_2-C_{18})alkenyl, optionally substituted (C_3-C_{18})cycloalkyl(C_2-C_{18})alkynyl, optionally substituted (C_3-C_{18})cycloalkyl-

(C₆-C₂₄)aryl, optionally substituted acyl(C₆-C₂₄)aryl, optionally substituted heterocyclic(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl, optionally substituted heterocyclic(C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl, optionally substituted heterocyclic(C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl and optionally substituted heterocyclic(C₂-C₁₈)-(C₆-C₂₄)aryl,

5

and n', m', R_{1*}, R₁₀, A', A'*, R₅₁ and R_{2*} are as previously defined,

(ii) one of R_{2*} and R₅₁ is a group R₅₄, wherein R₅₄ is selected from the group consisting of R_{55*}, C(D*)NR_{21*}R_{22*}, C(D*)OR_{55*}, C(D*)R_{55*}, C(D*)SR_{21*}, CF₃, S(O)_zOR₁₂₀, S(O)_zNR₁₂₀R₁₂₁, and a solubilising group Px which is labile *in vivo*, wherein z is 1 or 2 and R₁₂₀ and R₁₂₁ are as previously defined or R₁₂₀ and R₁₂₁ together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below, and wherein R_{21*} and R_{22*} have the meaning of R₂₁ and R₂₂ respectively, as previously defined, and R_{55*} has the meaning of R₅₅, as previously defined,

10

and n', m', R_{1*}, R₁₀, A', A'*, R₅₀ and the other of R_{2*} and R₅₁ are as previously defined,

(iii) at least one A' or A'* is selected from the group consisting of CR₁₁₂R₁₃, CR₁₂R₁₁₃, CR₁₁₂R_{13*} and CR_{12*}R₁₁₃, wherein R₁₁₂ and R₁₁₃ are independently selected from the group consisting of R₅₅ as previously defined, C(D)OR_{21*}, C(D)SR_{21*}, C(D)NR_{21*}R_{22*}, F, Cl, Br and I, wherein R_{21*} and R_{22*} have the meaning of R₂₁ and R₂₂ respectively, as previously defined,

15

and D, n', m', R_{1*}, R_{2*}, R₁₀, R₁₁, R₁₂, R_{12*}, R₁₃, R_{13*}, R₅₀ and R₅₁ are as previously defined,

(iv) R_{1*} is selected from the group consisting of optionally substituted (C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl, optionally substituted (C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl, optionally substituted (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl(C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl, optionally substituted (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl(C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl, optionally substituted (C₆-C₂₄)aryl-(C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl, optionally substituted (C₆-C₂₄)aryl(C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl, optionally substituted (C₂-C₁₈)acyl, wherein the optional substituent is other than amino, optionally substituted (C₆-C₂₄)aryl(C₂-C₁₈)acyl, optionally substituted heterocyclic(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl, optionally substituted heterocyclic(C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl, optionally substituted heterocyclic(C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl, C(O)OR₉₀, C(O)NR₉₁R₉₂, CF₃, S(O)_zOR₁₂₀, S(O)_zNR₁₂₀R₁₂₁ and a solubilising group Px which is labile *in vivo*,

20

wherein z is 1 or 2 and R₁₂₀ and R₁₂₁ are as previously defined,

25

30

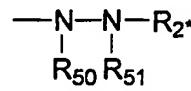
35

wherein R_{90} is selected from the group consisting of (C_3-C_{18}) cycloalkyl, (C_3-C_{18}) cycloalkyl(C_1-C_{18})alkyl, heterocyclic, (C_1-C_{18}) alkyl-heterocyclic, (C_6-C_{24}) aryl, (C_6-C_{24}) aryl(C_1-C_{18})alkyl and (C_6-C_{24}) aryl(C_1-C_{18})alkylheterocyclic,

5 and wherein R_{91} and R_{92} are independently selected from the group consisting of optionally substituted (C_2-C_{18}) alkenyl, optionally substituted (C_2-C_{18}) alkynyl, optionally substituted (C_3-C_{18}) cycloalkyl- (C_1-C_{18}) alkyl, optionally substituted (C_3-C_{18}) cycloalkyl- (C_2-C_{18}) alkenyl, optionally substituted (C_3-C_{18}) cycloalkyl- (C_2-C_{18}) alkynyl, optionally substituted (C_6-C_{24}) aryl- (C_2-C_{18}) alkenyl, optionally substituted (C_6-C_{24}) aryl- (C_2-C_{18}) alkynyl, optionally substituted (C_2-C_{18}) acyl, optionally substituted (C_6-C_{24}) aryl(C_2-C_{18})acyl, optionally substituted heterocyclic, optionally substituted heterocyclic(C_1-C_{18})alkyl, optionally substituted heterocyclic(C_2-C_{18})alkenyl, and optionally substituted heterocyclic(C_2-C_{18})alkynyl, or R_{91} and R_{92} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below,

20 and m' , n' , A' , A'^* , R_{2*} , R_{50} , R_{51} and R_{10} are as previously defined,

(v) a group selected from R_1 , R_{1*} , R_2 , R_{2*} , R_9 , R_{11} , R_{12} , R_{50} and R_{51} , taken together with another group selected from R_1 , R_{1*} , R_2 , R_{2*} , R_{9*} , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_{12} , R_{50} and R_{51} is selected from the group consisting of $-C(O)-$ and optionally substituted methylene;



25 (b) when W' is $R_{1*}X^*$ wherein X^* is NR_{10} , and V' is Y^* wherein Y^* is and B' is selected from $-CH(OH)-$ and $-C(O)-$ then at least one of the following also applies when one of the conditions (i) to (iv) defined above in (a) applies:

(vi) $n' > 1$,

(vii) $n' = 0$,

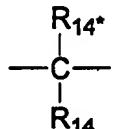
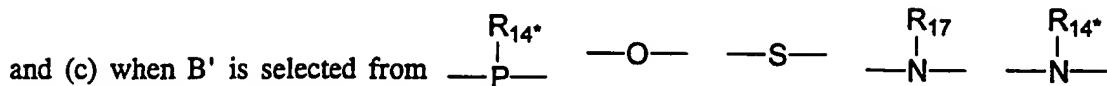
30 (viii) $m' > 1$,

(ix) $m' = 0$,

(x) R_{50} and R_{51} together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below,

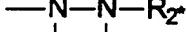
(xi) R_{50} is a group R_{56} , wherein R_{56} is selected from the group consisting of $C(D^*)OR_{21*}$, $C(D^*)NR_{21*}R_{22*}$, $C(D^*)SR_{21*}$, $C(D^*)R_{55}$ and a solubilising and/or protecting group Px which is labile *in vivo*, wherein R_{21*} and R_{22*} are as previously defined, and

(xii) $n' = m' = 1$ and A'^* is other than $-\text{CH}_2-$,



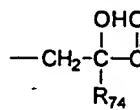
and $\text{---C}(\text{---})\text{---}$, wherein R_{14} , R_{14}^* and R_{17} are as previously defined, then at least one group selected from R_2 or R_{2*} , R_{11} , R_{12} , R_{50} and R_{51} together with another group selected from R_1 , or R_{1*} , R_{10} , R_{11} and R_{12} forms a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below, said ring being substituted with at least one polar group selected from $=\text{O}$, $=\text{S}$, OH , SH , NHR_{10*} and C(O)OH , wherein R_{10*} has the meaning of R_{10} as previously defined, said polar group being sterically capable of being located within the compound of formula (I) not more than 5 Ångstrom units from the P , O , S , N or C atom of group B ,

provided that when W' is $R_{1*}X^*$ and X^* is NH and V' is Y^* wherein Y^* is



wherein R_{1*} is other than H and R_{71} and R_{72} are independently selected from the group consisting of H , $(\text{C}_1\text{---C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, optionally substituted phenyl, optionally substituted naphthyl, optionally substituted phenyl($\text{C}_1\text{---C}_2$)alkyl and optionally substituted naphthyl($\text{C}_1\text{---C}_2$)alkyl, and when

(a) B' is $-\text{CH}(\text{OH})-$ and $(A')_n$ is $-\text{CH}(\text{R}_{73})-$ wherein R_{73} is selected from the group consisting of $(\text{C}_1\text{---C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ optionally substituted with 1-5 fluorine atoms, $(\text{C}_3\text{---C}_6)\text{alkenyl}$, $(\text{C}_1\text{---C}_6)\text{alkoxy---CH}_2-$, $(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{phenyl}$, $(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{naphthyl}$, $(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{---(C}_5\text{---C}_6\text{)cycloalkyl}$ and $(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{indolyl}$, wherein said $(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{phenyl}$, $(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{naphthyl}$, $(\text{CH}_2)_n(\text{C}_5\text{---C}_6)\text{cycloalkyl}$ and $(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{indolyl}$ are optionally substituted with nitro, halogen, $(\text{C}_1\text{---C}_4)\text{alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_1\text{---C}_4)\text{alkoxy}$ or $(\text{C}_1\text{---C}_4)\text{alkylthio}$ and wherein p is 0, 1 or 2, then $(A'^*)_m$ is other than



wherein R_{74} has the meaning of R_{73} as previously defined, and when

(b) B' is $\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ | \\ -\text{C}- \\ | \\ \text{R}_{74} \end{array}$ wherein R₇₄ has the meaning of R₇₃ as previously defined and

(A')_{n'} is $\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \\ | \quad | \quad | \\ -\text{C}-\text{C}-\text{C}- \\ | \quad | \\ \text{R}_{73} \text{OH} \quad \text{H} \end{array}$ wherein R₇₃ is as previously defined, then (A'*)_{m'} is

other than -C(O)-, and when

(c) B' is -C(O)- and (A')_{n'} is $\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \\ | \quad | \quad | \quad | \\ -\text{C}-\text{C}-\text{C}-\text{C}- \\ | \quad | \quad | \quad | \\ \text{R}_{73} \text{OH} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{H} \end{array}$ wherein R₇₃ is as previously

5 defined, then m' is other than 0.

As used herein, the term "(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl" includes within its meaning straight and branched chain alkyl groups having from 1 to 18 carbon atoms. Examples of such groups are methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, amyl, isoamyl, sec-amyl, 1,2-dimethylpropyl, 1,1-dimethyl-propyl, hexyl, 4-methylpentyl, 10 1-methylpentyl, 2-methylpentyl, 3-methylpentyl, 1,1-dimethylbutyl, 2,2-dimethylbutyl, 3,3-dimethylbutyl, 1,2-dimethylbutyl, 1,3-dimethylbutyl, 1,2,2-trimethylpropyl, 1,1,2-trimethylpropyl, heptyl, 5-methylhexyl, 1-methylhexyl, 2,2-dimethylpentyl, 3,3-dimethylpentyl, 4,4-dimethylpentyl, 1,2-dimethylpentyl, 1,3-dimethylpentyl, 1,4-dimethyl-pentyl, 1,2,3-trimethylbutyl, 1,1,2-trimethylbutyl, 1,1,3-trimethylbutyl, 15 octyl, 6-methylheptyl, 1-methylheptyl, 1,1,3,3-tetramethylbutyl, nonyl, 1-, 2-, 3-, 4-, 5-, 6- or 7-methyl-octyl, 1-, 2-, 3-, 4- or 5-ethylheptyl, 1-, 2- or 3-propylhexyl, decyl, 1-, 2-, 3-, 4-, 5-, 6-, 7- or 8-methylnonyl, 1-, 2-, 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-ethyloctyl, 1-, 2-, 3- or 4-propylheptyl, undecyl, 1-, 2-, 3-, 4-, 5-, 6-, 7-, 8- or 9-methyldecyl, 1-, 2-, 3-, 4-, 5-, 6- or 7-ethylnonyl, 1-, 2-, 3-, 4- or 5-propyloctyl, 1-, 2- or 3-butylheptyl, 1-pentylhexyl, 20 dodecyl, 1-, 2-, 3-, 4-, 5-, 6-, 7-, 8-, 9- or 10-methylundecyl, 1-, 2-, 3-, 4-, 5-, 6-, 7- or 8-ethyldecyl, 1-, 2-, 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-propylnonyl, 1-, 2-, 3- or 4-butyloctyl, 1- or 2-pentylheptyl, tridecyl, tetradecyl, hexadecyl, octadecyl and the like.

Typically an alkyl group is (C_a-C_b)alkyl, in which a is selected from a value presented in the column headed "a" in Table A below at one of entries 1-17, and b has 25 one of the values presented in the column headed "b" at that entry.

Table A

Entry	a	b
1	1	2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18
2	2	3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18
3	3	4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18
4	4	5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18
5	5	6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18
6	6	7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18

7	7	8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18
8	8	9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18
9	9	10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18
10	10	11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18
11	11	12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18
12	12	13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18
13	13	14, 15, 16, 17, 18
14	14	15, 16, 17, 18
15	15	16, 17, 18
16	16	17, 18
17	17	18

As used herein, the term "(C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl" includes within its meaning ethylenically mono-, di- or poly-unsaturated alkyl groups having from 2 to 18 carbon atoms, and may be straight-chain or branched. Examples of such alkenyl groups are 5 vinyl, allyl, 1-methylvinyl, 1-propenyl, 1-butenyl, 2-butenyl, 3-butenyl, 1,3-butadienyl, 2-methyl-1-propenyl, 2-methyl-2-propenyl, 1-pentenyl, 2-pentenyl, 3-pentenyl, 4-pentenyl, 1,3-pentadienyl, 2,4-pentadienyl, 1,4-pentadienyl, 3-methyl-2-butenyl, 1-hexenyl, 2-hexenyl, 3-hexenyl, 1,3-hexadienyl, 1,4-hexadienyl, 2-methylpentenyl, 1-heptenyl, 3-heptenyl, 1-octenyl, 1,3-octadienyl, 1-nonenyl, 2-nonenyl, 3-nonenyl, 10 1-decenyl, 3-decenyl, 1-undecenyl, oleyl, linoleyl and linolenyl.

Typically an alkenyl group is (C_a-C_b)alkenyl, in which a is selected from a value presented in the column headed "a" in Table A above at one of entries 2-17, and b has one of the values presented in the column headed "b" at that entry.

As used herein, the term "(C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl" includes within its meaning mono-, 15 di- and poly-acetylenically unsaturated alkyl groups having from 2 to 18 carbon atoms, and may be straight-chain or branched. Examples of such alkynyl groups are ethynyl, propynyl, n-butynyl, n-pentynyl, 3-methyl-1-butynyl, n-hexynyl, methyl-pentynyl and (C₇-C₁₂)alkynyl.

Typically an alkynyl group is (C_a-C_b)alkynyl, in which a is selected from a value 20 presented in the column headed "a" in Table A above at one of entries 2-17, and b has one of the values presented in the column headed "b" at that entry.

As used herein, the term "(C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl" refers to optionally unsaturated mono-, di- or polycyclic alkyl groups having from 3 to 18 carbon atoms. Examples of such groups include cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclopentenyl, 25 cyclopentadienyl, cyclohexyl, cyclohexenyl, cyclohexadienyl, cycloheptyl, cycloheptenyl, cycloheptadienyl, cycloheptatrienyl, cyclooctyl, cyclooctenyl, cyclooctadienyl, cyclooctatrienyl, cyclooctatetraenyl, cyclononyl, cyclodecyl, cycloundecyl, cyclododecyl,

(C₉-C₁₂)cycloalkynyl, bicyclo[2.2.1]heptanyl, bicyclo[2.2.1]heptenyl, bicyclo[2.2.1]-heptadienyl, bicyclo[2.2.2]octanyl, bicyclo[2.2.2]octenyl, bicyclo[3.3.1]nonyl, bicyclo[3.1.0]hexyl, bicyclo[4.1.0]heptyl, bicyclo[3.2.1]octyl, bicyclo[3.3.0]octyl, bicyclo[3.3.0]octenyl, bicyclo[3.3.1]nonyl, bicyclo[4.4.0]decyl, adamantyl, 5 tricyclo[5.2.1.0^{2,6}]decyl and the like.

Typically a cycloalkyl group is (C_a-C_b)cycloalkyl, in which a is selected from a value presented in the column headed "a" in Table A above at one of entries 3-17, and b has one of the values presented in the column headed "b" at that entry.

As used herein, the term "(C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl" refers to a 10 (C₁-C₁₈)alkyl group as defined above, substituted with a (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl group as defined above. Examples of cycloalkylalkyl groups include cycloalkyl-loweralkyl groups, such as cycloalkylmethyl, cycloalkylethyl, cycloalkylpropyl, cycloalkylbutyl, cycloalkylisopropyl, cycloalkylisobutyl, cycloalkylpentyl and cycloalkylhexyl, wherein the cycloalkyl is as exemplified in the preceding paragraph.

15 As used herein, the term "(C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl(C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl" refers to a (C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl group as defined above, substituted with a (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl group as defined above. Examples of cycloalkylalkenyl groups include cycloalkyl-loweralkenyl groups, such as cycloalkylethenyl, cycloalkylpropenyl, cycloalkylbutenyl, cycloalkylisobut enyl, cycloalkylpentenyl and cycloalkylhexenyl, wherein the cycloalkyl is 20 as exemplified above under "(C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl".

As used herein, the term "(C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl(C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl" refers to a (C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl group as defined above, substituted with a (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl group as defined above. Examples of cycloalkylalkynyl groups include cycloalkyl-loweralkynyl groups, such as cycloalkylethynyl, cycloalkylpropynyl, cycloalkylbutynyl, 25 cycloalkylpentynyl and cycloalkylhexynyl, wherein the cycloalkyl is as exemplified above under "(C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl".

As used herein, the term "(C₆-C₂₄)aryl" refers to single, polynuclear, conjugated and fused residues of aromatic hydrocarbons having from 6 to 24 carbon atoms. Examples of such groups are phenyl, biphenyl, terphenyl, quaterphenyl, naphthyl, 30 tetrahydronaphthyl, acenaphthyl, anthracenyl, dihydroanthracenyl, benzantracenyl, dibenzanthracenyl, phenanthrenyl, fluorenyl, pyrenyl, indenyl, indanyl, azulenyl, chrys enyl and the like. In all cases, any available position of the fused or conjugated bicyclic system can be used for attachment to the remainder of the molecule of formula (I).

35 Typically an aryl group is (C_a-C_b)aryl, in which a is selected from a value presented in the column headed "a" in Table B below at one of entries 1-18, and b has one of the values presented in the column headed "b" at that entry.

Table B

Entry	a	b
-------	---	---

1	6	10, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24
2	10	12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24
3	12	13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24
8	13	14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24
9	14	15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24
10	15	16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24
11	16	17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24
12	17	18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24
13	18	19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24
14	19	20, 21, 22, 23, 24
15	20	21, 22, 23, 24
16	21	22, 23, 24
17	22	23, 24
18	23	24

As used herein, the term "(C₆-C₂₄)aryl(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl" refers to a (C₁-C₁₈)alkyl group substituted with one or more (C₆-C₂₄)aryl groups as previously defined. Examples of such groups are aryl-loweralkyl groups such as arylmethyl, arylethyl, arylisopropyl, 5 arylpropyl, arylbutyl, arylisobutyl, arylpentyl and arylhexyl, wherein the aryl is as exemplified in the preceding paragraph, such as benzyl, diphenylmethyl, 2-phenylethyl, 1-phenylethyl, naphthylmethyl, 3-phenylpropyl, triphenylmethyl, 1,3-diphenylpropyl, 2- or 3- β -naphthylpropyl, 2-benzyl-propyl and the like.

As used herein, the term "(C₇-C₂₅)aralkyl" refers to an alkyl group substituted 10 with an aryl group, wherein the total number of carbon atoms in the aryl-substituted alkyl group is from 7 to 25. Optional substituents for (C₇-C₂₅)aralkyl are as defined below with respect to (C₆-C₂₄)aryl(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl.

As used herein, the term "(C₆-C₂₄)aryl(C₁-C₁₈)alkenyl" refers to a (C₁-C₁₈)alkenyl group substituted with one or more (C₆-C₂₄)aryl groups as previously 15 defined. Examples of such groups are aryl-loweralkenyl groups such as arylethenyl, arylpropenyl, arylbutenyl, arylisobutyl, arylpentenyl and arylhexenyl, wherein the aryl is as exemplified above under "(C₆-C₂₄)aryl" such as styryl, cinnamyl, 2-naphthylethenyl, 1-phenyl-2-methyl-1-propenyl, 2-phenyl-2-butenyl and the like.

As used herein, the term "(C₈-C₂₆)aralkenyl" refers to an alkenyl group 20 substituted with an aryl group, wherein the total number of carbon atoms in the aryl-substituted alkenyl group is from 8 to 26. Optional substituents for (C₈-C₂₆)aralkenyl are as defined below with respect to (C₆-C₂₄)aryl(C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl.

As used herein, the term "(C₆-C₂₄)aryl(C₁-C₁₈)alkynyl" refers to a (C₁-C₁₈)alkynyl group substituted with one or more (C₆-C₂₄)aryl groups as previously

defined. Examples of such groups are aryl-loweralkenyl groups such as arylethenyl, arylpropenyl, arylbutenyl, arylisobutetyl, arylpentenyl and arylhexenyl, wherein the aryl is as exemplified above under "(C₆-C₂₄)aryl" such as phenylethynyl and the like.

As used herein, the term "(C₈-C₂₆)aralkynyl" refers to an alkynyl group substituted with an aryl group, wherein the total number of carbon atoms in the aryl-substituted alkynyl group is from 8 to 26. Optional substituents for (C₈-C₂₆)aralkynyl are as defined below with respect to (C₆-C₂₄)aryl(C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl.

As used herein, the term "(C₁-C₁₈)acyl" refers to a group R₃₀₀C(O)- or R₃₀₀C(S)-, wherein R₃₀₀ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, (C₁-C₁₈)alkyl, (C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl, (C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl, (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl, (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl(C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl, (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl(C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl, (C₆-C₂₄)aryl, (C₆-C₂₄)aryl(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl, (C₆-C₂₄)aryl(C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl, (C₆-C₂₄)aryl(C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl, heterocyclic, heterocyclic(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl, heterocyclic(C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl, and heterocyclic(C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl.

Typically an acyl group is (C_a-C_b)acyl, in which a is selected from a value presented in the column headed "a" in Table A above at one of entries 1-17, and b has one of the values presented in the column headed "b" at that entry.

Examples of acyl groups include loweralkylcarbonyl such as formyl, acetyl, propionyl, butyryl; loweralkenylcarbonyl such as pivaloyl, acryloyl, vinylacetyl, crotonoyl, 3-pentenoyl, 4-pentenoyl; and loweralkynylcarbonyl such as propioloyle, 2-butynoyl and 3-butynoyl, any of which may be substituted with cycloalkyl, aryl or heterocyclic as exemplified herein, as, for example, cyclopropylcarbonyl, cyclobutylcarbonyl, cyclopentylcarbonyl, 1-cyclopentenylcarbonyl, cyclopentylacetyl, cyclohexylcarbonyl, 1-cyclohexenylcarbonyl, 1,4-cyclohexadienylcarbonyl, cyclohexylacetyl, cyclohexylacetyl, 1,4cyclohexadienylacetyl, bicyclo[2.2.1]hept-2-ylcarbonyl, bicyclo[2.2.1]heptylacetyl, bicyclo[2.2.1]hepten-2-ylcarbonyl, bicyclo[2.2.2]oct-2-ylcarbonyl, bicyclo[2.2.2]octylacetyl, bicyclo[2.2.2]octyl-3-propionyl, bicyclo[2.2.2]octen-2-ylcarbonyl, bicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-ylcarbonyl, bicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-ylacetyl, bicyclononyl-3-propionyl, bicyclo[4.4.0]dec-2-ylcarbonyl, bicyclo[4.4.0]dec-2-ylacetyl, 1-adamantylcarbonyl, 2-adamantylcarbonyl, 1-adamantylacetyl, 2-adamantylacetyl, tricyclo[5.2.1.0^{2,6}]dec-8-ylacetyl, benzoyl, phenylacetyl, diphenylacetyl, triphenylacetyl, 3-phenylpropionyl, dibenzylacetyl, α -naphthoyl, β -naphthoyl, α -naphthylacetyl, β -naphthylacetyl, indenylcarbonyl, indanylcarbonyl, phenanthrenylcarbonyl, 9-fluorenylcarbonyl, pyrrolylcarbonyl, pyrrolylacetetyl, furylcarbonyl, furylacetetyl, thienylcarbonyl, thienylacetyl, pyrazinylcarbonyl, pyrazinylacetyl, pyrrolidinylcarbonyl, pyrrolidinylacetyl, pyridylcarbonyl, pyridylacetyl, pyrimidinylcarbonyl, pyrimidinylacetyl, piperidylcarbonyl, piperidylacetetyl, piperazinylcarbonyl, piperazinylacetyl, morpholinylcarbonyl, morpholinylacetyl, thiomorpholinylcarbonyl, thiomorpholinylacetyl, indolylcarbonyl, indolylacetyl, quinolylcarbonyl, quinolylacetyl, isoquinolylcarbonyl, isoquinolylacetyl,

quinoxalinylcarbonyl, benzofuranylcarbonyl, benzofuranylacetyl, indolinylcarbonyl, indolinylacetyl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolylcarbonyl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolylacetyl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinolylcarbonyl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinolylacetyl, cyclohexylacryloyl, cinnamoyl, styrylacetyl and phenylpropioyl.

As used herein, the term "heterocyclic" refers to any saturated or unsaturated 3- to 16-membered monocyclic, bicyclic or polycyclic ring containing one or more heteroatom independently selected from oxygen, nitrogen and sulphur. The term "heterocyclic" includes any group in which a heterocyclic ring is fused to one or more benzene, naphthalene or cycloalkane rings. Sulfur-containing heterocyclics may be substituted at sulfur with one or two oxygen atoms. Examples of heterocyclics are pyridyl, thienyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, indolyl, pyridazinyl, perhydropyridazinyl, pyrazolyl, pyrazoldinyl, 2,3,5,6-tetrahydropyrazinyl, phthalazinyl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydropthalazinyl, perhydropthalazinyl, thiazolyl, pyrimidinyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, purinyl, quinazolinyl, phenazinyl, acridinyl, benzoxazolyl, benzothiazolyl, piperidyl, tetrahydrofuryl, imidazolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolidino, oxazolidinyl, isoxazolyl, isothiazolyl, isoxazolidinyl, imidazolidinyl, morpholinyl, pyrrolidinyl, pyrazolinyl, benzothienyl, benzisoxazolyl, benzoisothiazolyl, benzothiadiazolyl, tetrazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, pyrrolinyl, quinuclidinyl, 1,4-thioxanyl, 1,3-thioxanyl, azanorbornyl, isoquinuclidinyl, pyranyl, furazanyl, azepinyl, 1H-indazolyl, 2,3-dihydro-1H-indazolyl, quinoxaliny, cinnolyl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydrocinnolinyl, pteridinyl, naphthyridinyl, 4H-quinolizinyl, benz[e]indolyl, benzoxazinyl, benzoxadiazolyl, benzothiazinyl, benzotriazolyl, carbazolyl, β -carbolinyl, 1,2,3,4,5,6-hexahydro- β -carbolinyl, phenanthridyl, phenoazinyl, phenothiazinyl, 1-azaacenaphthetyl, thiatriazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, chromanyl, thiachromanyl, isochromanyl, chromenyl, cyclohexa[b]pyrrolyl, cyclohepta[b]pyrrolyl, cyclohexa[d]pyrazolyl, cyclohexa[b]pyridyl, cyclohexa[b]pyrazinyl, cyclohexa[b]pyrimidinyl, cyclohexa[b]-1,4-oxazinyl, cyclohexa[b]-1,4-thiazinyl, 2-imidazolinyl, 2,3-dihydropyridyl, piperazinyl, thiomorpholinyl, S,S-dioxo-thiomorpholinyl, indolinyl, S,S-dioxo-1,2,3-benzothiadiazolyl, S,S-dioxo-1,2-thioxanyl, S,S-dioxo-1,4-thioxanyl, isoindolinyl, 4,5,6,7-tetrahydroindolyl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolyl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinolyl, hexahydroquinolyl, hexahydroisoquinolyl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-3,1-benzodiazinyl, 3,4-dihydro-3H-4,1-benzoxazinyl, 3,4-dihydro-3H-4,1-benzothiazinyl, 2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-5,1-benzazepinyl and 5,6-dihydro-phenanthridinyl and the like.

Configurations which result in unstable heterocyclics are not included within the scope of the definition of "heterocyclic" or "saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system".

As used herein, the term "heterocyclic(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl" refers to a (C₁-C₁₈)alkyl group as previously defined, which is substituted with a heterocyclic group as previously defined. Examples of such groups are heterocyclic-loweralkyl groups such as hetero-

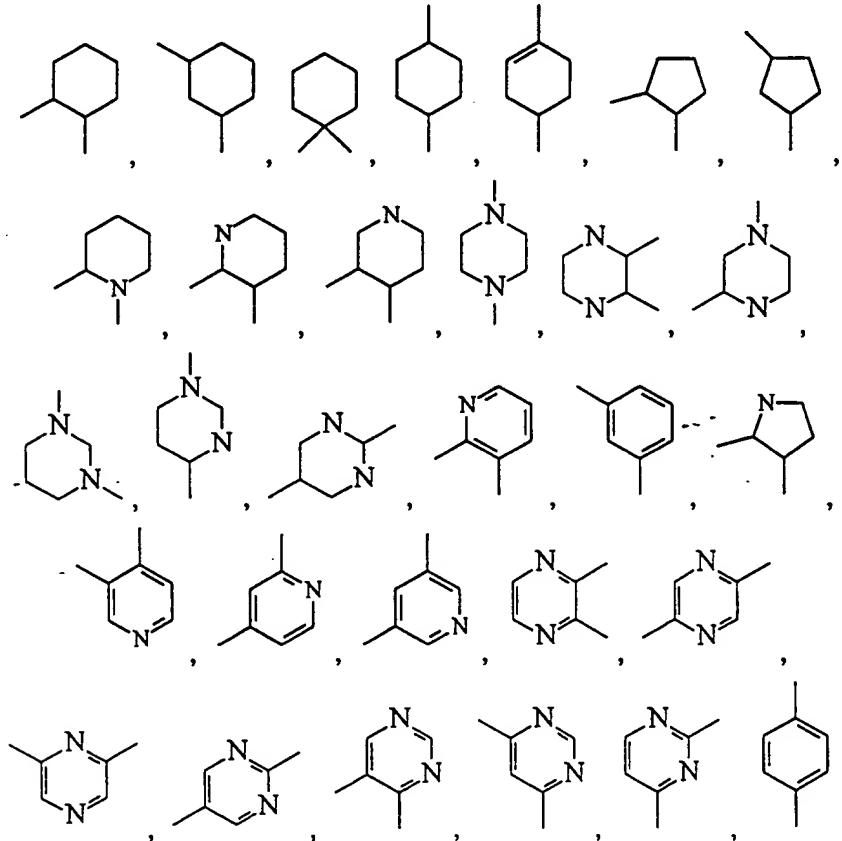
cyclicmethyl, heterocyclicethyl, heterocyclicisopropyl, heterocyclicpropyl, heterocyclicbutyl, heterocyclicisobutyl, heterocyclicpentyl and heterocyclichexyl, wherein the heterocyclic is as exemplified in the preceding paragraph.

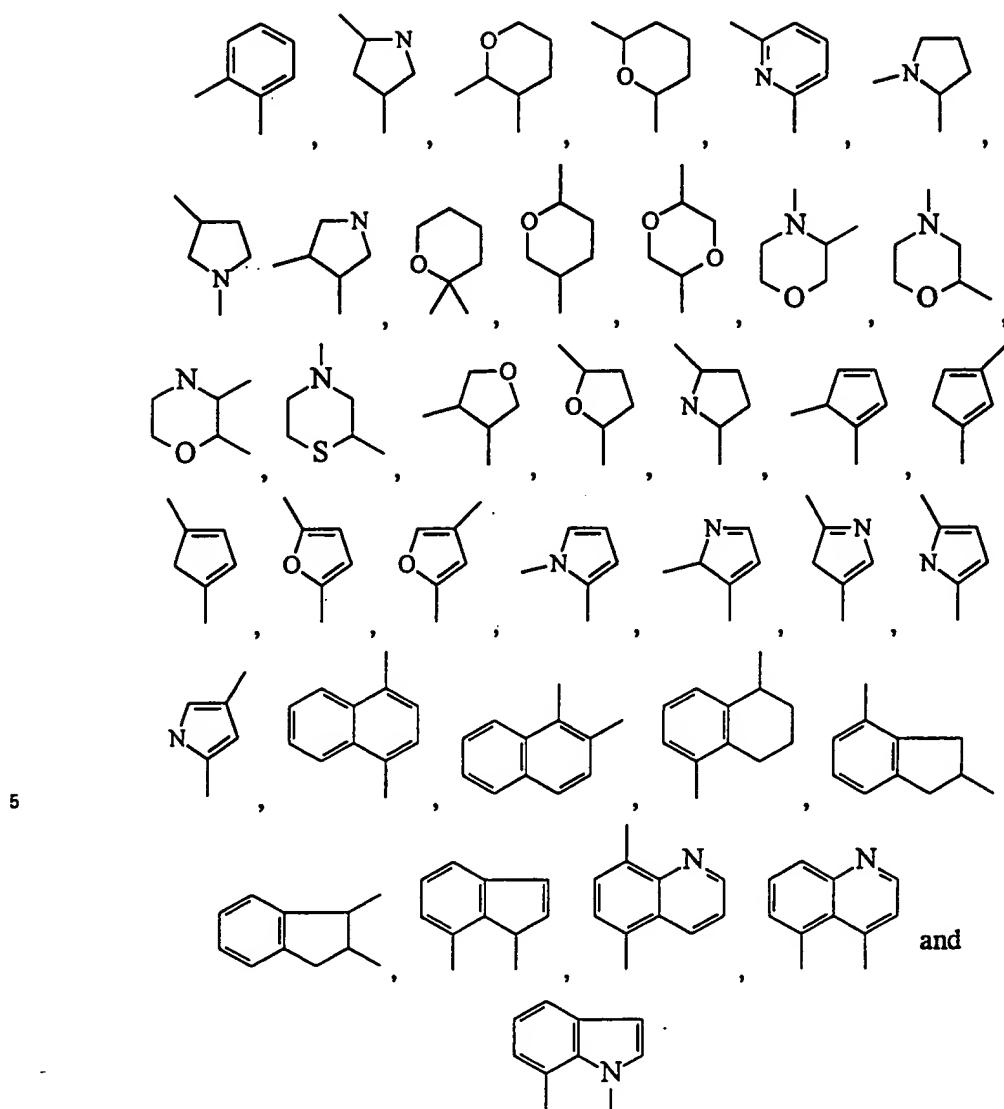
As used herein, the term "heterocyclic(C₁-C₁₈)alkenyl" refers to a (C₁-C₁₈)alkenyl group as previously defined, which is substituted with a heterocyclic group as previously defined. Examples of such groups are heterocyclic-loweralkenyl groups such as heterocyclicethenyl, heterocyclicpropenyl, heterocyclicbutenyl, heterocyclicisobutyl, heterocyclicpentenyl and heterocyclichexenyl, wherein the heterocyclic is as exemplified above under "heterocyclic".

As used herein, the term "heterocyclic(C₁-C₁₈)alkynyl" refers to a (C₁-C₁₈)alkynyl group as previously defined, which is substituted with a heterocyclic group as previously defined.

As used herein, the term "alkylidene" refers to divalent radicals derived from alkyl groups. Examples of such radicals are -CH₂-, -CH₂CH₂-, -CH=CH-, -CH₂CH₂CH₂-, -C(=CH₂)CH₂-, -CH₂CH=CH-, -(CH₂)₄-, -CH₂CH₂CH=CH-, -CH₂CH=CHCH₂- and -(CH₂)_r- where r is 5-12. The term also refers to such radicals in which one or more of the bonds of the radical from part of a cyclic system, and to such radicals wherein one or more carbon atoms is replaced by O, S or NH. Examples of such radicals are groups of the structure

20





and similar groups, including those shown above wherein any N or O atom is replaced by S.

10 As used herein the term "saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system" refers to a stable cyclic system of up to 16 carbon atoms, wherein said ring system may contain: for 3- and 4-membered rings, one heteroatom; for 5-membered rings, one or two heteroatoms; for 6- and 7-membered rings, one to three heteroatoms; for 8- and 9-membered rings, from one to four heteroatoms; for 10- and 11-membered 15 rings, from one to five heteroatoms; for 12- and 13-membered rings, from one to six heteroatoms; for 14- and 15-membered rings, from one to seven heteroatoms; and for 16-membered rings, from one to eight heteroatoms; the heteroatom(s) being independently selected from oxygen, nitrogen and sulphur; which ring system may be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from: R₁₅₀ and a group T, where R₁₅₀ 20 has the meaning of R₂₀ as previously defined, and where T is selected from the group

consisting of -F, -Cl, -Br, -I, -CF₃, -CN, -NCO, -NCS, -OCN, -SCN, -N₃, -OR', -NR'R'', -NR'C(O)R'', -NR'C(O)OR'', -NR'C(O)NR''R''', -NO₂, -SR', -S(O)R', -S(O)₂R', -S(O)OR', -S(O)₂OR', -S(O)NR'R'', -S(O)₂NR'R'', =O, =S, =N₂, =NOH, =NOR', -NR''OR', -CHO, -OC(O)R', -OC(O)OR', -OC(O)NR'R'', -C(O)R', 5 -C(O)OR', -C(O)NR'R'', -OC(S)R', -OC(S)OR', -OC(S)NR'R'', -C(S)R', -C(S)OR', -C(S)NR'R'', -SC(O)R', -SC(O)OR', -SC(O)NR'R'', -C(O)SR', -SC(S)R', -SC(S)OR', -SC(S)NR'R'', -C(S)SR', -C(=NR')OR'', -C(=NR')SR'', -C(=NR')NR''R'', -OS(O)R', -OS(O)₂R', -OS(O)OR', -OS(O)₂OR', -OS(O)NR'R'', -OS(O)₂NR'R'', NR'S(O)₂NR''R''', -NR'S(O)₂R'', -NHC(=NH)NR', -C(=NH)NR', -P(O)(OR')R'', 10 -P(O)(SR')R'', -P(O)(OR')OR'', -P(O)(OR')NR''R''', -P(O)R'R'', -OP(O)(OR')R'', -OP(O)(OR')OR'', -OP(O)(SR')OR'', -OP(O)(OR')NR''R''', -OP(O)R'R'', and -B(OR')(OR''), wherein R', R'' and R''' are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, (C₁-C₁₈)alkyl, typically (C₁-C₁₂)alkyl; (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl, typically (C₃-C₁₂)cycloalkyl; (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl, typically (C₃-C₁₂)cyclo- 15 alkyl(C₁-C₆)alkyl; (C₆-C₂₄)aryl, typically (C₆-C₁₆)aryl; (C₆-C₂₄)aryl(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl, typically (C₆-C₁₀)aryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl; (C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl, typically (C₂-C₁₂)alkenyl; (C₆-C₂₄)- 20 aryl(C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl, typically (C₆-C₁₀)aryl(C₂-C₆)alkenyl; (C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl, typically (C₂-C₁₂)alkynyl; (C₆-C₂₄)aryl(C₂-C₁₈)aralkynyl, typically (C₆-C₁₀)aryl(C₁-C₆)alkynyl, heterocyclic, heterocyclic(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl, typically heterocyclic(C₁-C₁₂)alkyl, heterocyclic- 25 (C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl, typically heterocyclic(C₂-C₁₂)alkenyl and heterocyclic(C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl, typically heterocyclic(C₂-C₁₂)alkynyl, and wherein R', R'' and R''' may be optionally substituted with up to six groups independently selected from hydroxy, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy, (C₁-C₆)aryloxy, (C₁-C₆)thioalkoxy, (C₁-C₆)thioaryloxy, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy(C₁-C₆)alkoxy, amino, (C₁-C₆)alkylamino, di(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, fluoro, chloro, bromo, iodo, carboxy, (C₁-C₆)alkoxycarbonyl, (C₁-C₆)alkylaminocarbonyl and di(C₁-C₆)alkylaminocarbonyl. Examples of saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring systems are the heterocyclic and cyclic alkylidene groups exemplified above.

As used herein, the term "optionally substituted (C₁-C₁₈)alkyl" refers to a (C₁-C₁₈)alkyl group as defined above wherein one or more hydrogen atoms are replaced 30 by one or more substituents T as previously defined.

Examples of substituted (C₁-C₁₈)alkyl groups include hydroxy-loweralkyl such as hydroxymethyl, hydroxyethyl and 3-hydroxypropyl; loweralkoxy-loweralkyl such as methoxymethyl, 2-methoxyethyl, 2,2-dimethoxyethyl and 3-methoxypropyl; aryloxy-loweralkyl such as phenoxyethyl, phenoxyethyl, α -naphthylloxymethyl and β -naphthyl- 35 oxyethyl; arylloweralkoxy-loweralkyl such as benzyloxymethyl, benzyloxyethyl and 3-benzyloxypropyl; halo-loweralkyl such as chloromethyl, trifluoromethyl, 2-fluoro-, 2-chloro-, 2-bromo- or 2-iodo-ethyl, 2,2,2-trifluoro-ethyl, 2,2,2-trichloro-ethyl, 3-chloro-propyl and 3-bromopropyl; amino-loweralkyl such as aminomethyl, 2-aminoethyl, 3-aminopropyl, 5-aminopentyl, dimethylaminomethyl, 2-dimethylaminoethyl and 3-phenyl-

aminopropyl; carboxy-loweralkyl such as carboxymethyl, carboxyethyl and 3-carboxypropyl; acylloweralkyl such as acylmethyl, acylethyl, acylpropyl, acylisopropyl, acylbutyl, acylisobutyl, acylpentyl and acylhexyl wherein the acyl is as exemplified above under "(C₁-C₁₈)acyl"; acyloxy-loweralkyl such as acetoxyethyl, acetoxyethyl, 5 2-acetoxypropyl, 3-acetoxypropyl, propionyloxyethyl and 3-propionyloxypropyl; lower-alkylcarbonylamino-loweralkyl such as acetylaminomethyl, acetylaminooethyl, 2-acetylaminopropyl, propionylaminomethyl and propionylaminooethyl; loweralkylaminocarbonyl-amino-loweralkyl, such as dimethylaminocarbonylaminoethyl; sulfonyl-loweralkyl such as methylsulfonyl-methyl, ethylsulfonyl-methyl, tert-butylsulfonyl-methyl, 10 phenylsulfonylmethyl, phenylsulfonylethyl, 4-toluenesulfonylethyl and 4-toluenesulfonylmethyl; cyano-loweralkyl such as cyanomethyl, 2-cyanoethyl, 2-cyanopropyl, 3-cyano-propyl, 2-cyanobutyl, 3-cyanobutyl and 4-cyanobutyl; oxo-loweralkyl such as 2-oxo-propyl, 2-oxo-butyl, 3-oxo-butyl, 2-, 3- or 4-oxo-pentyl and 2,4-dioxo-pentyl; and lower-alkyl groups substituted with two or more than different substitutents as exemplified 15 above.

As used herein, the term "optionally substituted (C₁-C₁₈)alkenyl" refers to a (C₁-C₁₈)alkenyl group as defined above wherein one or more hydrogen atoms are replaced by a substituent or substitutents T as previously defined.

As used herein, the term "optionally substituted (C₁-C₁₈)alkynyl" refers to a 20 (C₁-C₁₈)alkynyl group as defined above wherein one or more hydrogen atoms are replaced by a substituent or substitutents T as previously defined.

As used herein, the term "optionally substituted (C₃-C₂₄)cycloalkyl" refers to a (C₃-C₂₄)cycloalkyl group as defined above wherein one or more hydrogen atoms are replaced by a substituent or substitutents independently selected from R^{IV} and T as 25 previously defined, wherein R^{IV} is selected from (C₁-C₁₈)alkyl, (C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl, (C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl, (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl, (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl, (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl(C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl, (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl(C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl, (C₂-C₁₈)acyl, (C₆-C₂₄)aryl(C₂-C₁₈)acyl, heterocyclic, heterocyclic(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl, heterocyclic(C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl, and heterocyclic(C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl, and wherein R^{IV} may be substituted with 30 up to six groups independently selected from hydroxy, amino, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy(C₁-C₆)alkoxy, amino, (C₁-C₆)alkylamino, di(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, fluoro, chloro, bromo, iodo, carboxy, (C₁-C₆)alkoxycarbonyl, (C₁-C₆)alkylaminocarbonyl and di(C₁-C₆)alkylaminocarbonyl.

As used herein, the term "optionally substituted (C₃-C₂₄)cyclo-35 alkyl(C₁-C₁₈)alkenyl" refers to a (C₃-C₂₄)cycloalkyl(C₁-C₁₈)alkenyl group as defined above which are substituted in the cycloalkyl group by a substituent or substitutents independently selected from the substituents defined above for (C₃-C₂₄)cycloalkyl, and/or substituted in the alkenyl group by one or more substituents T as previously defined.

As used herein, the term "optionally substituted (C₃-C₂₄)cycloalkyl(C₁-C₁₈)alkynyl" refers to a (C₃-C₂₄)cycloalkyl(C₁-C₁₈)alkynyl group as defined above which are substituted in the cycloalkyl group by a substituent or substituents independently selected from the substituents defined above for (C₃-C₂₄)cycloalkyl, and/or 5 substituted in the alkynyl group by one or more substituents T as previously defined.

As used herein, the term "optionally substituted (C₆-C₂₄)aryl" refers to a (C₆-C₂₄)aryl group as defined above wherein one or more hydrogen atoms are replaced by a substituent or substituents independently selected from R^V and T*, wherein T* is selected from the group consisting of -F, -Cl, -Br, -I, -CF₃, -CN, -NCO, -NCS, -OCN, 10 -SCN, -N₃, -OR', -NR'R'', -NR'C(O)R'', -NR'C(O)OR'', -NR'C(O)NR'R''', -NO₂, -SR', -S(O)R', -S(O)₂R', -S(O)OR', -S(O)₂OR', -S(O)NR'R'', -S(O)₂NR'R'', -NR'OR', -CHO, -OC(O)R', -OC(O)OR', -OC(O)NR'R'', -C(O)R', -C(O)OR', -C(O)NR'R'', -OC(S)R', -OC(S)OR', -OC(S)NR'R'', -C(S)R', -C(S)OR', -C(S)NR'R'', -SC(O)R', -SC(O)OR', -SC(O)NR'R'', -C(O)SR', -SC(S)R', -SC(S)OR', -SC(S)NR'R'', -C(S)SR', 15 -C(=NR')OR'', -C(=NR')SR'', -C(=NR')NR'R'', -OS(O)R', -OS(O)₂R', -OS(O)OR', -OS(O)₂OR', -OS(O)NR'R'', -OS(O)₂NR'R'', NR'S(O)₂NR'R''', NR'S(O)₂R'', -NHC(=NH)NR', -C(=NH)NR', -OP(O)(OR')R'', -OP(O)(OR')OR'', -OP(O)(SR')OR'', -OP(O)(OR')NR'R''', -OP(O)R'R'', and -B(OR')(OR''), wherein R', R'' and R''' are as defined above with respect to the substituent T; and wherein R^V is 20 selected from (C₁-C₁₈)alkyl, (C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl, (C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl, (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl, (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl, (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl(C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl, (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl-(C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl, (C₂-C₁₈)acyl, (C₆-C₂₄)aryl(C₂-C₁₈)acyl, heterocyclic, heterocyclic-(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl, heterocyclic(C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl, and heterocyclic(C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl, and wherein R^V may be substituted with up to six groups independently selected from 25 hydroxy, amino, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy, (C₁-C₆)aryloxy, (C₁-C₆)thioalkoxy, (C₁-C₆)thioaryloxy, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy(C₁-C₆)alkoxy, amino, (C₁-C₆)alkylamino, di(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, fluoro, chloro, bromo, iodo, carboxy, (C₁-C₆)alkoxycarbonyl, (C₁-C₆)alkylaminocarbonyl and di(C₁-C₆)alkylaminocarbonyl. The term "optionally substituted (C₆-C₂₄)aryl" includes mono-, di- and polysubstituted (C₆-C₂₄)aryl groups.

30 Examples of substituted aryl groups are loweralkyl-aryl, loweralkenyl-aryl, aryl-loweralkyl-aryl, loweralkylcarbonyl-aryl, heterocyclic-aryl and heterocyclicloweralkyl-aryl wherein the aryl group is as exemplified above; halo-aryl such as 4-chlorophenyl, 2,4-dichlorophenyl, 1-chloro-2-naphthyl and 4-chloro-1-naphthyl; hydroxy-aryl such as 2-hydroxyphenyl, 1-hydroxy-2-naphthyl, 2-hydroxy-1-naphthyl, 2-hydroxy-8-naphthyl, 35 3,4,5-trihydroxyphenyl and 2,4,5-trihydroxyphenyl; loweralkoxyaryl such as 4-methoxy-phenyl, 3,4-dimethoxyphenyl, 2,4-dimethoxyphenyl and 1-methoxy-2-naphthyl; carboxy-aryl such as 2-carboxy-phenyl, 2-carboxy-1-naphthyl, 1-carboxy-2-naphthyl and 9-carboxy-2-anthracyl; acylaryl, wherein the acyl group is as exemplified above under "(C₁-C₁₈) acyl", such as 4-formylphenyl, 4-acetylphenyl, 2-benzoylphenyl,

2-methoxycarbonyl-phenyl, 2-ethoxycarbonyl-1-naphthyl, 1-methoxycarbonyl-2-naphthyl, 9-methoxycarbonyl-2-anthracyl, 2-carbamoyl-phenyl, 2-carbamoyl-1-naphthyl, 1-carbamoyl-2-naphthyl, 4-dimethylaminocarbonyl-phenyl, 4-morpholinocarbonylphenyl, 4-(2-pyridylmethoxy)carbonyl-phenyl and 4-benzyloxycarbonyl-phenyl; nitro-aryl such as 5 4-nitrophenyl and 2,4-dinitrophenyl; amino- or (substituted amino)-aryl such as 4-amino-phenyl, 2,4-diaminophenyl, 4-dimethylaminophenyl, 4-anilinophenyl, 2-(2,6-dichloroanilino)-phenyl, 2,4-di-(benzyloxycarbonylamino)-phenyl and 4-(2-quinoline-carbonylamino)-phenyl; and cyano-aryl such as 4-cyanophenyl, as well as aryl groups substituted with two or more of the substituents exemplified above.

10 As used herein, the term "optionally substituted (C_6 - C_{24})aryl(C_1 - C_{18})alkyl" refers to a (C_6 - C_{24})aryl(C_1 - C_{18})alkyl group as previously defined substituted in the aryl group with one or more substituents defined above for (C_6 - C_{24})aryl and/or substituted in the alkyl group with one or more substituents defined above for (C_1 - C_{18})alkyl. Examples of such groups are (substituted aryl)-lower-alkyl such as (substituted 15 aryl)methyl, (substituted aryl)ethyl, (substituted aryl)propyl, (substituted aryl)iso-propyl, (substituted aryl)butyl, (substituted aryl)pentyl and (substituted aryl)hexyl, aryl(loweralkyl) such as phenyl(loweralkyl), naphthyl(loweralkyl), biphenyl(loweralkyl), tetrahydronaphthyl(loweralkyl), indenyl(loweralkyl) and indanyl(loweralkyl), and (substituted aryl)-20 (substituted loweralkyl), wherein in each case substituted aryl is as exemplified above with respect to "optionally substituted (C_6 - C_{24})aryl" and (substituted loweralkyl) is as exemplified above with respect to "optionally substituted (C_1 - C_{18})alkyl".

As used herein, the term "optionally substituted (C_6 - C_{24})aryl(C_1 - C_{18})alkenyl" refers to a (C_6 - C_{24})aryl(C_1 - C_{18})alkenyl group as previously defined substituted in the aryl group with one or more substituents defined above for (C_6 - C_{24})aryl and/or substituted in the alkenyl group with one or more substituents defined above for (C_1 - C_{18})alkyl.

As used herein, the term "optionally substituted (C_6 - C_{24})aryl(C_1 - C_{18})alkynyl" refers to a (C_6 - C_{24})aryl(C_1 - C_{18})alkynyl group as previously defined substituted in the aryl group with one or more substituents defined above for (C_6 - C_{24})aryl and/or substituted in the alkynyl group with one or more substituents defined above for (C_1 - C_{18})alkyl.

As used herein, the term "optionally substituted (C_1 - C_{18})acyl" refers to a (C_1 - C_{18})acyl group as previously defined which may be substituted with one or more groups selected from the substituents defined for (C_1 - C_{18})alkyl, and includes within its meaning an acyl residue of a naturally occurring or synthetic amino acid or azaamino acid, or an acyl residue of a peptide chain containing 2-4 naturally occurring or synthetic amino acids and/or azaamino acids.

Examples of substituted acyl groups include acyl residues of any of the naturally occurring or synthetic amino acids exemplified herein, hydroxyloweralkanoyl, lower-alkoxyloweralkanoyl, acetylloweralkanoyl, cyanoloweralkanoyl, carboxyloweralkanoyl,

hydroxycarboxyloweralkanoyl, fluoroloweralkanoyl, chloroloweralkanoyl, bromoloweralkanoyl, thioloweralkanoyl, loweralkanethioloweralkanoyl, aminoloweralkanoyl, loweralkylaminoloweralkanoyl, di-(loweralkylamino)loweralkanoyl, carbamoylloweralkanoyl, loweralkoxycarbonyl, carbamoyl, loweralkylaminocarbonyl and di-(loweralkylamino)-5 carbonyl, where loweralkanoyl is an alkanoyl group of from 1 to 6 carbon atoms, for example formyl, acetyl, propionyl, butyryl, isobutyryl, pentanoyl and hexanoyl, and where loweralkyl signifies a (C₁-C₆)alkyl group such as methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, isopropyl, n-butyl, iso-butyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, n-pentyl, iso-pentyl, neo-pentyl and hexyl.

10 As used herein, the term "optionally substituted heterocyclic" refers to a heterocyclic group as previously defined wherein one or more hydrogen atoms may be replaced with a group selected from the substitutents defined above with regard to optionally substituted (C₆-C₂₄)aryl. Examples of substituted heterocyclic groups include loweralkylheterocyclic, arylheterocyclic, aryloxyheterocyclic, loweralkoxyheterocyclic, 15 oxo-heterocyclic, hydroxyheterocyclic, loweralkoxycarbonylheterocyclic and lower-alkanoylheterocyclic.

As used herein, the term "optionally substituted heterocyclic(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl" refers to a heterocyclic(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl group as previously defined substituted in the heterocyclic group with one or more substitutents defined above for heterocyclic and/or substituted in 20 the alkyl group with one or more substitutents defined above for (C₁-C₁₈)alkyl. Examples of such groups are (substituted heterocyclic)-lower-alkyl such as (substituted heterocyclic)methyl, (substituted heterocyclic)ethyl, (substituted heterocyclic)propyl, (substituted heterocyclic)iso-propyl, (substituted heterocyclic)butyl, (substituted heterocyclic)pentyl and (substituted heterocyclic)hexyl, heterocyclic(substituted 25 loweralkyl) such as pyrrolyl(substituted loweralkyl), indolyl(substituted loweralkyl), quinolyl(substituted loweralkyl), tetrahydroquinolyl(substituted loweralkyl), pyridyl-(substituted loweralkyl), morpholinyl(substituted loweralkyl), piperidinyl(substituted loweralkyl), thiomorpholinyl(substituted loweralkyl), thienyl(substituted loweralkyl), furanyl(substituted loweralkyl), benzfuranyl(substituted loweralkyl), pyrrolidinyl-30 (substituted loweralkyl) and iso-quinolyl(substituted loweralkyl), and (substituted heterocyclic)(substituted loweralkyl), wherein in each case substituted heterocyclic is as exemplified above with respect to "optionally substituted heterocyclic" and (substituted loweralkyl) is as exemplified above with respect to "optionally substituted (C₁-C₁₈)alkyl".

As used herein, the term "optionally substituted heterocyclic(C₁-C₁₈)alkenyl" 35 refers to a heterocyclic(C₁-C₁₈)alkenyl group as previously defined substituted in the heterocyclic group with one or more substitutents defined above for heterocyclic and/or substituted in the alkenyl group with one or more substitutents defined above for (C₁-C₁₈)alkenyl.

As used herein, the term "optionally substituted heterocyclic(C₁-C₁₈)alkynyl" refers to a heterocyclic(C₁-C₁₈)alkynyl group as previously defined substituted in the heterocyclic group with one or more substituents defined above for heterocyclic and/or substituted in the alkynyl group with one or more substituents defined above for (C₁-C₁₈)alkynyl.

As used herein, the term "optionally substituted alkylidene" refers to an alkylidene radical as previously defined, in which one or more hydrogen atoms is replaced by substituent(s) independently selected from the substituents defined above in connection with "optionally substituted (C₁-C₁₈)alkyl".

10 As used herein, the term "naturally occurring or synthetic amino acid" refers to a compound of the formula HN(R₄₀₁)(CH(R₄₀₀))_pCOOH, wherein R₄₀₀ and R₄₀₁ independently have the meaning of R₂₀ as previously defined, and p is 1, 2 or 3, and wherein R₄₀₀ and R₄₀₁, together with the carbon and nitrogen to which they are bound may together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system.

15 Examples of naturally occurring or synthetic amino acids include alanine, cyclohexylalanine, anthranilic acid, arginine, asparagine, aspartic acid, cysteine, β -phenylcysteine, cystine, glutamic acid, glutamine, glycine, cyclohexylglycine, tetrahydrofurylglycine, histidine, homoserine, hydroxyproline, isoleucine, leucine, lysine, 4-azalysine, δ -hydroxylysine, methionine, norleucine, norvaline, ornithine,

20 phenylalanine, 4-aminophenylalanine, 4-carboxyphenylalanine, 4-chlorophenylalanine, phenylglycine, 8-phenylserine, proline, serine, threonine, trans-3-hydroxyproline, trans-4-hydroxyproline, tryptophan, tyrosine, valine, indoline-2-carboxylic acid, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, aminomalonic acid, aminomalonic acid monoamide, α -aminobutyric acid, α,γ -diaminobutyric acid and α,β -diaminopropionic acid. Other

25 amino acids, and peptides derived therefrom, are disclosed in J. S. Davies, ed., *Amino Acids and Peptides*, Chapman and Hall, London, 1985, the disclosure of which is incorporated herein by reference.

As used herein, the term "residue of a naturally occurring or synthetic amino acid" refers to a group of the formula -N(R₄₀₁)(CH(R₄₀₀))_pC(O)-, wherein R₄₀₀, R₄₀₁ and p are as defined above with regard to "naturally occurring or synthetic amino acid".

As used herein, the term "azaamino acid" refers to an amino acid in which a -CH(R₄₀₀)- group has been replaced by a group -N(R₄₀₁)-, wherein R₄₀₁ has the meaning of R₂₀ as previously defined.

Suitable pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the compound of formula (I) are,

35 where the compound of formula (I) contains a basic nitrogen atom, acid addition salts of pharmaceutically acceptable inorganic acids such as hydrochloric, sulfuric, phosphoric, nitric, carbonic, boric, sulfamic, hydrobromic or hydriodic, or with pharmaceutically acceptable organic acids such as acetic, propionic, butyric, tartaric, maleic, hydroxymaleic, methylmaleic, fumaric, malic, citric, lactic, mucic, gluconic,

glucoheptonic, glucaric, glucuronic, lactobionic, benzoic, naphthoic, succinic, oxalic, phenylacetic, methanesulphonic, ethanesulfonic, 2-hydroxyethanesulfonic, ethane-1,2-disulfonic, laurylsulfonic, toluenesulphonic, benzenesulphonic, naphthalene-2-sulfonic, salicylic, 4-aminosalicylic, sulphanilic, aspartic, glutamic, edetic, stearic, palmitic, oleic, 5 lauric, pantothenic, tannic, ascorbic, valeric, glycolic, cinnamic, mandelic, 2-phenoxybenzoic, 2-acetoxybenzoic, embonic, nicotinic, isonicotinic, N-cyclohexylsulfamic or other acidic organic compounds, such as 2- or 3-phosphoglycerate and glucose-6-phosphate. Where the compound of formula (I) contains an acid group, suitable pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the compound of formula (I) are addition 10 salts of pharmaceutically acceptable bases such as lithium, sodium, potassium, ammonium, magnesium, calcium and zinc salts, or salts formed with organic amines such as methylamine, dimethylamine, trimethylamine, ethylamine, diethylamine, triethylamine, N-methyl-N-ethylamine, mono-, bis- or tris-(2-hydroxyethyl)amine, 2-hydroxy-tert-butylamine, tris(hydroxymethyl)methylamine, N,N-dimethyl-N-(2-hydroxyethyl)-amine, tri-(2- 15 hydroxyethyl)-amine, N-methyl-D-glucamine, or tributylamine. Compounds of formula I having acid and basic groups can also form internal salts. Other suitable salts are described, for example, in S. M. Berge, *et al.*, "Pharmaceutical Salts" *J. Pharm. Sci.*, 66 1-19 (1977) which is incorporated herein by reference.

The expression "prodrug" as used herein refers to a pharmaceutically acceptable 20 derivative of a compound of formula (I) which is transformed into a compound of formula (I) after administration of the prodrug to a living animal or human, and which has enhanced stability, delivery characteristics and/or therapeutic value compared to the compound of formula (I) from which it derives.

The expression "protecting group" as used herein refers to a group which may be 25 used temporarily to modify a functional group, for example to prevent that functional group from being affected by, or from undesirably affecting the outcome of, a desired reaction involving another functional group in the molecule and/or to prevent premature metabolism of the compound of formula (I) after administration to a patient before the compound can reach the desired site of action. Suitable protecting groups are described, 30 for example in Greene, T. W., *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis* (John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1981) and McOmie, J. F. W., *Protective Groups in Organic Chemistry* (Plenum Press, London, 1973).

Examples of suitable protecting groups for hydroxyl or mercapto substituents include substituted methyl ethers, for example, methoxymethyl, benzyloxymethyl, 35 t-butyloxymethyl, 2-methoxyethoxymethyl, 1-ethoxyethyl, methylthiomethyl, 1-methylthioethyl, benzyl, allyl, triphenylmethyl and the like, other etherifying groups such as 2-tetrahydrofuryl, 2-tetrahydropyranyl and vinyl, or by acyl and carbonate groups such as formyl, 2,2-dichloroacetyl, 2,2,2-trichloroacetyl, t-butyloxycarbonyl, benzyloxycarbonyl,

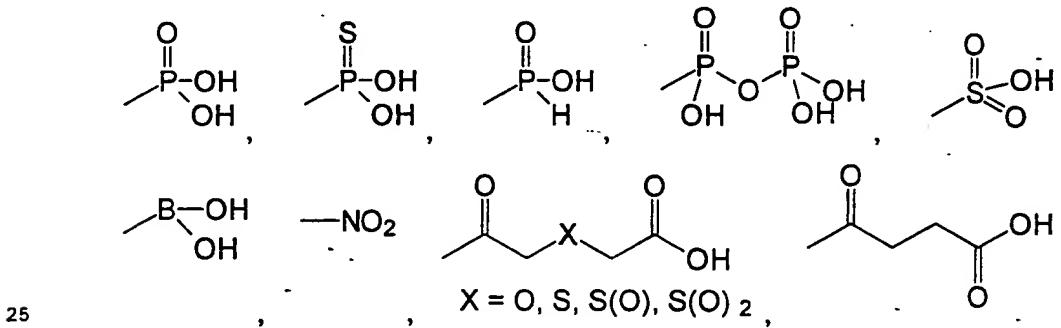
4-nitrobenzyloxycarbonyl, and 4-methoxybenzyloxycarbonyl, or by silyl groups such as trimethylsilyl, t-butyldimethylsilyl, tribenzylsilyl, triphenylsilyl and the like.

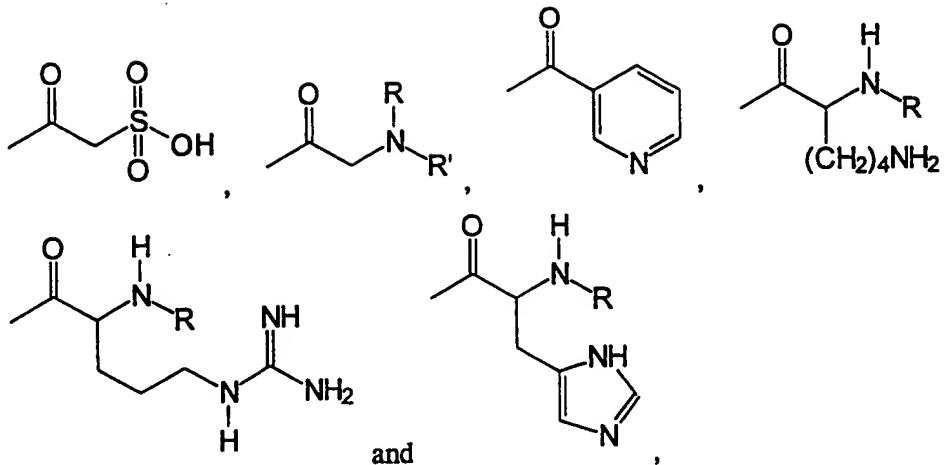
Suitable protecting groups for amino substituents include acyl groups such as formyl, acetyl, 3-phenylpropionyl, chloroacetyl, trifluoroacetyl, trichloroacetyl, benzoyl, 5 4-nitrobenzoyl, 4-methoxybenzoyl, t-butyloxycarbonyl, benzyloxycarbonyl, 4-nitrobenzyl-oxycarbonyl, 4-chlorobenzyloxycarbonyl, 4-methoxybenzyloxycarbonyl, 9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl, (2-pyridyl)methoxycarbonyl, quinoline-2-carbonyl, 2-trimethylsilylethoxycarbonyl, or trimethylsilyl, or an aminoacyl residue.

Suitable protecting groups for carboxyl substituents include esters, for example 10 methyl, ethyl, tert-butyl, benzyl, 4-nitrobenzyl, 4-methoxybenzyl, methoxymethyl, 2-methoxyethoxymethyl, benzyloxymethyl, methylthiomethyl, 2,2,2-trichloroethyl, 2-bromoethyl, 2-iodoethyl, 2-trimethylsilylethyl, 2-triphenylsilylethyl, t-butyldimethylsilyl or trimethylsilyl esters.

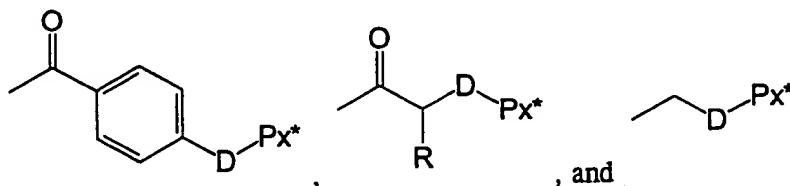
Suitable protecting groups for carbonyl substituents include acetals such as 15 dimethyl, diethyl, dibutyl and dibenzyl, thioacetals such as S,S-dimethyl and S,S-diethyl, cyclic acetals and thioacetals such as 1,3-dioxanes, 1,3-dioxolanes, 1,3-oxathiolanes, 1,3-dithianes and 1,3-dithiolanes, and oximes and hydrazones such as O-benzyl oximes, O-phenylthiomethyl oximes and N,N-dimethyl hydrazones.

The expression "solubilising group Px" as used herein refers to a group which 20 may be used to derivatise a functional group so as to enhance the solubility of the compound of formula (I) in water or aqueous media. Examples of solubilising groups for inclusion in the compound of formula (I) are groups of the formula Px* or salts thereof, where Px* is selected from:

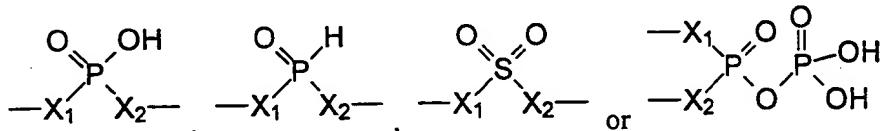




wherein R and R' are independently hydrogen or C₁-C₄ alkyl. Also included within the meaning of Px are groups of the following formulae, wherein Px* and D are as previously defined, and R is H or C₁-C₄ alkyl:



Where the compound of formula (I) includes two functional groups capable of being derivatised by a solubilising group, the two functional groups being in sufficiently close proximity to one another, it will be appreciated that certain of the solubilising groups exemplified above are capable of forming cyclic structures, for example including the following structural units:

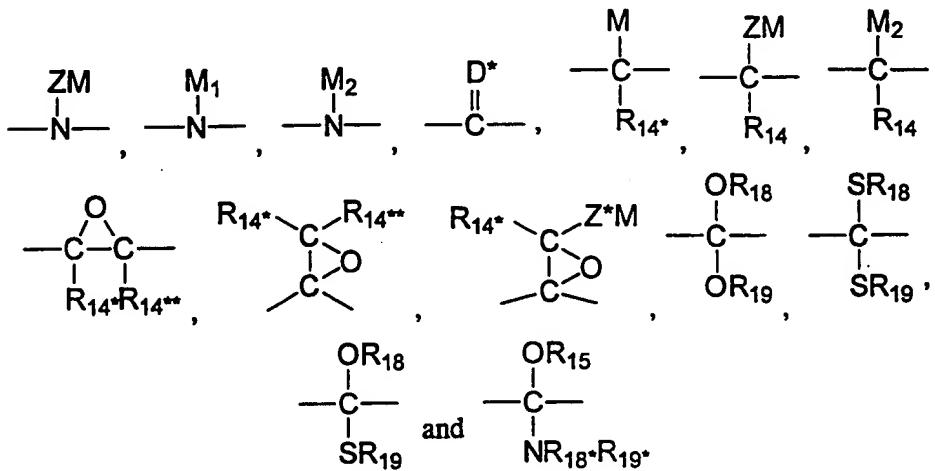


wherein X₁ and X₂ are independently selected from O, S and NR₆ wherein R₆ is as previously defined. Solubilising groups in a cyclic structure, such as those exemplified above, also fall within the meaning of "solubilising group" as used herein.

Where the solubilising group is acidic, a salt thereof is typically a salt of an alkali metal or ammonia, such as Na⁺, K⁺ or NH₄⁺. Where the solubilising group is basic, a salt thereof is typically a salt of a strong inorganic acid such as hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid or nitric acid. Typically, the solubilising group is a sodium or potassium salt of a phosphate or phosphite residue.

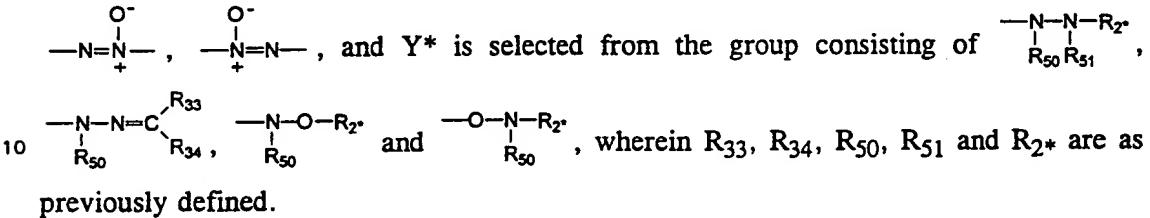
Solubilising or protecting groups which are included in the compound of formula (I) must be amenable to hydrolytic or metabolic cleavage in vivo.

In one form of the present invention, in the compound of the general formula (I), B is typically selected from the group consisting of

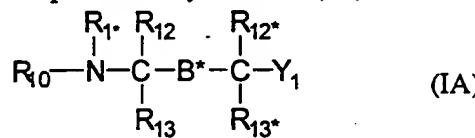


5

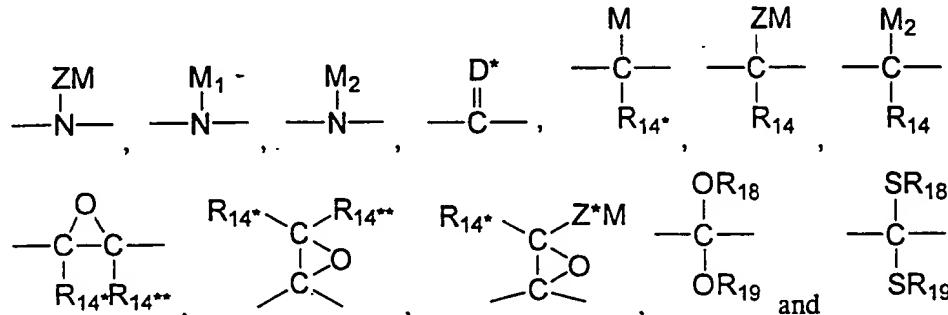
where Z, Z*, M, M₁, M₂, D*, R₁₄, R_{14*}, R₁₅, R₁₈, R_{18*}, R₁₉ and R_{19*} are as previously defined, and V is YR₂, Y* or C(R₃₀)=Y**, wherein R₂, R₃₀ and Y** are as previously defined, and wherein Y is selected from the group consisting of $\text{---N}=\text{N}---$,



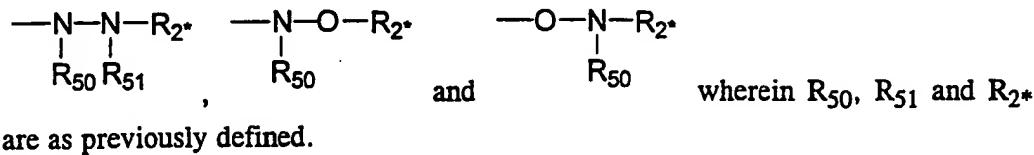
More typically, the compound of the general formula (I) in this form of the invention has the structure represented by formula (IA):



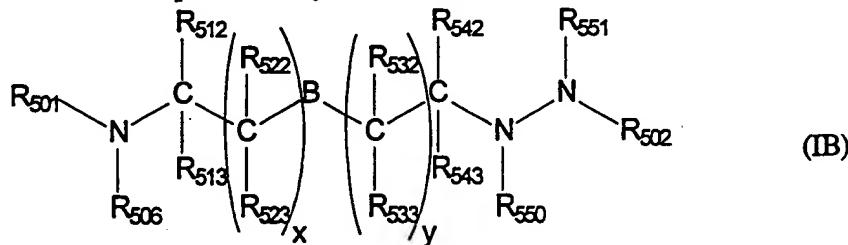
15 where R_{1*}, R₁₀, R₁₂, R_{12*}, R₁₃ and R_{13*} are as previously defined, B* is selected from the group consisting of



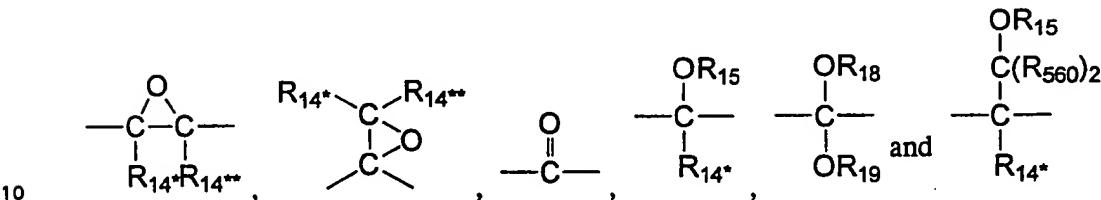
where Z , Z^* , M , M_1 , M_2 , D^* , R_{14} , R_{14*} , R_{14**} , R_{18} and R_{19} are as previously defined, and Y_1 is selected from the group consisting of



Even more typically, the compound of the general formula (I) in this form of the invention has the structure represented by formula (IB):



wherein x and y are independently 0 or 1, B is selected from the group consisting of



wherein R_{14*} , R_{14**} , R_{15} , R_{18} and R_{19} are as previously defined and each R_{560} is independently hydrogen or $(C_1-C_4)alkyl$,

R_{502} and R_{506} are independently a group R_{600} , wherein R_{600} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, $C(O)OR_{621}$, $C(O)SR_{621}$, $C(O)NR_{621}R_{622}$, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_5-C_{10})cycloalkyl$, $(C_5-C_{10})cycloalkyl(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_5-C_{10})cycloalkyl(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_6-C_{10})aryl$, $(C_6-C_{10})aryl(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_6-C_{10})aryl(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_1-C_6)acyl$, heterocyclic, heterocyclic($C_1-C_6)alkyl$ and heterocyclic($C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, each of which may be substituted by up to three substituents selected from the substituents defined above for "optionally substituted $(C_1-C_{18})alkyl$ " and R_{621} and R_{622} have the meaning of R_{21} and R_{22} respectively, as previously defined, or R_{621} and R_{622} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below.

25 R_{501} is selected from the group consisting of R_{600} as previously defined, $S(O)OR_{632}$, $S(O)_2R_{632}$, $S(O)NR_{632}R_{633}$, $S(O)_2R_{632}R_{633}$, NH_2 , NHR_{631} and $NR_{631}R_{632}$, wherein R_{631} has the meaning of R_6 as previously defined and R_{632} and R_{633} independently have the meaning of R_{20} as

previously defined, or R_{501} and R_{506} together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system, or R_{631} and R_{632} , or R_{632} and R_{633} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below,

5 R_{512} and R_{542} independently have the meaning of R_{600} as previously defined, R_{522} and R_{532} are independently selected from the group consisting of R_{600} as previously defined, F, Cl, Br and I,

10 R_{513} and R_{543} are independently selected from the group consisting of R_{600} as previously defined and R_{200} as previously defined,

15 R_{523} and R_{533} are independently selected from the group consisting of R_{600} as previously defined, F, Cl, Br, I, and R_{200} as previously defined,

20 R_{550} has the meaning of R_6 as previously defined and R_{551} is selected from the group consisting of R_{650} , hydrogen, $S(O)OR_{632}$, $S(O)_2R_{632}$, $S(O)NR_{632}R_{633}$ and $S(O)_2R_{632}R_{633}$, wherein R_{650} has the meaning of R_6 as previously defined and R_{632} and R_{633} are as previously defined, or R_{632} and R_{633} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below, or R_{550} and one of R_{551} and R_{502} together form a diazaheterocycle wherein R_{550} , R_{551} or R_{502} and the two nitrogen atoms to which they are bonded are part of a stable 5 to 10-membered ring which may comprise up to two further heteroatoms selected from O, S and N and to which may be fused one or more cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl or heterocyclic residues, which diazaheterocycle may be substituted by one or more of the substituents defined above for "optionally substituted (C_1 - C_{18})alkyl", and wherein two substituents may together form part of a ring,

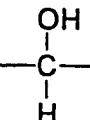
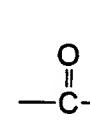
25 or one pair selected from R_{512} and R_{513} , R_{522} and R_{523} (when present), R_{532} and R_{533} (when present), and R_{542} and R_{543} , together are =O;

wherein, when B is other than $\begin{array}{c} O \\ \parallel \\ C \end{array}$ or $\begin{array}{c} OR_{15} \\ | \\ C \\ | \\ R_{14*} \end{array}$ then at least one of

30 conditions (i) to (xi) below applies:

(i) at least one of R_{512} and R_{542} is a group R_{655} , wherein R_{655} is selected from the group consisting of (C_1 - C_6)alkyl(C_6 - C_{10})aryl, (C_2 - C_6)alkenyl- $(C_6$ - C_{10})aryl, (C_5 - C_{10})cycloalkyl(C_2 - C_6)alkenyl, (C_5 - C_{10})cycloalkyl- $(C_6$ - C_{10})aryl, acyl(C_6 - C_{10})aryl, heterocyclic(C_1 - C_6)alkyl, heterocyclic(C_2 - C_6)alkenyl, heterocyclic(C_6 - C_{10})aryl, $C(D^*)OR_{21*}$, $C(D^*)SR_{21*}$ and $C(D^*)NR_{21*}R_{22*}$, wherein D^* , R_{21*} and R_{22*} are as previously defined,

- (ii) at least one of R_{522} and R_{532} , when present, is selected from the group consisting of R_{655} as previously defined, F, Cl, Br and I,
- (iii) at least one of R_{513} and R_{543} , when present, is selected from the group consisting of R_{655} as previously defined, and R_{200} as previously defined,
- 5 (iv) at least one of R_{523} and R_{533} , when present, is selected from the group consisting of R_{655} as previously defined, F, Cl, Br, I and R_{200} as previously defined,
- (v) R_{550} is a group R_{656} , wherein R_{656} is selected from the group consisting of (C_1-C_6) alkyl(C_6-C_{10})aryl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl(C_6-C_{10})aryl, (C_5-C_{10}) cycloalkyl(C_2-C_6)alkenyl, (C_5-C_{10}) cycloalkyl(C_6-C_{10})aryl, acyl(C_6-C_{10})aryl, heterocyclic(C_1-C_6)alkyl, heterocyclic(C_2-C_6)alkenyl, heterocyclic(C_6-C_{10})aryl,
- 10 (vi) R_{551} is selected from the group consisting of R_{656} as previously defined, $S(O)OR_{632}$, $S(O)_2R_{632}$, $S(O)NR_{632}R_{633}$ and $S(O)_2R_{632}R_{633}$, wherein R_{632} and R_{633} are as previously defined,
- 15 (vii) R_{502} is selected from the group consisting of R_{656} as previously defined, $C(D^*)SR_{21*}$ and $C(D^*)NR_{21*}R_{22*}$, wherein D^* , R_{21*} and R_{22*} are as previously defined,
- (viii) R_{502} and R_{551} are both hydrogen or are both (C_1-C_6) acyl,
- 20 (ix) R_{14*} is selected from the group consisting of $C(D^*)OR_{40}$, $C(D^*)SR_{40}$ and $C(D^*)NR_{40}R_{41}$, wherein R_{40} and R_{41} are as previously defined,
- (x) R_{501} is selected from the group consisting of R_{656} as previously defined, $S(O)OR_{632}$, $S(O)_2R_{632}$, $S(O)NR_{632}R_{633}$, $S(O)_2R_{632}R_{633}$, NH_2 , NHR_{631} and $NR_{631}R_{632}$, wherein R_{632} and R_{633} are as previously defined,
- 25 (xi) R_{501} and R_{506} are both (C_1-C_6) acyl,

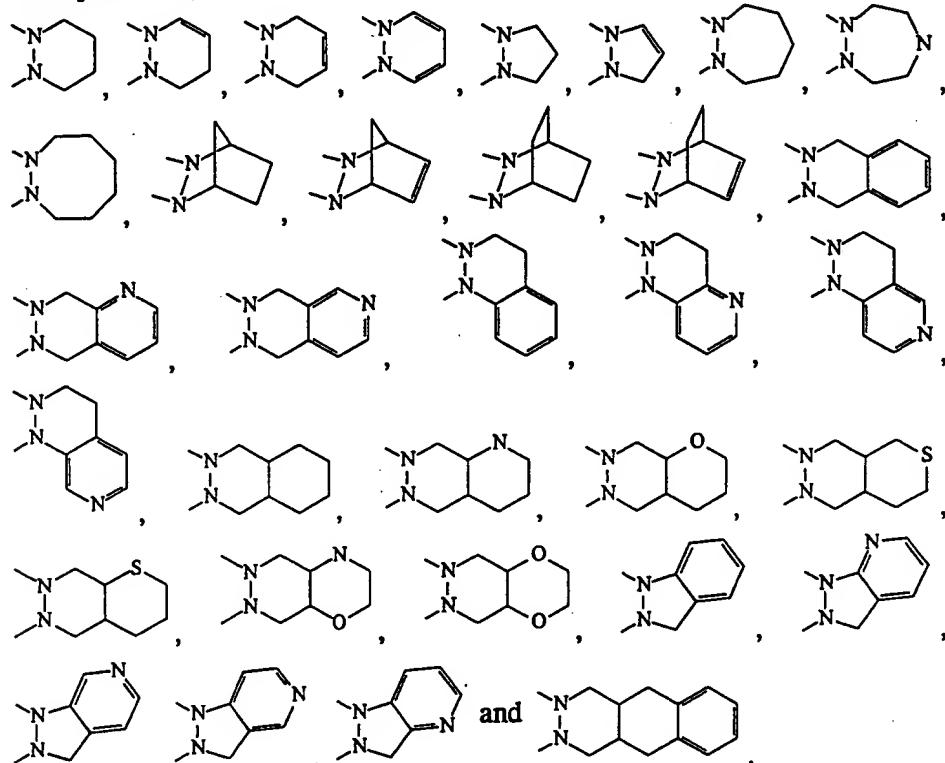
and wherein when B is  or  then at least one of the

following conditions also applies:

- (xii) $x + y > 0$,
- (xiii) $x + y = 0$ and at least one of R_{532} and R_{533} is other than hydrogen,
- 30 (xiv) R_{501} and R_{502} together form a diazaheterocycle as previously defined,
- (xv) at least one of R_{501} , R_{502} , R_{506} and R_{551} is optionally substituted heterocyclic(C_1-C_{18})alkyl, and
- 35 (xvi) at least one of R_{512} , R_{542} , R_{522} , R_{532} , R_{513} , R_{543} , R_{523} and R_{533} is selected from the group consisting of $C(O)OR_{621}$, $C(O)SR_{621}$

and $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}_{621}\text{R}_{622}$, wherein R_{621} and R_{622} are as previously defined.

Examples of typical unsubstituted diazaheterocycles are:



10 Other forms of the first embodiment of the invention have the structures represented by formulae (IC) to (IAW) below, in which each AA is independently a residue of a naturally occurring or synthetic amino acid as herein defined; R_{1*}, R₁, X and X* are as previously defined; R_a to R_j independently are -(CH₂)_{a-6}OPy, wherein a can be 0, 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5, halogen or R₆, more typically -(CH₂)₀₋₃OPy, fluoro, chloro or R_{6*} wherein Py is a solubilising group Px as defined herein, R₆ is as previously defined and R_{6*} is selected from the group consisting of

hydrogen,

R_{20*} , wherein R_{20*} is selected from the group consisting of

optionally substituted (C₁-C₆)alkyl,

optionally substituted (C₂-C₆)alkenyl,

optionally substituted (C₂-C₆)alkynyl,

optionally substituted (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl,

optionally substituted (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl(C₁-C₆)alkyl,

optionally substituted (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl(C₂-C₆)alkenyl,

optionally substituted (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl(C₂-

optionally substituted (C_6 - C_{10})aryl,

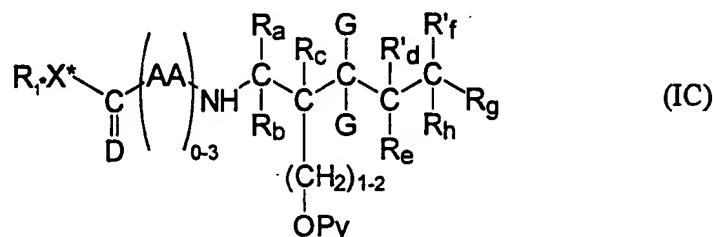
optionally substituted (C₆-C₁₀)aryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl,

optionally substituted (C₆-C₁₀)aryl(C₂-C₆)alkenyl,
optionally substituted (C₁-C₆)acyl,
optionally substituted heterocyclic, and
optionally substituted heterocyclic(C₁-C₆)alkyl,

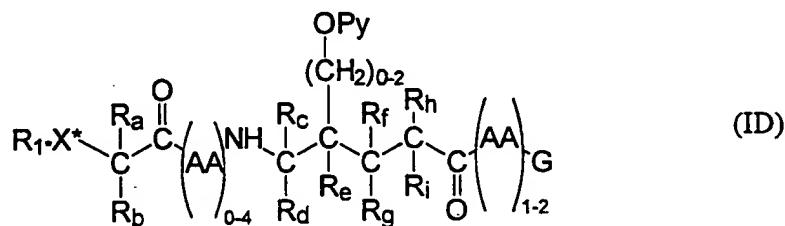
5 C(O)OR₂₁

$\text{C}(\text{O})\text{SR}_2$, and

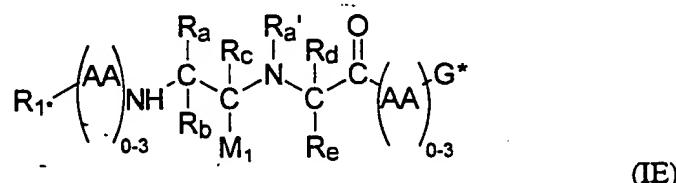
$\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}_{21}\text{R}_{22}$, wherein R_{21} and R_{22} independently are selected from hydrogen and R_{20*} as previously defined, or R_{21} and R_{22} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as previously defined:



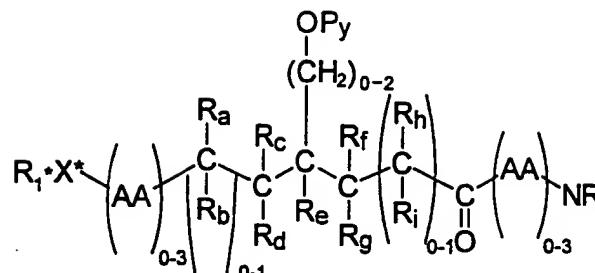
wherein D' is O or S, and each G is independently hydrogen or R₂₀₀ as previously defined and wherein R'_d and R'_f are R_d and R_f or, taken together, may be trimethylene or tetramethylene optimally substituted with -C(O)OR; or -C(O)NR_iR_j;



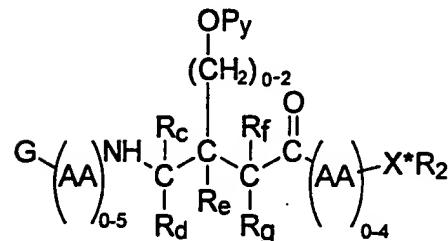
wherein G is selected from R_{1*} and X^*R_{1*} ;



wherein R_a' is OPy or R_6 as previously defined, M_1 is R_6 as previously defined, $(CH_2)_{1-2}OPy$ or $(CH_2)_{1-2}NHPy$, and G^* is OR_2 or NR_1R_2 ;

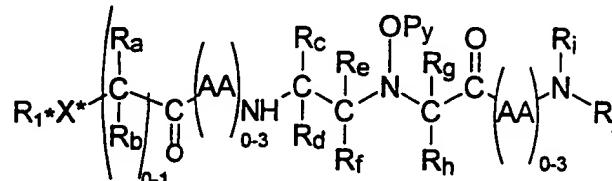


(IF);



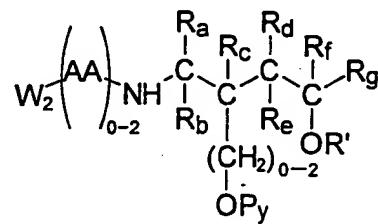
(IG)

wherein G is hydrogen, R_a, R₁*X* or R₁*X*C(R_a)(R_b)C(O), and wherein R_a, R₁*, and the atoms to which they are bound may optionally form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, 5 bicyclic or fused ring system;



(IH)

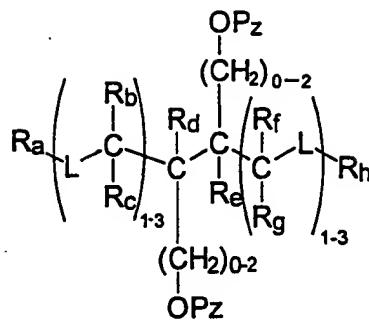
wherein R_a, R₁*, and the atoms to which they are bound may optionally form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system;



(II)

10 wherein W₂ is R₁X or R₆ as previously defined, and R' is Py or R₆ as previously defined, or R' and Py, taken together with the oxygen atoms to which they are attached form a

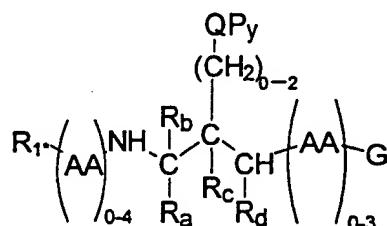
group selected from $\text{HO}-\text{P}(\text{O})_2\text{O}-$, $\text{H}-\text{P}(\text{O})_2\text{O}-$ and $\text{O}-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{O}-$;



(IJ)

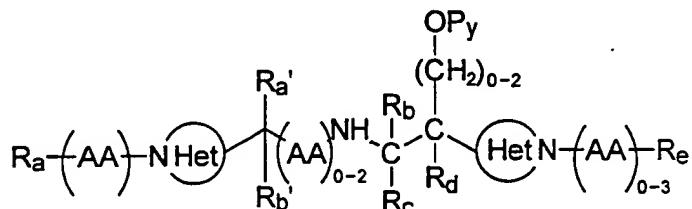
wherein each L is independently as previously defined and each Pz is independently hydrogen or Py, provided that at least one Pz is Py or, when each Pz is Py, the groups Py, together with the oxygen atoms to which the are bound define a cyclic group selected

5 from $\text{HO}-\overset{\text{O}}{\underset{\text{O}}{\text{P}}}-\text{O}-$, $\text{H}-\overset{\text{O}}{\underset{\text{O}}{\text{P}}}-\text{O}-$ and $\text{O}-\overset{\text{O}}{\underset{\text{O}}{\text{S}}}-\text{O}-$;



(IK)

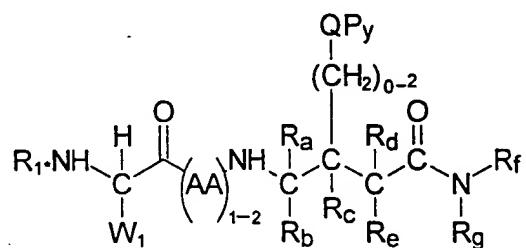
wherein Q is O or NR_f and G is R_{1*} or X* R_{1*};



(IL)

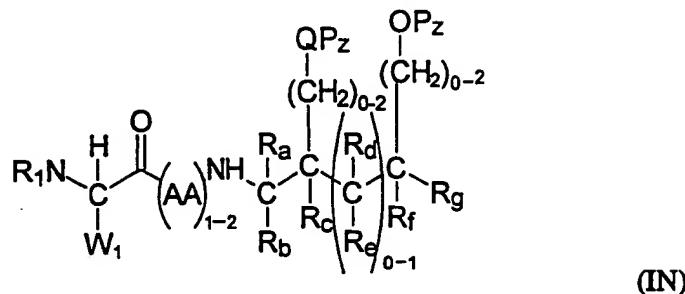
wherein each NHet is independently a 5- or 6- membered saturated or unsaturated

10 heterocycle containing a nitrogen atom and optionally additionally one or two heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur, and wherein R_{a'} and R_{b'} independently have the meaning of -(CH₂)₀₋₆OPy or R₆, or taken together are = O;

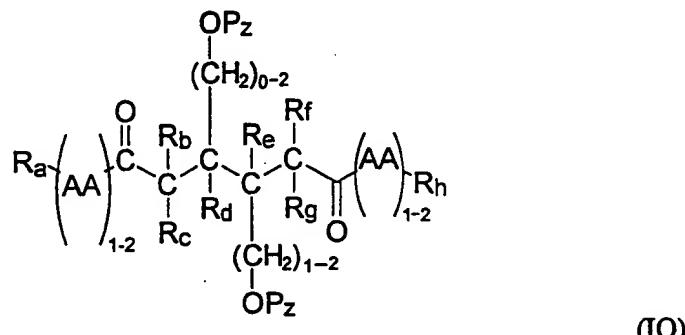


(IM)

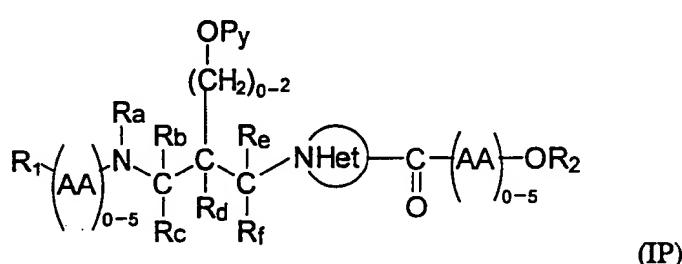
wherein W_1 is selected from R_1X and R_1*X^* , and Q is selected from O and NR_h ;



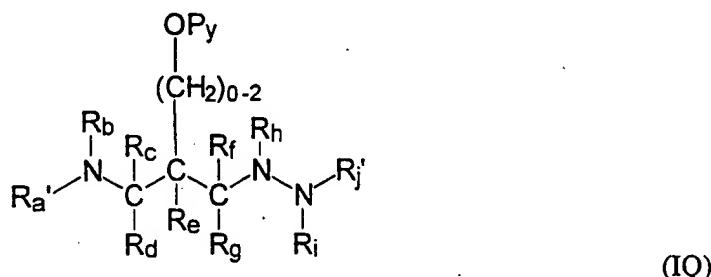
wherein W_1 is selected from R_1X and R_1*X^* , each Pz is independently hydrogen or Py, provided that at least one Pz is Py, and Q is selected from O and NR_h ;



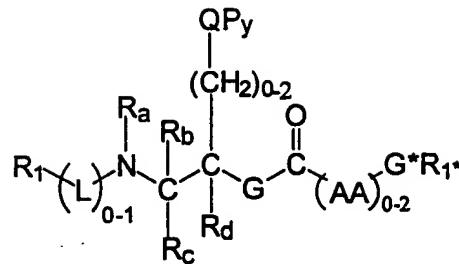
wherein each Pz is independently hydrogen or Py, provided that at least one Pz is Py;



wherein $NHET$ is a 5- or 6-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocycle containing a nitrogen atom and optionally additionally one or two heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, 10 oxygen and sulfur;



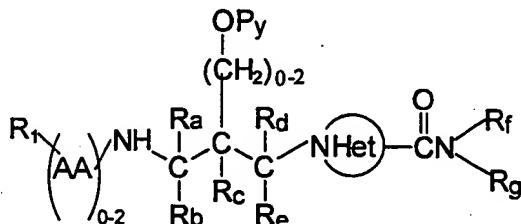
wherein R_a' and R_j' are independently selected from R_1 and R_1* , as previously defined;



(IR)

wherein G is selected from $\begin{array}{c} R_e \\ | \\ -C- \\ | \\ R_f \end{array}$, $\begin{array}{c} R_e \quad R_g \\ | \quad | \\ -C-C- \\ | \quad | \\ R_f \quad R_h \end{array}$ and a saturated or unsaturated

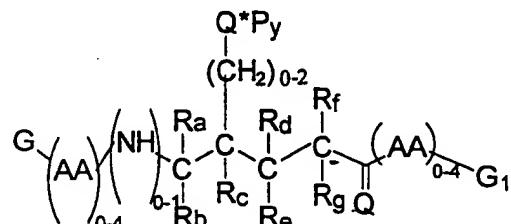
cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system, Q is O or NH, and G* is X or X* as previously defined;



5

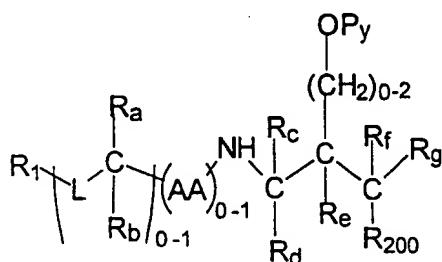
(IS)

wherein NHet is a 5-12 membered saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system containing a nitrogen atom and optionally additionally from 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur;



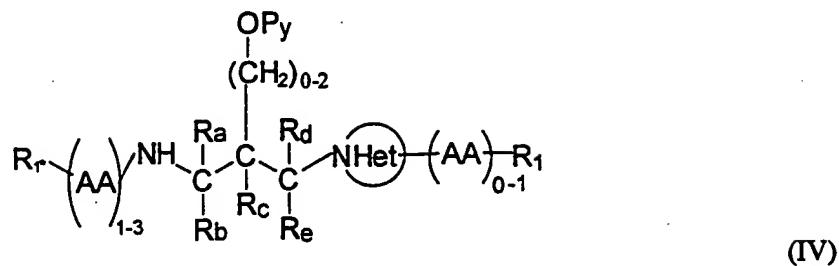
(IT)

10 wherein G is selected from hydrogen and R1*X*, Q is O, S or NH, Q* is O or NH, and G1 is selected from R1 and R1*X*;

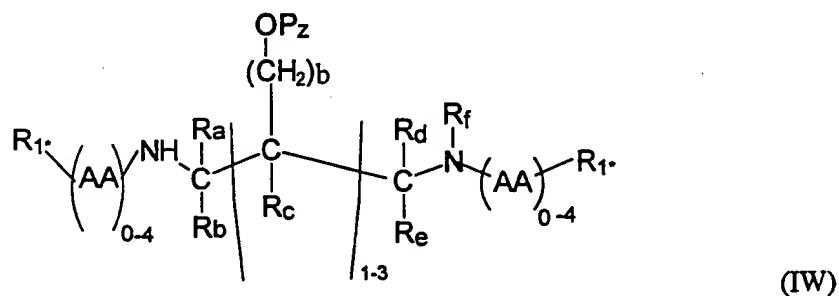


(IU)

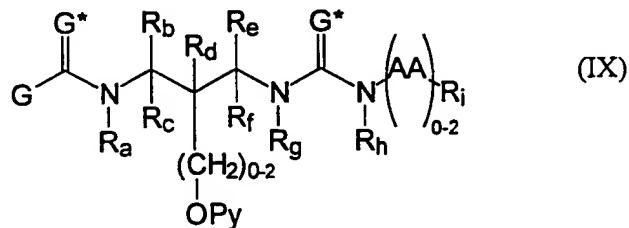
wherein R_{200} is as previously defined;



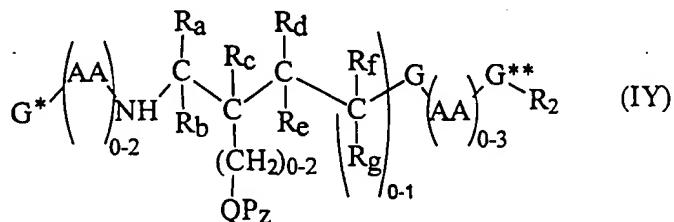
wherein $N\text{Het}$ is an optionally substituted 5-12 membered saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system containing a nitrogen atom and optionally 5 additionally from 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur;



wherein b is 0, 1 or 2, provided that at least one b is greater than 0, and each Pz is independently hydrogen or Py, provided that at least one Pz is Py;



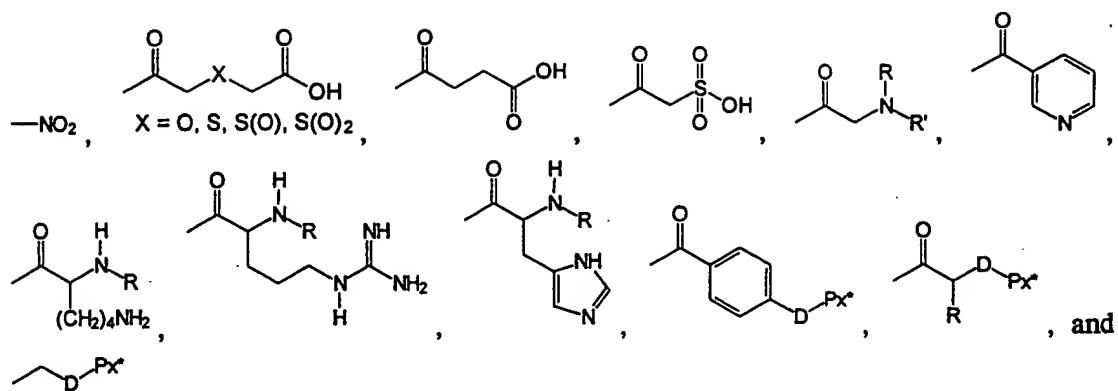
10 wherein each G^* is independently selected from O, S and NR_6 and G is selected from OR_6 , NHR_6 and R_{20} ;



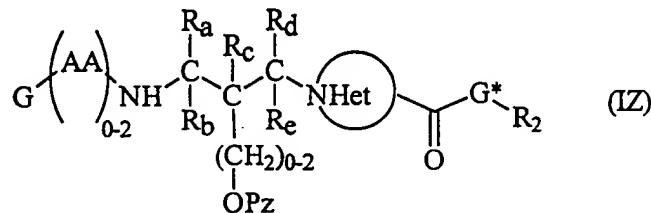
wherein G is $-C(O)-$ or $-CH_2-$, G^* is R_1 or R_{1*} , G^{**} is $-O-$ or $-NR_h-$, Q is $-O-$ or $-NR_i$

and Pz is selected from the group consisting of

49

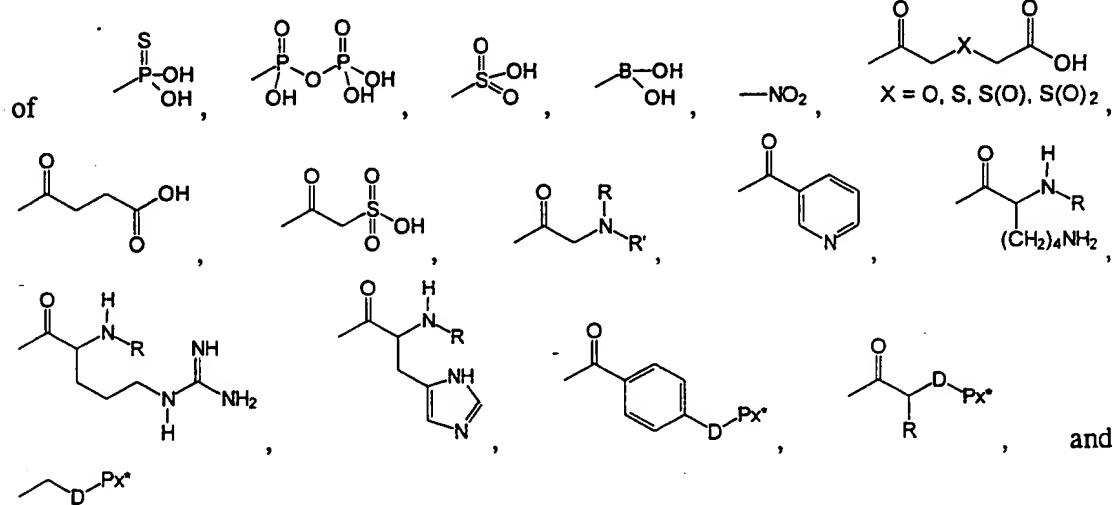


wherein R and R' are independently hydrogen or C₁-C₄ alkyl, D is O or S and Px* is as previously defined;



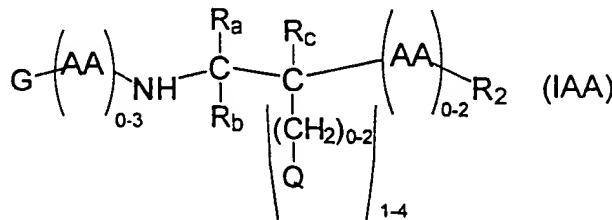
5

wherein G is R₁ or R_{1*}, G* is -O- or -NR_f- and Pz is selected from the group consisting

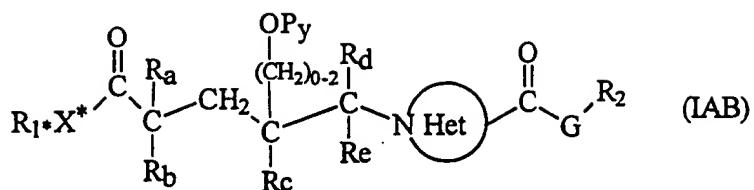


10

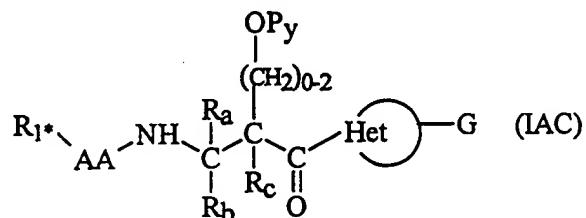
wherein R and R' are independently hydrogen or C₁-C₄ alkyl, D is O or S and Px* is as previously defined;



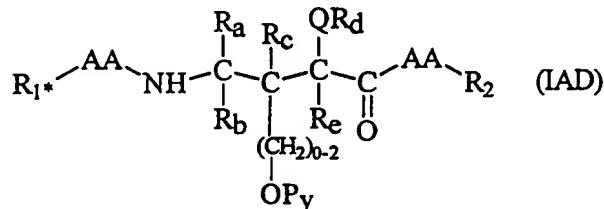
wherein G is R₁ or R_{1*}, and each Q is independently H, -OPz or -NR_dPz, wherein each Pz is independently hydrogen or Py, provided that at least one Pz is Py;



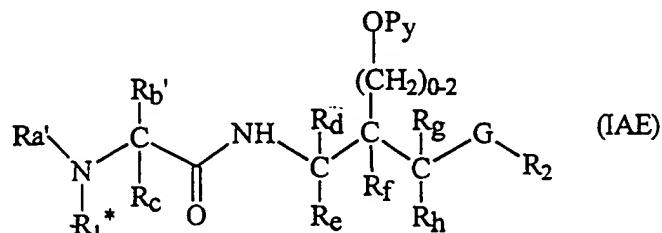
wherein N Het is a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused nitrogen containing ring system and G is a bond or is $-\text{O}-$ or $-\text{NR}_f$;



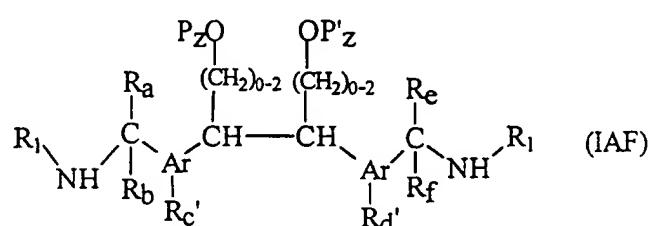
5 wherein G is absent or $\text{X}^* \text{R}_1^*$ and Het is a 3 to 10-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocycle containing a nitrogen atom and optionally additionally one to three heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur;



wherein Q is selected from $-\text{O}-$, $-\text{S}-$ and $-\text{NR}_f$;

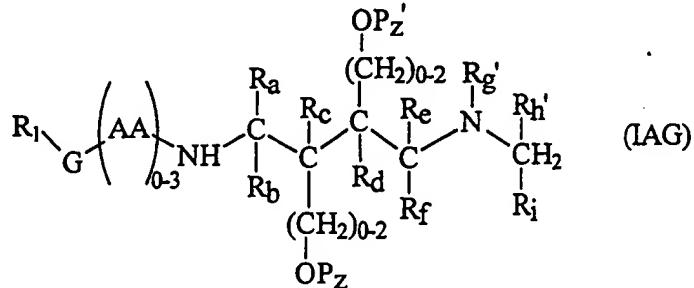
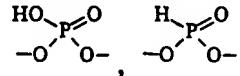
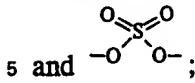


10 wherein G is O , S , $\text{S}(\text{O})$ or $\text{S}(\text{O})_2$, and R_a' and R_b' have the meaning of R_a and R_b or R_a' and R_b' together are trimethylene or tetramethylene;



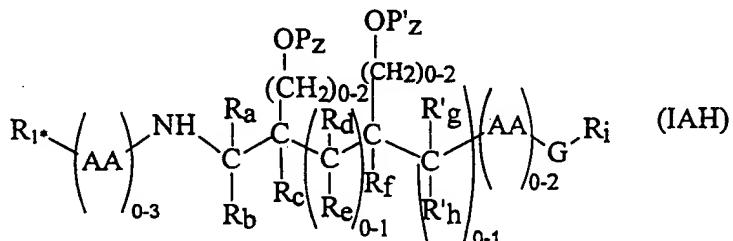
wherein each Ar is independently (C₆-C₁₄)aryl, R'_c and R'_d are R_c and R_d or, taken together, are -C(O)- or -CH(OH)-, and wherein Pz and Pz' are independently hydrogen or Py with the proviso that at least one of Pz and Pz' is Py, or Pz and Pz' together with the

oxygen atoms to which they are attached form a group selected from



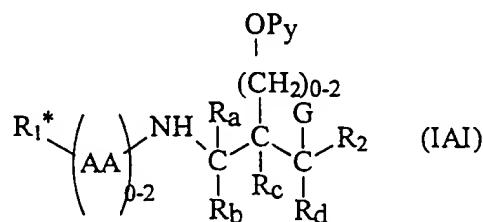
wherein G is a bond or X as previously defined, R_g' and R_h' are R_g and R_h or together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system, and Pz and Pz' are independently hydrogen or Py with the proviso that at least one of Pz and Pz' is Py, or Pz and Pz' together with the oxygen atoms to which they are attached form a group selected

from $\text{HO}-\text{P}(=\text{O})-\text{O}-\text{O}-$, $\text{H}-\text{P}(=\text{O})-\text{O}-\text{O}-$ and $-\text{O}-\text{S}(=\text{O})-\text{O}-$;

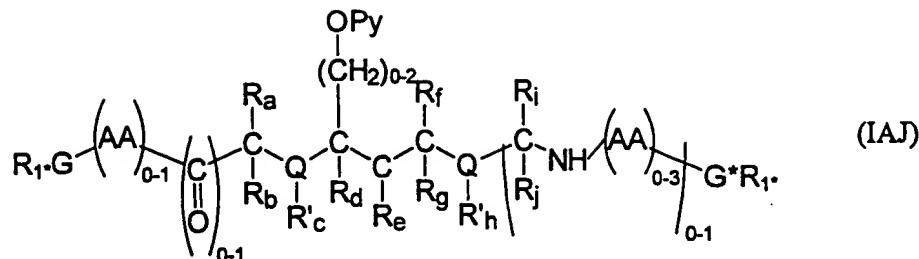


wherein G is a bond, O, S or NR_j, R_g' and R_h' are R_g and R_h, or taken together may be -C(O)-, and Pz and Pz' are independently hydrogen or Py with the proviso that at least one of Pz and Pz' is Py, or Pz and Pz' together with the oxygen atoms to which they are

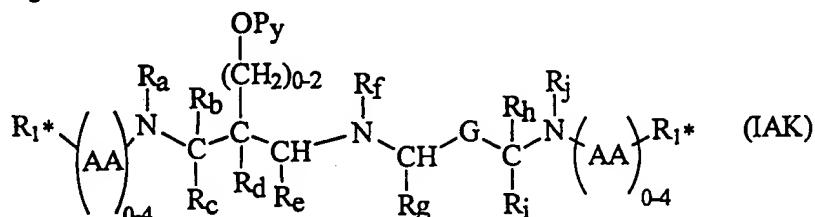
attached form a group selected from $\text{HO}-\text{P}(\text{O})_2-\text{O}-$, $\text{H}-\text{P}(\text{O})_2-\text{O}-$ and $\text{O}-\text{S}(\text{O})_2-\text{O}-$;



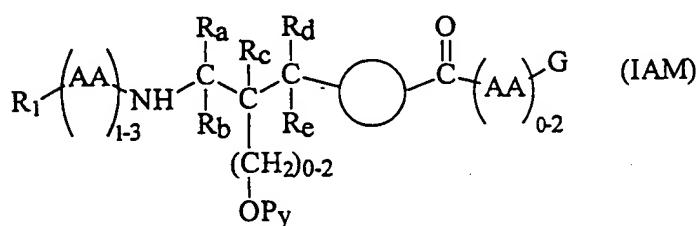
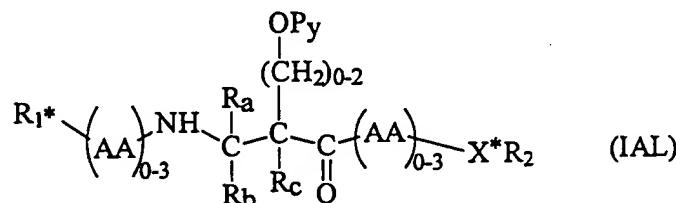
wherein G is OPy, NHR_e, NPyR_e or R_e;



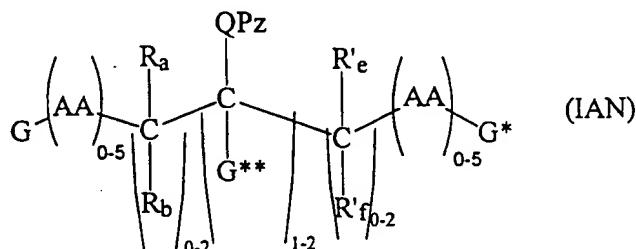
wherein G and G* are independently a bond, O, S or NH, and R'd and Rh' are R_d and R_h or taken together are -CR'₂- or -CR₂'-CR₂'- wherein each R' independently has the meaning of R₆ as previously defined, Q and Q* are independently N or CR₆, or when Q* is CR₆ then R_g and R₆ together may be a double bond;



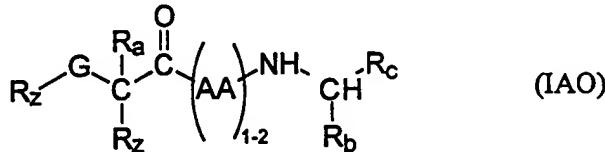
wherein G is $-C(O)-$ or $-C(R_6)(CH_2)_{0-4}OG^*$ wherein G^* is R_6 or Py;



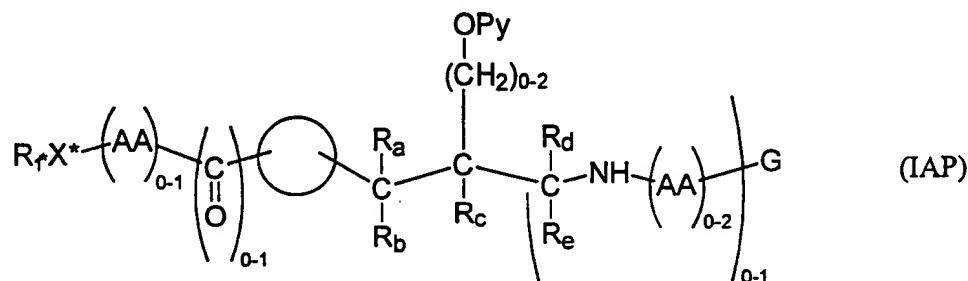
10 wherein G is selected from hydrogen and X^*R_1* and wherein  represents a 4-10 membered saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein;

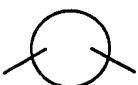


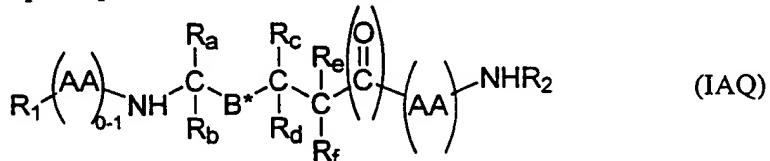
wherein Q is selected from O, S and NR_g, G and G* are independently selected from R₁, R₁*, -C(R₅)=NR₃ and -C(R₅)=NOR₃, wherein R₃ and R₅ are as previously defined, R'_e and R'_f are R_e and R_f, and G** is R₂₀ as previously defined;



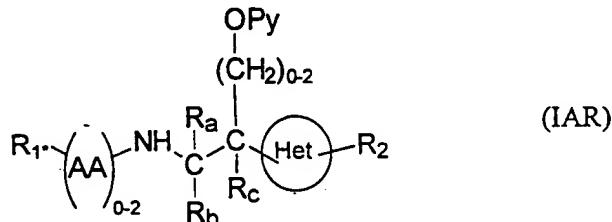
5 wherein each R_z is independently selected from R₁ and PyOG* wherein G* is optionally substituted alkylene, provided that at least one R_z is PyOG*, and G is -NR_d- or CR_dR_e;



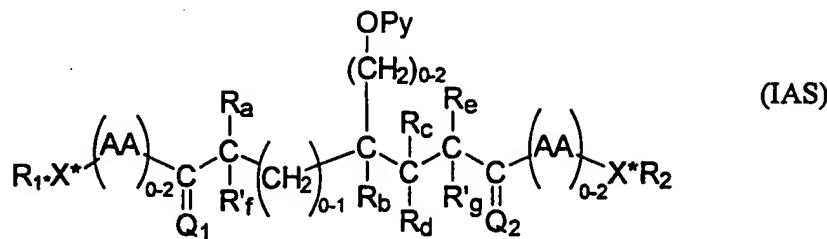
wherein  represents an optionally substituted saturated or unsaturated ring system optionally containing up to three heteroatoms selected from N, O and S, G is selected from R₁, XR₁ or X*R₁* and R_a and R_b taken together may optionally be -C(O)-;



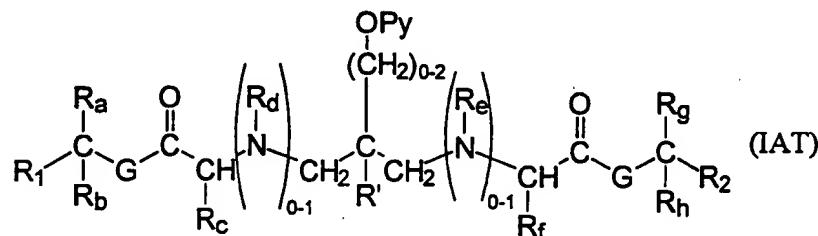
wherein B* is a group B, as previously defined, derivatised with a solubilising group Py;



wherein  represents an optionally substituted cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system containing a nitrogen atom and optionally additionally from 1 to 3 heteroatoms selected from N, O and S;

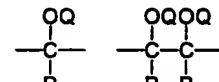
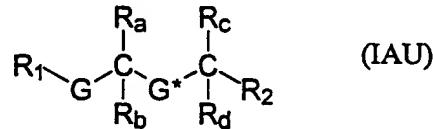


wherein Q_1 and Q_2 are independently selected from O and S, and R'_f and R'_g are respectively R_f and R_g or are selected from OR' , SR' and NR_hR' wherein R' is H, R_i or Py;



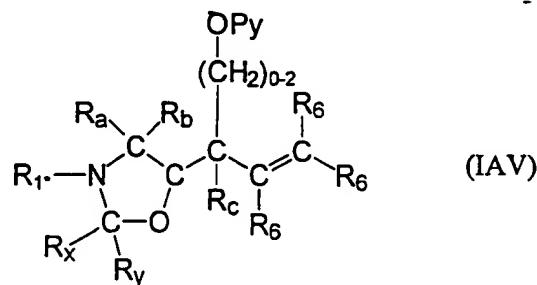
5

wherein each G is independently selected from O and NR_i , and R' is $(CH_2)_{1-2}OPy$ or R_6 ;

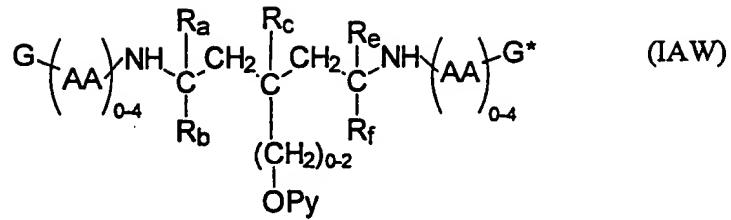


wherein G and G^* are independently selected from R_e , R_f and L, wherein L is as previously defined and Q is H or Py, provided that at least one of G and G^* is other than L and provided that at least one Q is Py, or wherein two groups OQ taken together

are a cyclic group selected from $\text{HO}-\text{P}(\text{O})-\text{O}-$, $\text{H}-\text{P}(\text{O})-\text{O}-$ and $\text{O}-\text{S}(\text{O})-\text{O}-$;



wherein R_x and R_y are independently R_6 or $(CH_2)_{1-2}OPy$;



wherein G and G* are independently selected from R₁, R_{1*}, -C(R₅)=NR₃ and -C(R₅)N=OR₃, wherein R₃ and R₅ are as previously defined.

Still other compounds of the first embodiment are those compounds exemplified in International Patent Application no. WO 93/18006, namely:

(i) t-butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)-amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,

(ii) t-butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-valyl)-amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,

(iii) t-butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,

(iv) t-butyl 3-(1-methyl-3-phenylpropen-3-yl)-3-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,

(v) t-butyl 3-(1-methyl-3-phenylpropyl)-3-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,

(vi) cis-1,6-3-t-butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-amino-4-phenylbutyl]-3,4-diazabicyclo[4.4.0]decane,

(vii) cis-1,6-3-t-butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-diazabicyclo[4.4.0]decane,

(viii) cis-1,6-3-t-butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-valyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-3,4-diazabicyclo[4.4.0]decane,

(ix) cis-1,6-3-t-butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-[N-(2-pyridyl)-methoxycarbonyl]-L-valyl]amino-4-phenylbutyl]-3,4-diaza-bicyclo[4.4.0]-decane,

(x) cis-1,6-3-t-butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-3,4-diazabicyclo[4.4.0]decane,

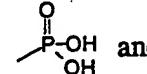
(xi) cis-1,6-3-t-butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-glutaminyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-3,4-diazabicyclo[4.4.0]decane,

(xii) cis-1,6-3-t-butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-threonyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-3,4-diazabicyclo[4.4.0]decane,

(xiii) 2-t-butoxycarbonyl-3-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-2,3-diazabicyclo[2.2.1]hept-5-ene,

(xiv) 2-t-butoxycarbonyl-3-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-2,3-diaza-bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane,

- (xv) 2-t-butoxycarbonyl-3-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-(2-pyridyl)methoxy-L-valyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-2,3-diaza-bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane,
- (xvi) 2-[N-(1S)(2-methyl-1-methoxycarbonylpropyl)carbamoyl]-3-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-[N-(2-pyridyl)methoxy-L-valyl]amino-4-phenylbutyl]-2,3-diaza-5bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane,
- (xvii) 2-t-butoxycarbonyl-3-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-2,3-diazabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane,
- (xviii) 1-[2-(2-pyridyl)methoxycarbonylamino]-benzoyl-2-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-2-isopropyl-hydrazine,
- (xix) 2-t-butoxycarbonyl-3-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthalazine,
- (xx) 1-trimethylacetyl-2-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)-amino-4-phenylbutyl]-2-isopropylhydrazine,
- (xxi) 1-trimethylacetyl-2-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-2-isopropylhydrazine,
- (xxii) 1-(t-butylamino)carbonyl-2-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-2-isopropylhydrazine,
- (xxiii) t-butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-picolinoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,
- (xxiv) t-butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-(2-pyridyl)-methoxycarbonylantraniloyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate.
- (xxv) t-butyl 3-benzyl-3-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)-amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,
- (xxvi) t-butyl 3-benzyl-3-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)-amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,
- (xxvii) t-butyl 3-cyclohexyl-3-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(phenyl-methoxycarbonyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,
- (xxviii) t-butyl 3-cyclohexyl-3-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,
- (xxix) t-butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-(1-carbamoyl-methyl)-acryloyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,
- (xxx) t-butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-(2(RS)-3-tert-butylthio-2-carbamoyl-methylpropionyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,
- (xxxi) t-butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-(1-benzoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,
- (xxxii) 1-t-butyloxycarbonyl-2-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]hexahydronaphridazine,
- (xxxiii) 1-t-butyloxycarbonyl-2-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]hexahydronaphridazine, and

(xxxiv) cis-1,6-3-t-butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-3-cyano-L-alanyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-3,4-diaza-bicyclo[4.4.0]decane, wherein the 2-hydroxy group has been derivatised with a solubilising group Px as herein defined. Typically, in this form of the first embodiment, compounds (i) to (xxxiv) 5 referred to above are derivatised with a solubilising group selected from 



The compounds of formulae (I) to (IAW) can exist in optically isomeric forms and the present invention includes within its scope all these forms in all proportions including all diastereoisomers and mixtures thereof and all enantiomers, mixtures of 10 enantiomers and racemic mixtures. Where a double bond occurs in the compound of the invention, the double bond may be present in the cis- (Z) or trans- (E) configuration. It will be understood that only compounds of formula (I) with combinations of substituents or functional groups which give rise to stable compounds, are within the scope of the present invention.

15 The compounds of general formula (I) may be prepared by methods known generally in the art. Suitable methods for the synthesis of compounds of formula (I) and intermediates thereof are described, for example, in Houben-Weyl, *Methoden der Organischen Chemie*; J. March, *Advanced Organic Chemistry*, 3rd Edition (John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1985); D. C. Liotta and M. Volmer, eds, *Organic Syntheses Reaction 20 Guide* (John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, 1991); R. C. Larock, *Comprehensive Organic Transformations* (VCH, New York, 1989), H. O. House, *Modern Synthetic Reactions* 2nd Edition (W. A. Benjamin, Inc., Menlo Park, 1972); N. S. Simpkins, ed. *100 Modern Reagents* (The Royal Society of Chemistry, London, 1989); A. H. Haines *Methods for the Oxidation of Organic Compounds* (Academic Press, London, 1988) and 25 B. J. Wakefield *Organolithium Methods* (Academic Press, London, 1988).

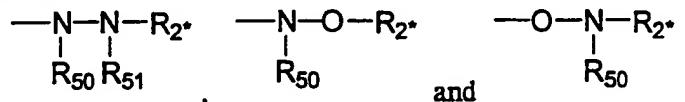
For example, a compound of formula (I) may be prepared from synthons W*, $\{(A)_n-B-(A^*)_m\}^*$ and V*, wherein each synthon identified thus * is a synthetic precursor of the corresponding portion of the molecule W-(A)_n-B-(A^{*})_m-V. Thus, a compound of formula (I) may be prepared, for example, in any of the following ways:

30 (a) by reaction of W-(A)_n-B-(A)_m-G with H-V;
 (b) by reaction of W-(A)_n-B-(A)_m-H with G-V;
 (c) by reaction of W-H with G-(A)_n-B-(A)_m-V; and
 (d) by reaction of W-G with H-(A)_n-B-(A)_m-V;

wherein G is a leaving group such as halogen, typically chlorine, bromine or iodine; a 35 sulfonate such as methanesulfonate, trifluoromethanesulfonate, benzenesulfonate or toluenesulfonate; an alkoxy, thioalkoxy, aryloxy or thioaryloxy group such as ethoxy,

methoxy, thiomethoxy or phenoxy; acyloxy such as acetyl, trifluoroacetyl or benzoyl; hydroxy; amino or protonated amino; nitrate; phosphate; borate and the like. If appropriate these reactions may be carried out in the presence of a base such as triethylamine, pyridine or other tertiary amine, butyllithium, sodium tert-butoxide or 5 similar, and/or a coupling reagent such as a carbodiimide.

When V is YR_2 where Y is $—N=N—$, or when V is Y^* where Y^* is a member of the group

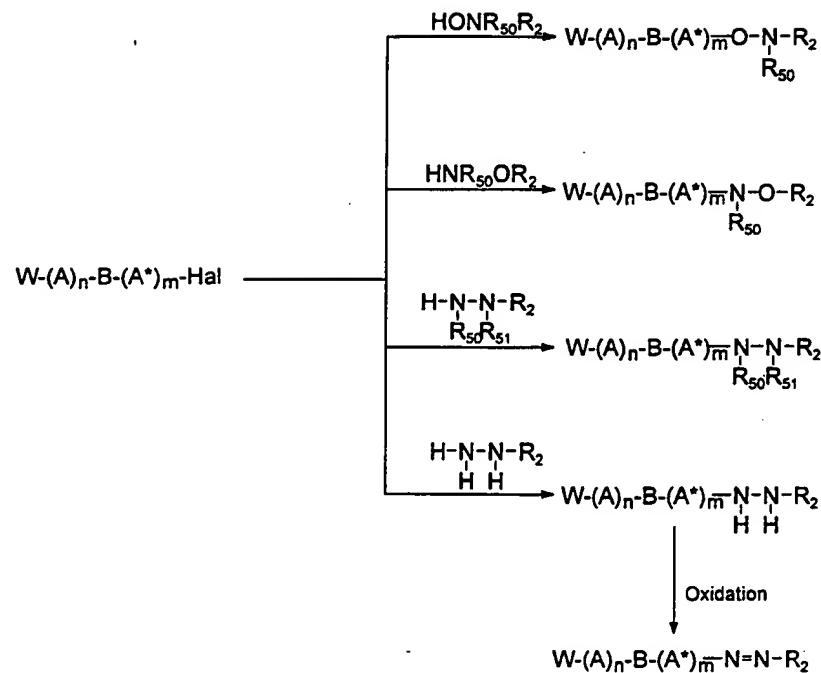


the compound of formula (I) may be prepared as shown in Scheme 1 or Scheme 1a. In 10 the Schemes and in the Examples herein, the terms Me, Et, Pr, Ph and Bz signify methyl, ethyl, propyl, phenyl and benzyl respectively and the following additional abbreviations are used:

	THP	tetrahydropyranyl,
	t-Bu or Bu ^t	tertiary butyl
15	n-Bu	n-butyl
	iPr or Pr ⁱ	isopropyl
	Hal	halogen; i.e., fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine
	Ts	para-toluenesulfonyl
	DMF	dimethyl formamide
20	CDI	N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole
	BOP	benzotriazol-1-yloxytris(dimethylamino)-phosphonium hexafluorophosphate
	HBT	1-hydroxybenzotriazole
	AcCN	acetonitrile
25	DMSO	dimethyl sulfoxide
	Py.xSO ₃	pyridine/sulfur trioxide complex
	QC	quinoline-2-carbonyl
	PC	2-pyridinemethoxycarbonyl
	MC	N-morpholino carbonyl
30	TMC	N-thiomorpholinocarbonyl
	Val	valinyl
	Asn	asparaginyl
	Ile	isoleucyl
	Gly	glycyl
35	Glu	glutamyl
	Thr	threonyl
	Ala	alanyl

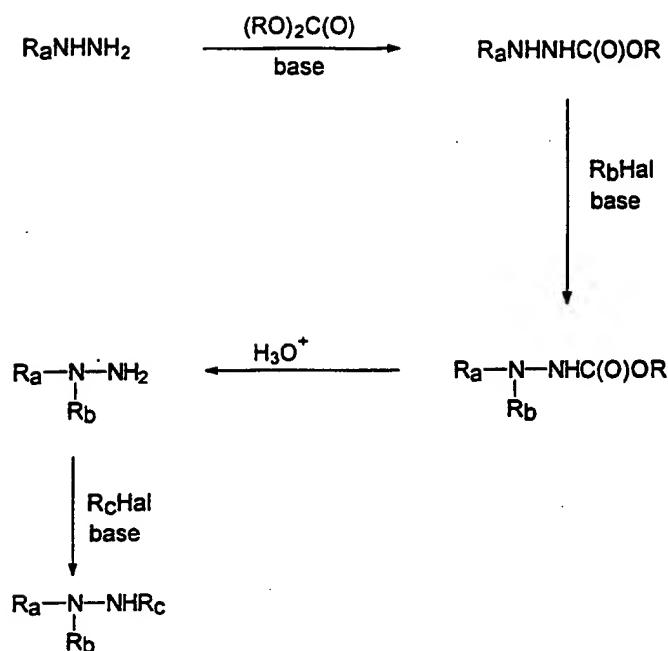
(CN)Ala	cyanoalanyl
(p-F)Bz	4-fluorobenzyl
(p-CN)Bz	4-cyanobenzyl
Z	benzyloxycarbonyl
5 Boc	t-butyloxycarbonyl
Ac	acetyl
TFA	trifluoroacetyl
C ₆ H ₁₁	cyclohexyl.

Scheme 1



Other compounds of formula (I) may be prepared analogously, by reacting a synthon $W-(A)_n-B-(A^*)_m-Hal$ with HV , if appropriate in the presence of a strong base.

Scheme 1a



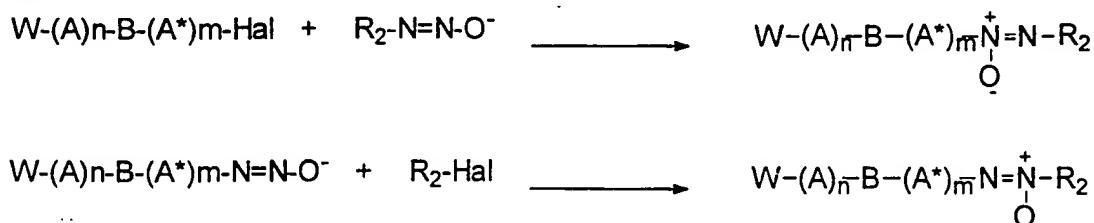
In Scheme 1a, R represents an alkyl, aryl or aralkyl group, such as t-butyl, phenyl or benzyl. Suitable bases include pyridine, triethylamine and other tertiary amines, alkali 5 metal carbonates and alkali metal hydroxides. The moiety $\text{W}-(\text{A})_n\text{B}-(\text{A}^*)_m$ may be represented by R_a , in which case R_b represents R_{50} as previously defined, and R_c represents R_2 as previously defined, or $\text{W}-(\text{A})_n\text{B}-(\text{A}^*)_m$ may be represented by R_c , in which case R_b represents R_{51} and R_a represents R_2 .

When V is Y^* where Y^* is $\text{N}=\text{N}=\text{C}(\text{R}_{33})\text{R}_{34}$, the compound of formula (I) may be

10 prepared from by reacting a hydrazine wherein R_{51} and R_{2*} are both hydrogen, which may be prepared as shown in Scheme 1 or Scheme 1a, with an aldehyde or ketone.

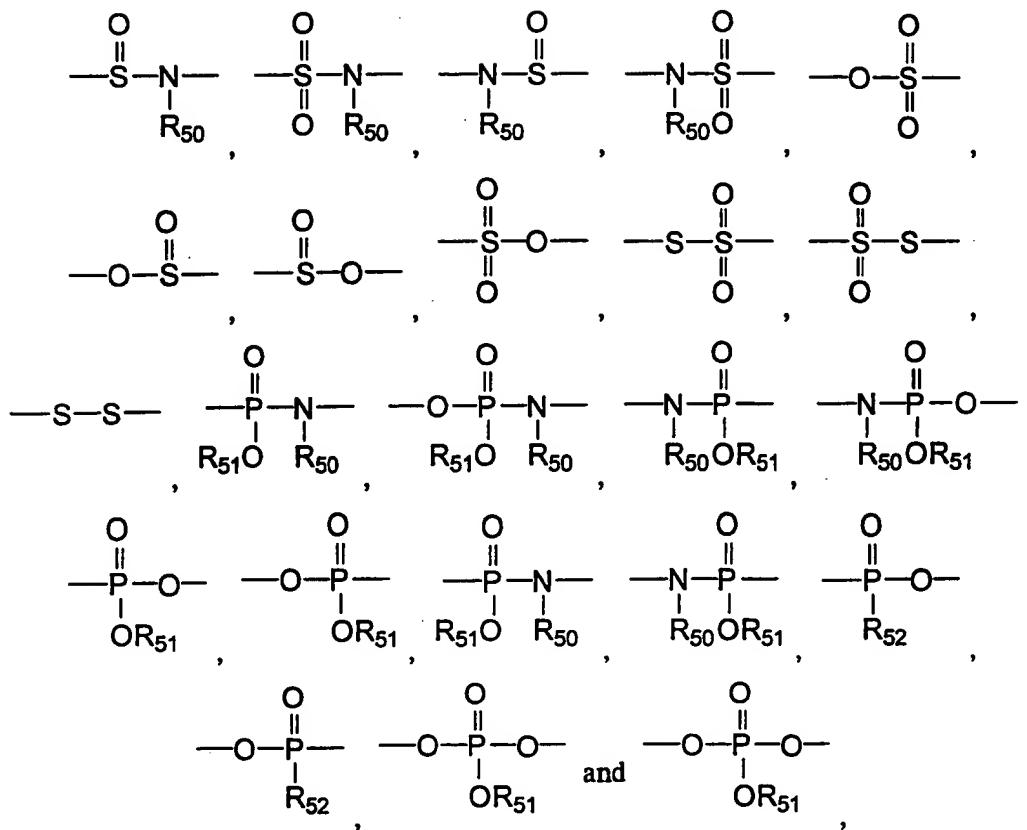
When V is YR_2 where Y is $\text{N}=\text{N}^+$ or $\text{N}=\text{N}^-$, the compound of formula (I) may be prepared as shown in Scheme 1b

Scheme 1b



When V is YR_2 where Y is a member of the group

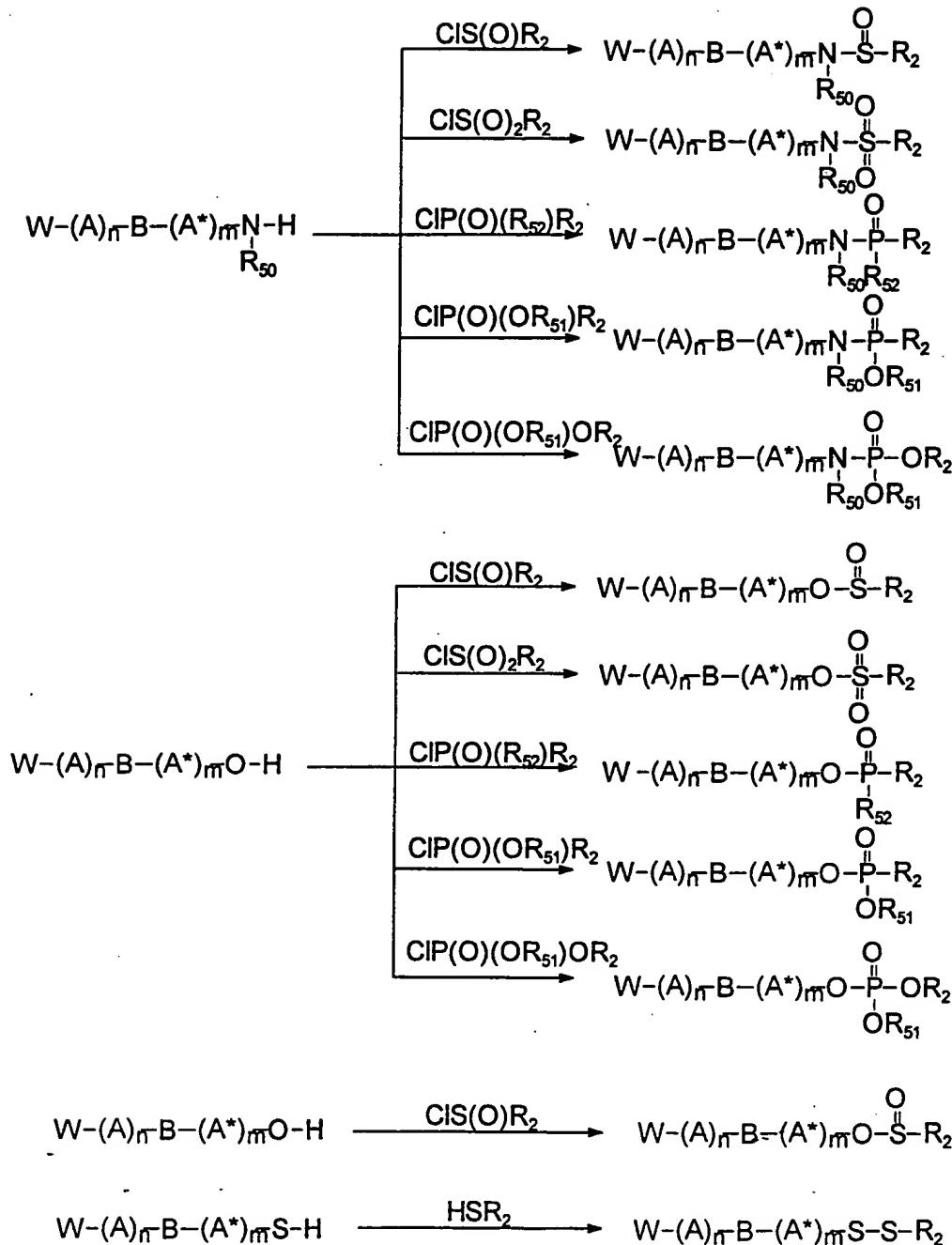
61



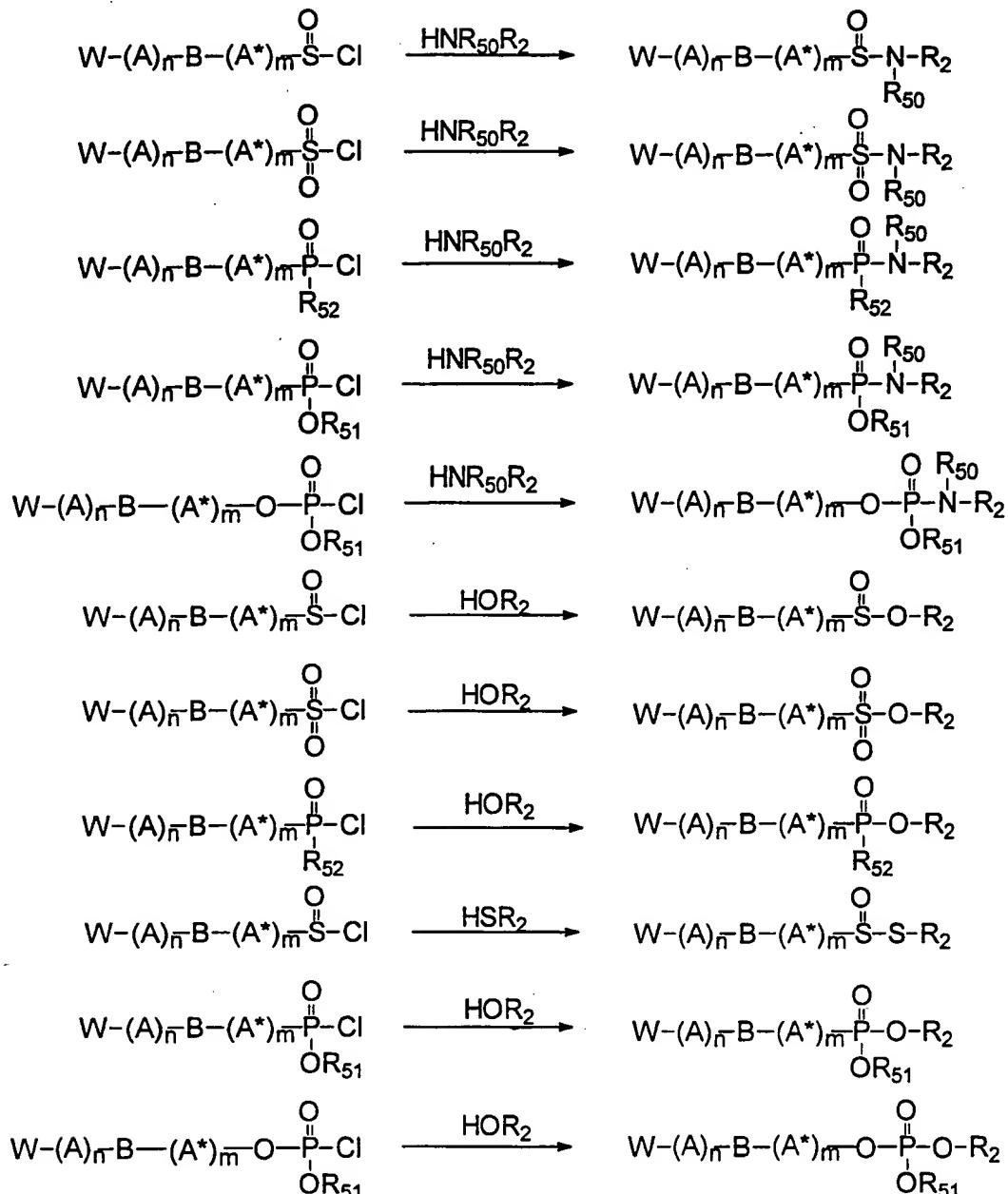
5

the compound of formula (I) may be synthesised by coupling a synthon $W-(A)_n-B-(A^*)_m-Z_a$ with a synthon Z_b , where Z_a includes one of the heteroatoms of Y , and Z_b includes the other heteroatom or atoms, as shown in schemes 2a and 2b:

Scheme 2a



Scheme 2b

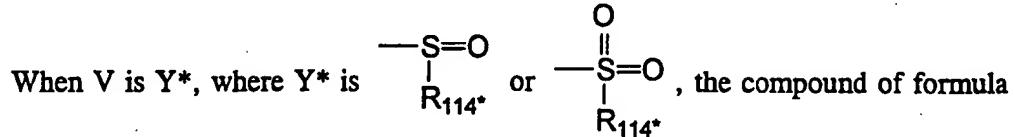


Analogous methods may be used to obtain the corresponding thionophosphates and thionophosphonates.

5 When V is $C(R_{30})=Y^{**}$ the compound of formula (I) may be prepared from a synthon having a ketone or aldehyde function, by condensation with a substituted hydrazine or substituted hydroxylamine corresponding to Y^{**} .

When V is Y*, where Y* is -N=O, the compound of formula (I) may be prepared by oxidising the corresponding primary amine, for example with Caro's acid, or

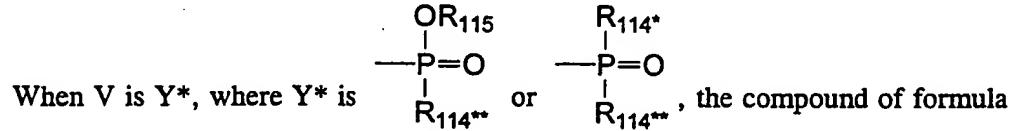
H_2O_2 in acetic acid, or H_2O_2 with sodium tungstate. It will be appreciated that a compound of formula (I) wherein Y^* is $-N=O$ will only be isolable as a nitroso compound when the carbon atom bearing Y^* has no α -hydrogens.



5 (I) may be prepared by oxidation of the corresponding thioether

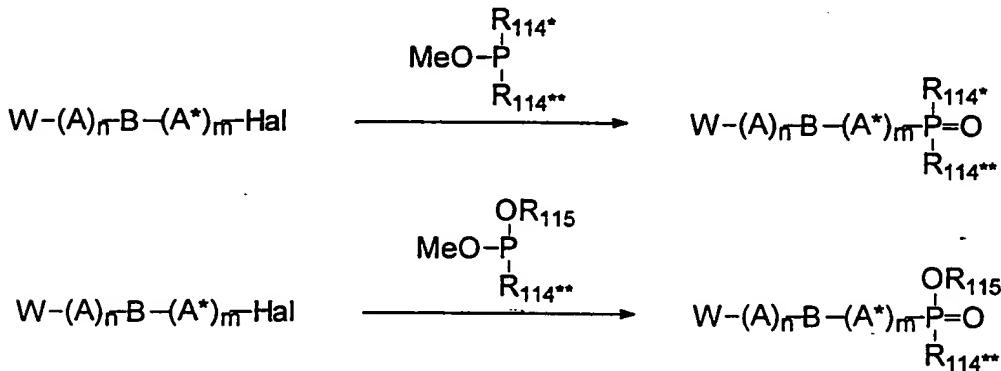


with hydrogen peroxide and acetic acid. The thioether (IV) may be synthesised by coupling a halide $W-(A)_n-B-(A^*)_m-Hal$ with a thiol R_{114^*} under basic conditions, or by reacting a disulfide $R_{114^*}SSR_{114^*}$ with an organolithium reagent $W-(A)_n-B-(A^*)_m-Li$ 10 derived from the corresponding halide.



(I) may be prepared by the Arbuzov reaction as shown in scheme 3:

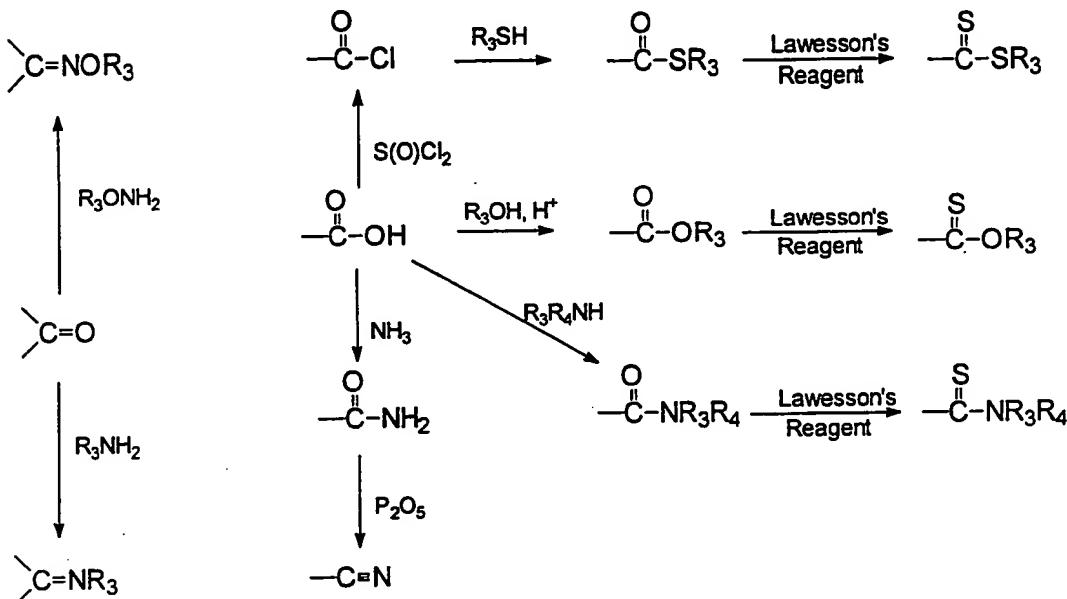
Scheme 3



15 The synthon $W-(A)_n-B-(A^*)_m-Z$, where Z is any of the functional groups bound to $(A^*)_m$ which are represented in schemes 1 to 3, may be prepared by coupling a suitably functionalised fragment W^* with a correspondingly functionalised fragment $Z^*-(A)_n-B-(A^*)_m-Z$. Alternatively, the compound of formula (I) may be synthesised by first 20 coupling V to $(A)_n-B-(A^*)_m-$ as described above with reference to schemes 1 to 3, and then coupling the resulting molecule to a functionalised fragment W^* . Methods for coupling a precursor of group W with a functionalised fragment $Z^*-(A)_n-B-(A^*)_m-Z$ are well known in the art, and include methods analogous to those represented in schemes 1 to 3. For example, when W is R_1X and X is Y , the coupling may be achieved as 25 described in schemes 1 to 3 above. When W is R_1X and X is NR_{10} , O or S , the coupling may be achieved by any of the known methods for the alkylation of amines, and the

synthesis of ethers and thioethers, respectively. That is, the coupling may be achieved by reacting a fragment $Z^*-(A)_n-B-(A^*)_m-Z$ wherein Z^* is a leaving group such as halogen, sulfonate ester, acetate or trialkylammonium salt, with $R_1R_{10}NH$, R_1OH or R_1SH , if necessary in the presence of strong non-nucleophilic base such as butyllithium, sodamide or potassium tert-butoxide. Compounds in which X is $S(O)$ or $S(O)_2$ may be prepared by the oxidation of the corresponding compound in which X is S . Compounds in which W is $-CN$, $-C(R_5)=NR_3$, $-C(R_5)=NOR_3$, $-C(D)OR_3$, $-C(D)SR_3$ or $-C(D)NR_3R_4$ may be prepared from the fragment $Z^*-(A)_n-B-(A^*)_m-Z$ wherein Z^* is an aldehyde, ketone or carboxyl group as shown in Scheme 3a.

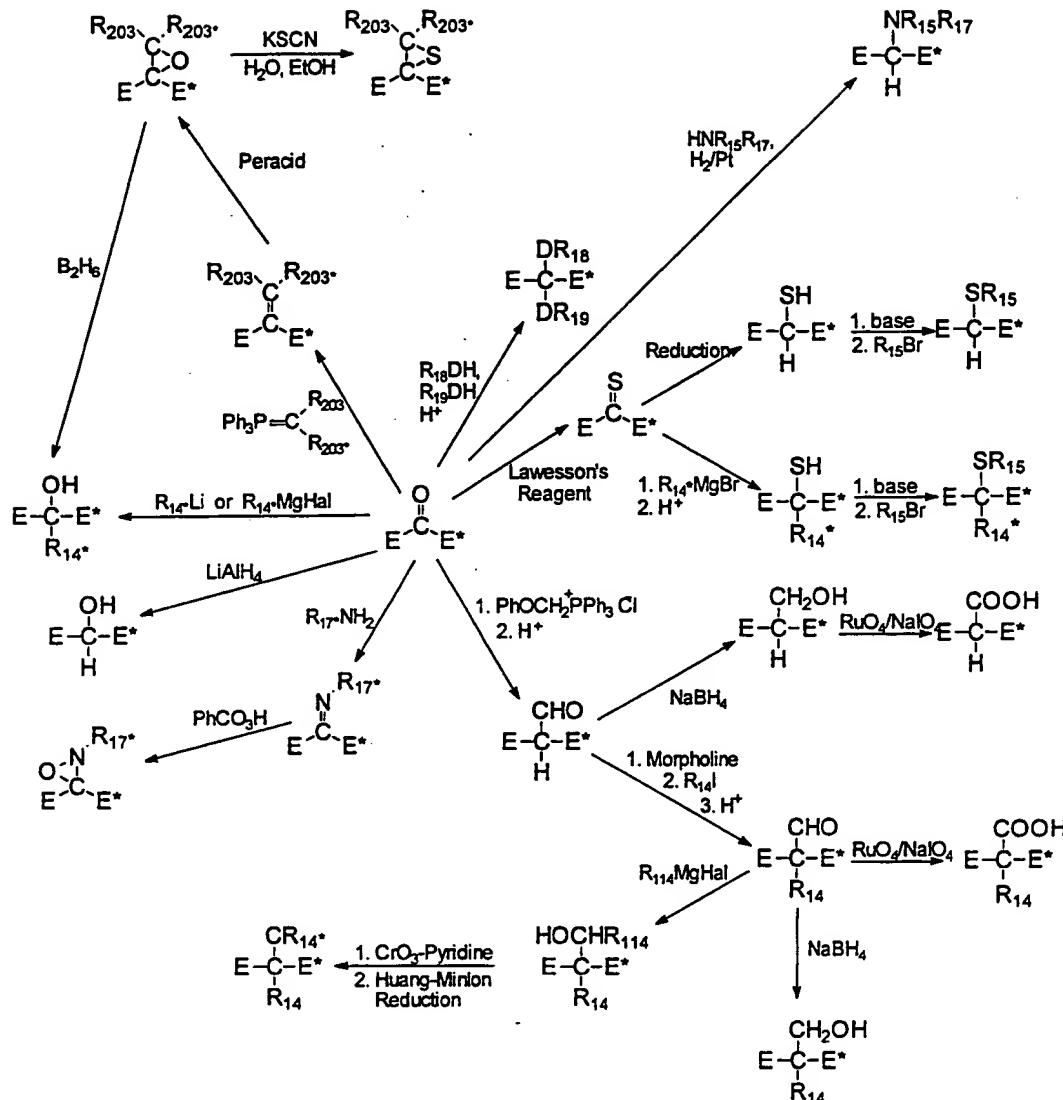
10 Scheme 3a



Compounds in which W is $-N=CR_5R_5^*$ may be prepared by reacting the fragment $Z^*-(A)_n-B-(A^*)_m-Z$, where Z^* is NH_2 , with an aldehyde or ketone having group(s) R_5 and R_5^* bound to the carbonyl.

15 The fragment $Z^*-(A)_n-B-(A^*)_m-Z$ may be prepared by methods which depend on the nature of B . Where B is a substituted carbon atom, the fragment may be conveniently prepared from a fragment $E-C(O)-E^*$, in which E is a fragment $Z^*-(A)_n$ and E^* is a fragment $(A^*)_m-Z$, as shown in scheme 4:

Scheme 4



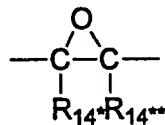
Fragments $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ \text{E}-\text{C}-\text{E}^* \end{array}$ which are starting materials for compounds of formula

(I) are known compounds or analogs of known compounds which can be prepared by 5 methods analogous to methods used for preparation of the known compounds. The

synthesis of known fragments $\text{E}-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{E}^*$ may be found with reference, for example, to

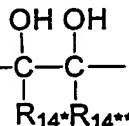
Beilsteins Handbuch der Organischen Chemie or to J. Buckingham, ed., *Dictionary of Organic Compounds* 5th Edition (Chapman & Hall, New York, 1982). Alternatively, a functionalised group E may be coupled to a group $E^*C(O)H$, or a functionalised group E^* 10 may be coupled to a group $EC(O)H$, followed by oxidation. For example, a halide EBr may be coupled to $E^*C(O)H$ with an organolithium or organomagnesium reagent derived

from EBr, followed by oxidation of the resulting secondary alcohol to the corresponding ketone, if desired. Alternatively a carboxylic acid EC(O)OH may be converted to an activated derivative, such as an ester or amide: for example an amide obtained by reaction of the carboxylic acid with N,O-dimethyl hydroxylamine hydrochloride in the presence of 5 a carbodiimide and tertiary base, followed by addition of an organolithium or organomagnesium reagent derived from E*Br, E*Cl or E*I.



When B is an epoxide of the type ---C---C--- the fragment E-B-E* may be

prepared from the corresponding olefin by reaction with a per-acid such as trifluoroperacetic acid, perbenzoic acid or m-chloroperbenzoic acid. Suitable olefins for conversion 10 to the fragment E-B-E* are commercially available or may be synthesised by known methods, for example by means of the Wittig reaction or by an elimination reaction of an alcohol, alcohol sulfonate, ester, halide or the like.



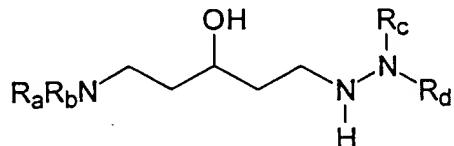
When B is a diol of the type ---C---C--- , the compound of formula (I) may

conveniently be prepared by reductive coupling of aldehydes $EC(O)H$ and $E^*C(O)H$ as described in *J. Org. Chem.* 55, 4506 (1990) and U.S. Patent No. 5,294,720.

When B is a heteroatom or substituted heteroatom, the fragment $Z^*-(A)_n-B-(A^*)_m-Z$ is a substituted amine, phosphine or phosphine oxide, or is an ether, thioether, sulfoxide or sulfone. Substituted amines, ethers, thioethers, sulfoxides and sulfones may be prepared as described above. Secondary or tertiary phosphines may be prepared by 20 alkylation of the corresponding primary or secondary phosphine as described, for example, in J. D. Roberts and M. C. Caserio, *Basic Principles of Organic Chemistry* (W.A. Benjamin, Inc., New York, 1965).

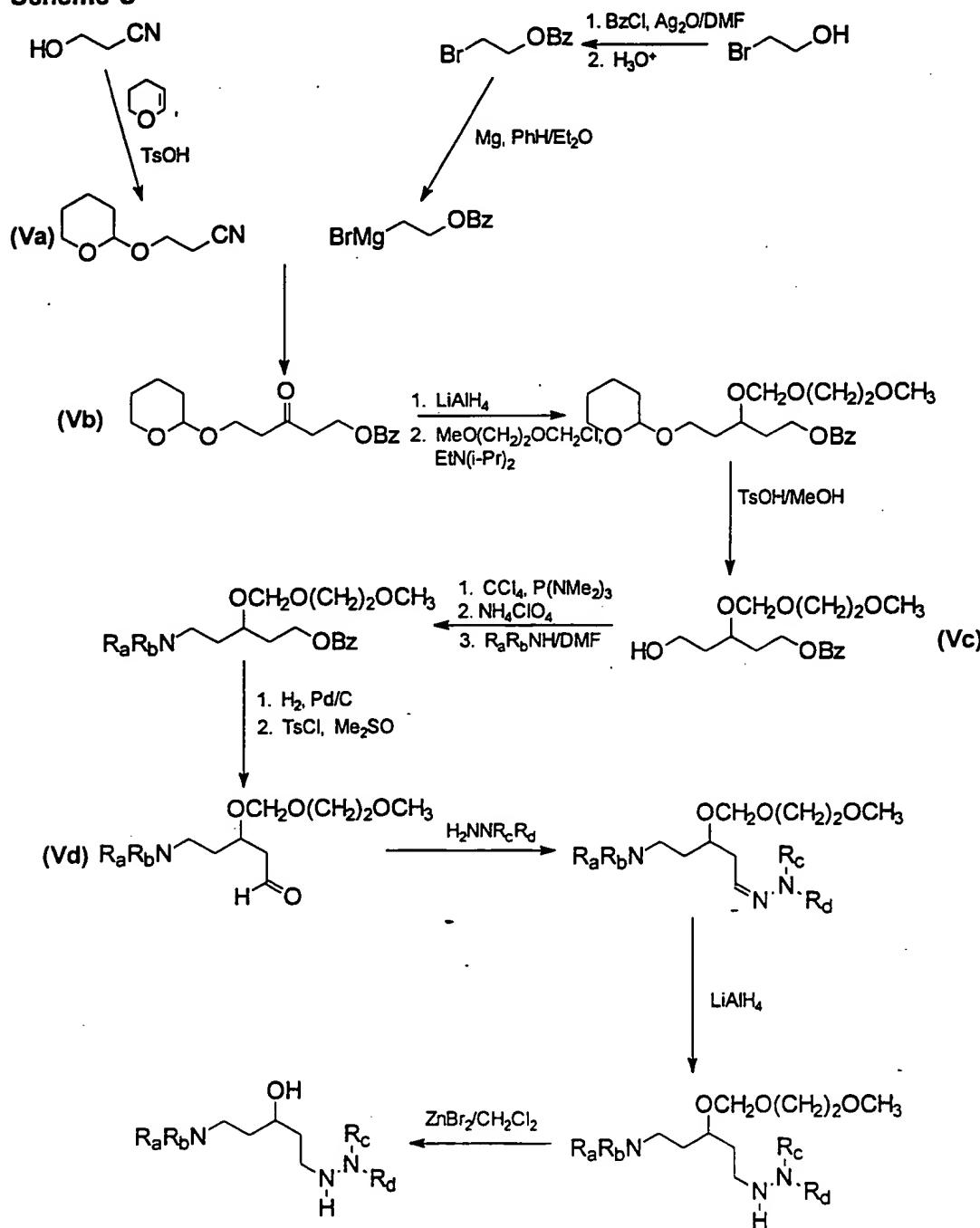
In any of the reactions described above, it may be necessary to protect reactive group(s) in the compound of formula (I) other than those participating in a desired coupling or oxidation reaction using suitable protecting group(s) in order to carry out the desired coupling or oxidation reaction without chemically affecting those reactive groups. Suitable protecting groups for this purpose are described in the works of Greene and McMie referenced above.

The compounds of formula (IB) wherein x and y are both 1 may be prepared as
30 generally described above. A compound of formula (IB) which is



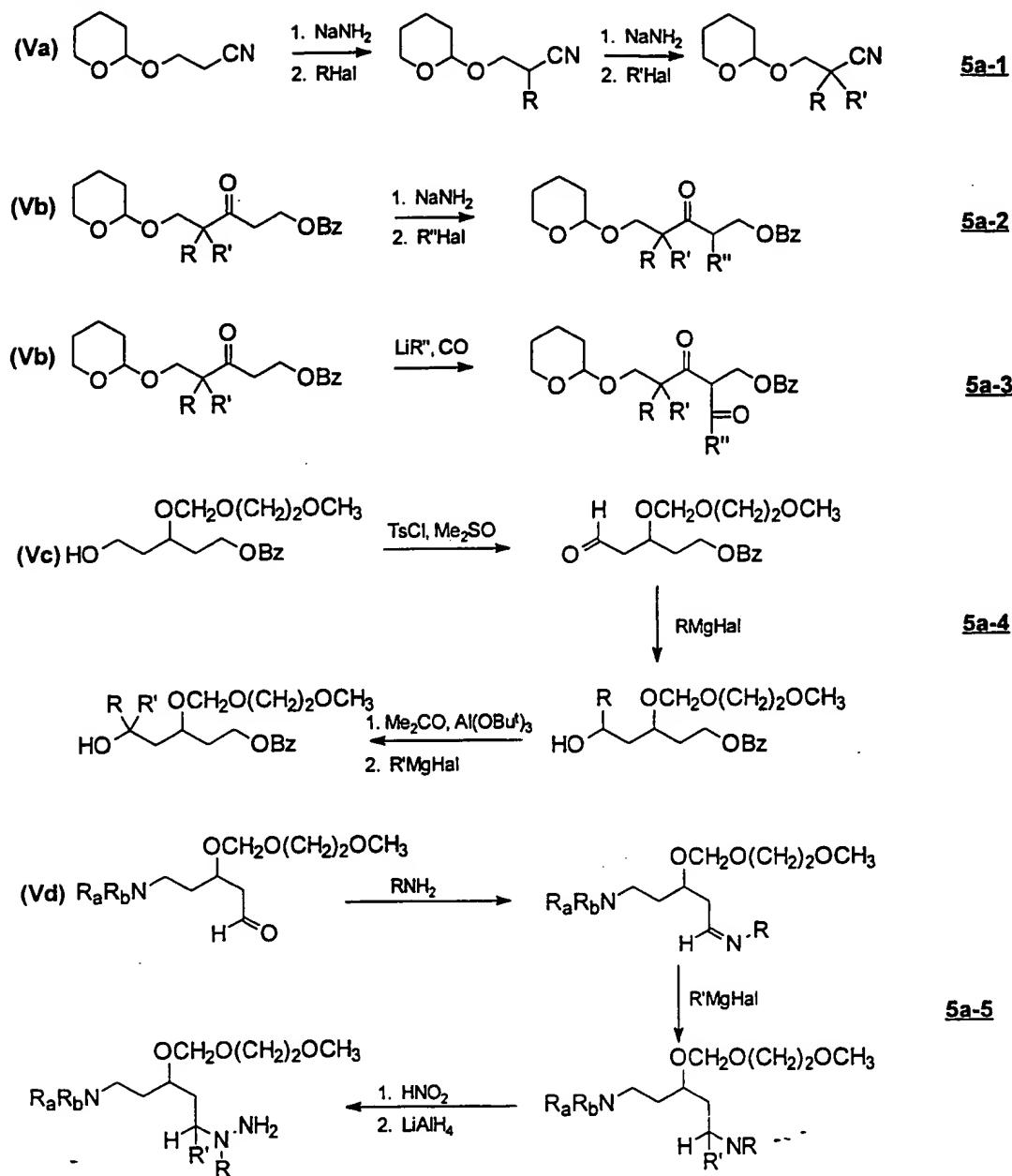
where R_a and R_b have the meaning of R_{501} and R_{506} as previously defined and R_c and R_d have the meaning of R_{551} and R_{502} as previously defined, may be prepared from ethylene cyanohydrin by the method shown in Scheme 5.

Scheme 5



A substituted compound of formula (IB) may be prepared by the general method of Scheme 5, with the substituents R_{512} , R_{513} , R_{522} , R_{523} , R_{532} , R_{533} , R_{542} , R_{543} and R_{550} being introduced, as desired, into the compounds of formula (Va), (Vb), (Vc) and (Vd) shown in Scheme 5 by the methods illustrated in Scheme 5a.

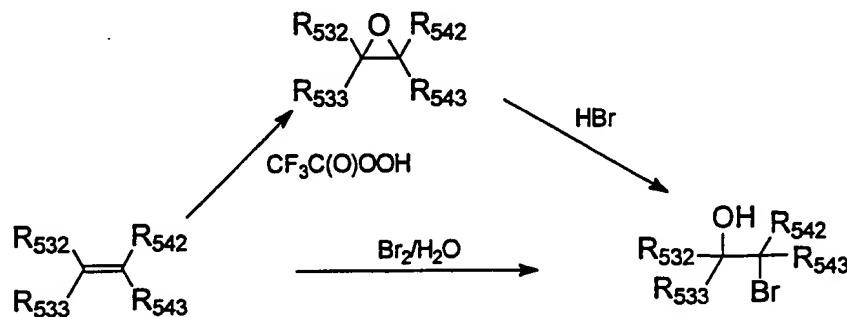
Scheme 5a



In reaction 5a-1 shown above, it will be appreciated that the step of introducing the second substituent R' will only be carried out if it is desired that both R₅₂₂ and R₅₂₃ be other than hydrogen. The reactions shown in 5a-2 and 5a-3 may be repeated, if desired, so as to introduce a second substituent on the carbon atom bearing R'' or R''C(O). The second substituent can be the same as or different from the first. Where one or both of R₅₂₂ and R₅₂₃ is acyl, this group may be introduced as shown in reaction 5a-3 with respect to compound (Vb). Where R₅₂₂ and R₅₂₃ are both hydrogen, the reactions shown in 5a-2 and 5a-3 may give mixtures of products and in that case it may be preferable to introduce the desired groups R₅₃₂, R₅₄₃, R₅₄₂ and R₅₄₃ by replacing the

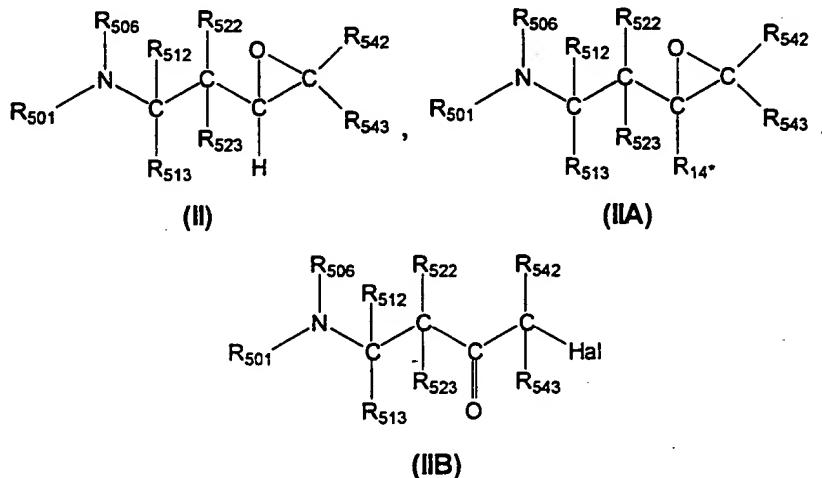
ethylene bromohydrin shown in Scheme 5 with a suitably substituted bromohydrin obtained from the corresponding olefin as shown in Scheme 5b. It will be appreciated that the nature of the groups R_{532} , R_{543} , R_{542} and R_{543} will determine the stereochemistry of the addition of HOBr to the olefin and of the opening of the epoxide.

5 Scheme 5b

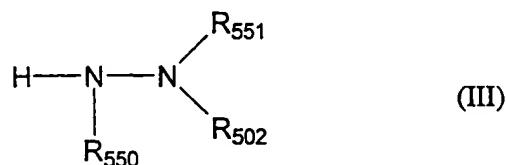


Compounds of formula (IB) wherein B is other than $-CH(OH)-$ may be prepared by the methods shown in Scheme 4 after oxidation of the secondary alcohol to the corresponding ketone.

10 The compounds of formula (IB) wherein B is a substituted carbon atom and y is 0 can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (II), (IIA) or (IIB)



wherein R_{14*} , R_{501} , R_{502} , R_{506} , R_{512} , R_{513} , R_{522} , R_{523} , R_{542} , and R_{543} have the significance given earlier and Hal is a group selected from $-Cl$, $-Br$ or $-I$, with a compound of formula (III)

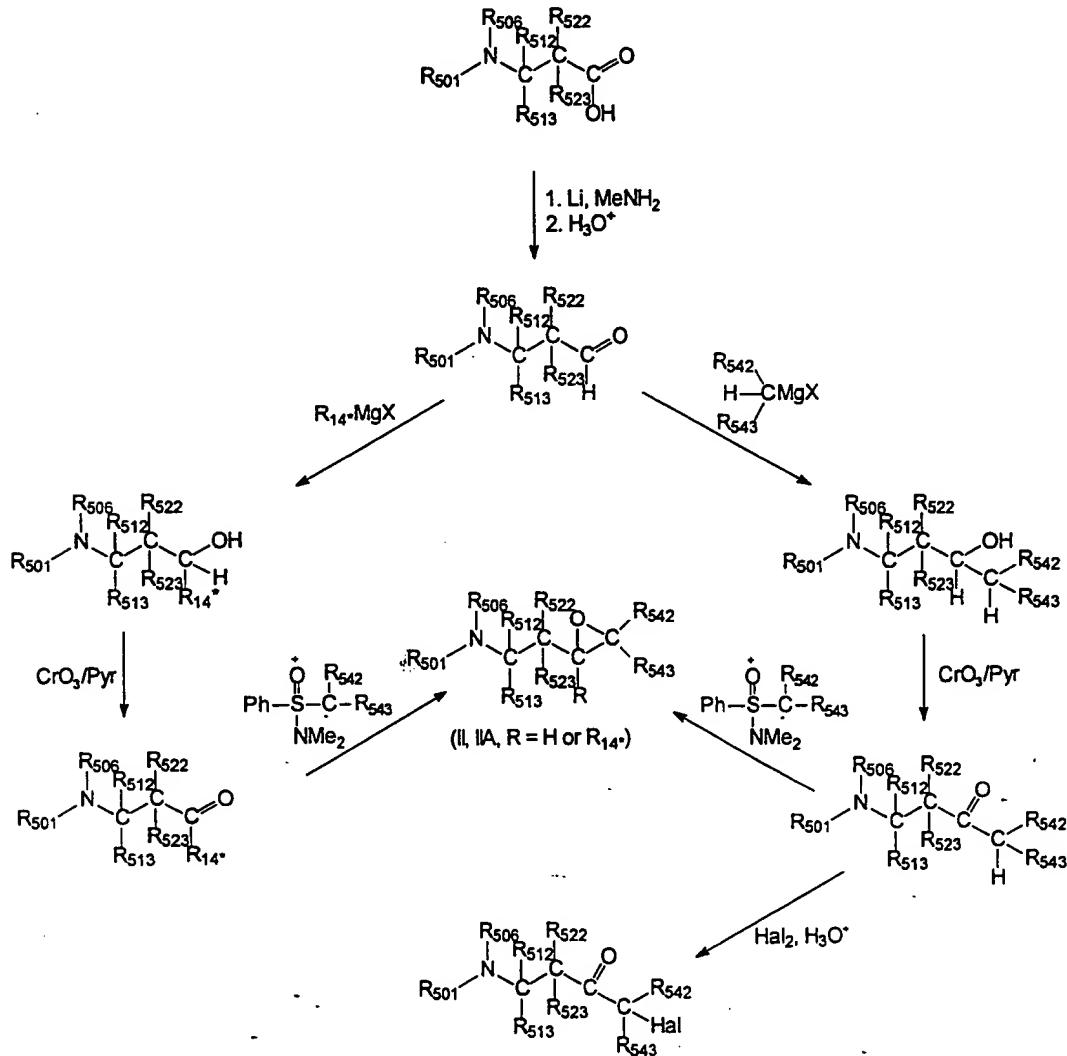


wherein R_{502} , R_{550} and R_{551} have the significance given earlier. Where a compound of formula (II) is used, the reaction may be followed by oxidation of the resultant secondary

alcohol to the corresponding ketone. This ketone may be used for elaboration of the substituents on B as shown in Scheme 4.

A compound of formula (II), (IIA) or (IIB) may be prepared from a β -amino acid or a β -amido acid as shown in Scheme 6. A compound of formula III may be prepared as shown in Scheme 1a.

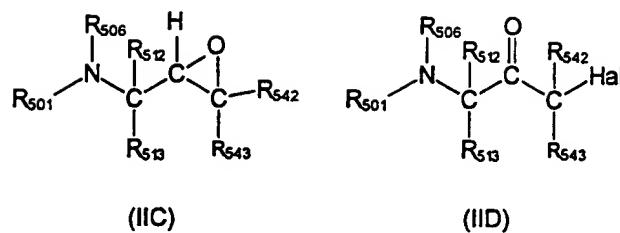
Scheme 6



An alternative route to the β -aminoaldehyde shown in Scheme 6 is by reduction of the methyl ester of the corresponding β -amino acids using diisobutylaluminium hydride.

β -amino acids, or β -amido acids, may conveniently be prepared by the Mannich reaction of an amine or amide with an enolisable ketone in the presence of formaldehyde or another aldehyde.

A compound of formula (IIB) wherein x and y are both 0 may be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (IIC) or (IID)



with a compound of formula (III) as shown above. An analogous procedure, utilising a primary or secondary amine rather than a hydrazine as shown in formula (III) yields a hydroxy diamine. A compound of formula (IIC) may be prepared from an α -amino acid 5 by a method analogous to that shown in Scheme 6, such as described in the following:

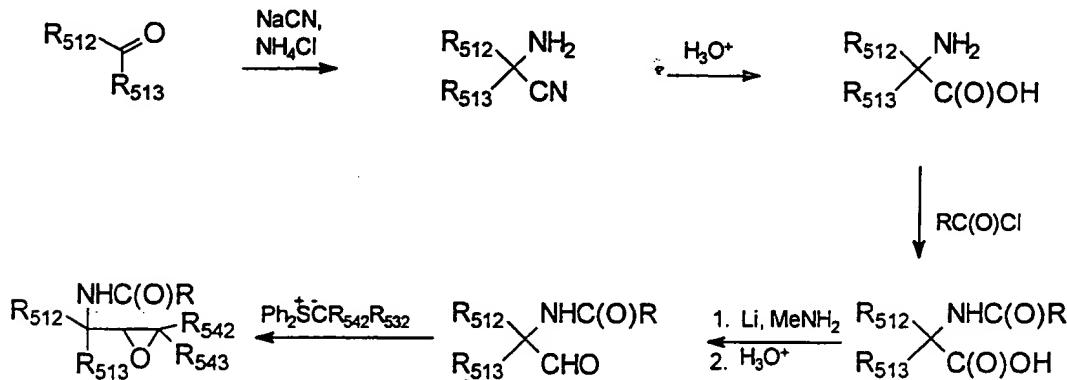
Evans, B.E., et al., *J. Org. Chem.*, **50**, 4615-4625 (1985);

Luly, J.R., et al., *J. Org. Chem.*, **52**, 1487-1492 (1987);

Handa, B.K., et al., European Patent Application No. 346,847-A2 (1989) and Marshall, G.R., et al., International Patent Application No WO91/08221.

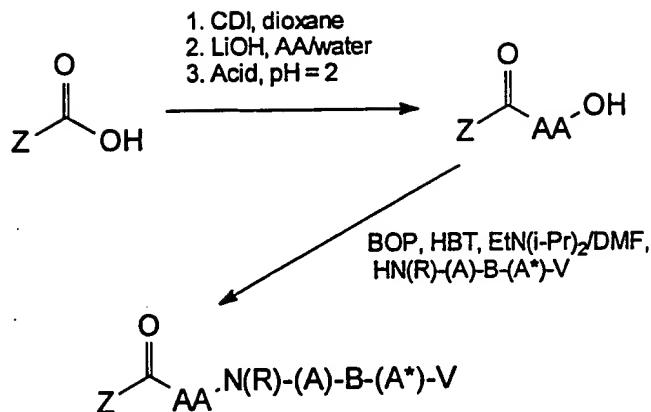
10 Suitable α -amino acids may be prepared, for example, by the Strecker synthesis, starting from an appropriate ketone. The overall route to the compound of formula (IIC) is shown in Scheme 7. Other suitable methods are described in Coppola, et al. *Asymmetric Synthesis. Construction of Chiral Molecules using Amino Acids* (Wiley Interscience, New York, 1987).

15 Scheme 7



Where W is a nitrogen-containing group, and one of R₁ and R₁₀ is a protected amino acid residue, the coupling of the protected amino acid residue may be accomplished as shown in Scheme 8, in which the amino acid (designated AA) protecting group is 20 benzyloxycarbonyl, designated Z. Methods for the formation of peptide bonds and for the protection of peptide residues are described, for example, in Gross and Meienhofer, eds., *The Peptides*, (Academic Press, New York, 1983). Suitable other coupling agents include 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (EDC) and diphenylphosphoryl azide (DPPA).

Scheme 8



Numerous synthetic routes exist to substituted hydrazines, including the hydrazines of formula (III), useful in the synthesis of compounds of formula (I). The 5 hydrazine intermediates (III) can be obtained using known methods such as those described in the following:

Dutta, A.S., et al., *J. Chem. Soc. Perkin Trans. I*, (1975) 1712-1720,

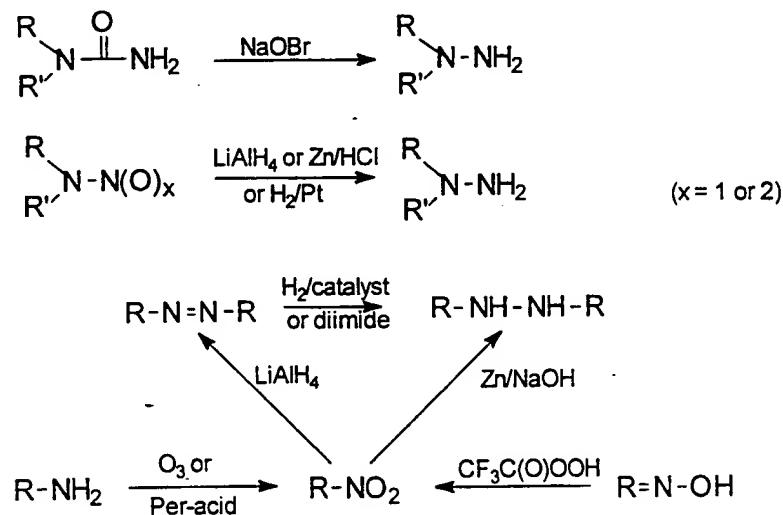
Ghali, N.I., et al., *J. Org. Chem.*, **46**, 5413-5414 (1981),

Gante, J., *Synthesis* (1989) 405-413 and

10 Houben-Weyl's *Methoden der Organische Chemie*, vol. 16a, Part 1, pp 421-855; Georg Thieme Verlag, Stuttgart (1990)

Other methods for preparing substituted hydrazines are illustrated in Scheme 9.

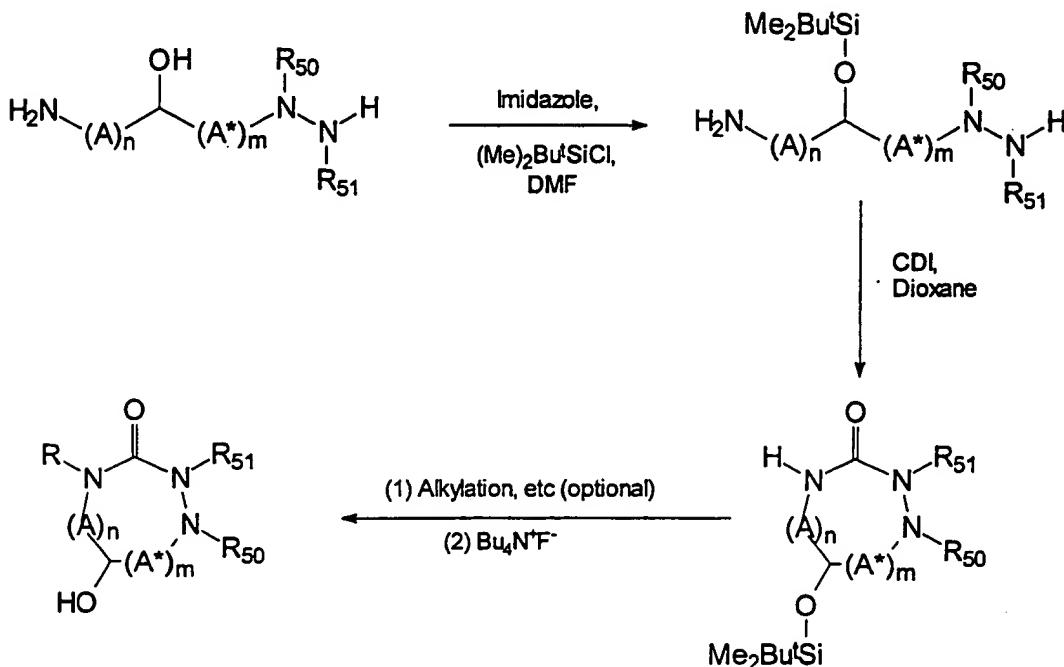
Scheme 9



15 Compounds of formula (I) wherein a group selected from R₁, R_{1*}, R₂, R_{2*}, R₉, R₁₁, R₁₂, R₅₀ and R₅₁, together with another group selected from R₁, R_{1*}, R₂, R_{2*}, R_{9*}, R₁₀, R₁₁, R₁₂, R₅₀ and R₅₁ forms a cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system may be prepared by variants on the above methods which will be readily apparent to persons skilled in the art in the light of the foregoing.

An example of a method of preparing one class of cyclic compounds of formula (I) is presented in Scheme 10:

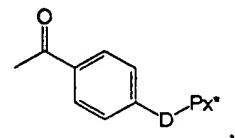
Scheme 10

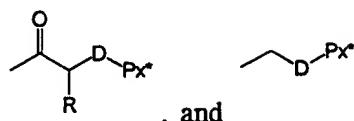


5 Compounds in accordance with the present invention which do not include a solubilising group Px typically exhibit low to very low water solubility. Inhibitors of HIV proteases which have hitherto been described, and many other pharmaceutically or 10 veterinarily active substances also typically exhibit low to very low water solubility. This property tends to cause the bioavailability of such substances to be relatively low. There 15 is thus a need for a HIV protease inhibitor having enhanced water solubility. Surprisingly, it has been found that the inclusion of a solubilising group Px as defined herein in a substance having low to very low water solubility results in enhancement of the water solubility of the substance. Thus, substances in accordance with the invention which include a solubilising group Px exhibit superior bioavailability, including superior 20 oral bioavailability, compared to compounds in accordance with the invention which do not include a solubilising group Px.

Thus, according to a second embodiment of the present invention, there is provided a process for enhancing the water-solubility of a pharmaceutical or veterinary substance, comprising derivatising a functional group of said substance with a solubilising group Px,

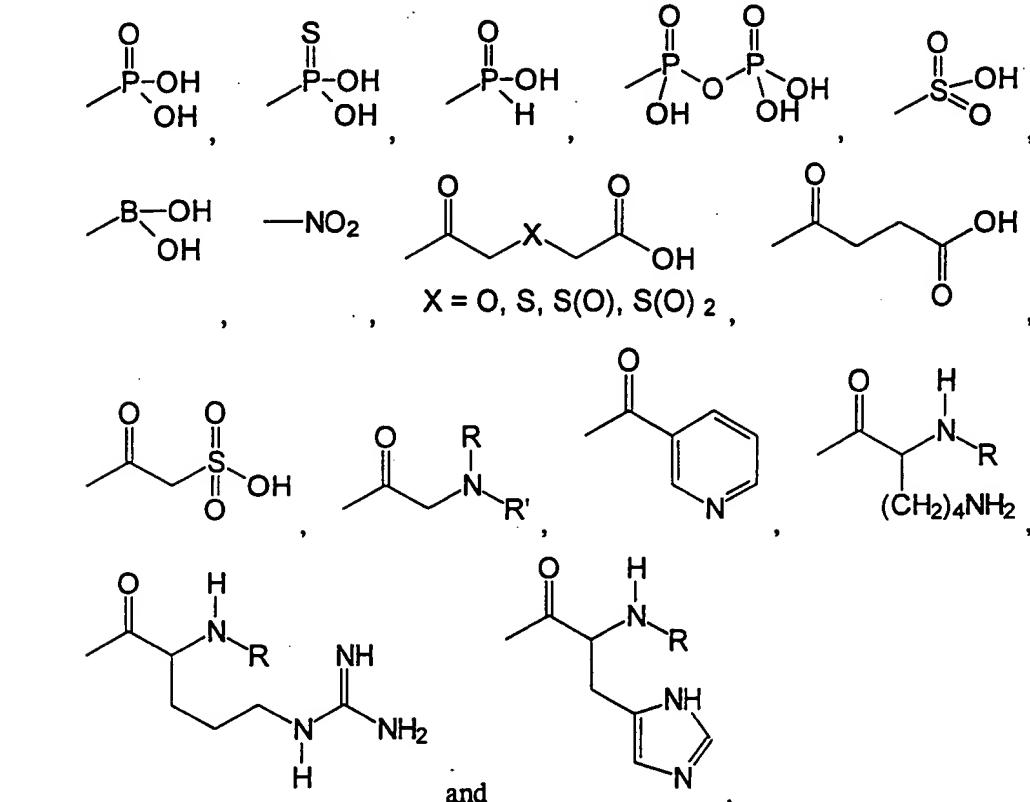
20 wherein Px is selected from the group consisting of Px*,





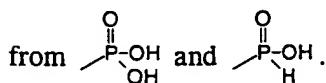
, and wherein D is O or S, R is H or C₁-C₄ alkyl, and wherein

Px* is selected from:



said functional group being capable of being derivatised with said solubilising group Px.

Generally, a compound according to the first embodiment includes at least one solubilising group Px as defined above. More generally, a solubilising group in a compound of the first embodiment or in the method of the second embodiment is selected



Typically, a solubilising group is introduced into the molecule as the last stage of its synthesis. For example, a solubilising group P(O)(OH)₂ may be introduced to a free amino, hydroxy or mercapto group by reaction of the amino, hydroxy or mercapto group with dimethyl chlorophosphate, followed by mild hydrolysis to remove the methyl ester groups. Other solubilising groups referred to above may be introduced by analogous methods: that is, by reaction of an amino, hydroxy, mercapto or other group capable of being derivatised with a solubilising group, with a reagent PxX', suitably protected if necessary (for example as methyl or benzyl esters), wherein Px is as defined above and X' is a leaving group such as Cl, Br, OH, OS(O)₂R and the like, where R is C₁-C₆ alkyl, for example methyl, C₆-C₁₀ aryl, for example phenyl or 4-methylphenyl, or C₇-C₁₁

arylalkyl, for example benzyl. Alternatively, a solubilising group $\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{OH})_2$ may be introduced to a free hydroxy group by reaction with phosphorous acid and mercuric salts in the presence of a tertiary amine, as described by Obata and Mukaiyama in *J. Org. Chem.*, 32, 1063 (1967). As a further alternative, an amino, hydroxyl or mercapto group 5 may be reacted with phosphorous acid preferably in the presence of a coupling agent such as dicyclohexylcarbodiimide and pyridine to yield a molecule possessing the solubilising group $-\text{OP}(\text{O})(\text{OH})\text{H}$. Optionally, this group may be oxidised to the corresponding phosphate derivative, for example using bis(trimethylsilyl) peroxide (see Scheme 14 below for an illustration of this method). A further process for the introduction of a 10 group $-\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{OH})_2$ is described in Australian patent application no. 54311/86, and involves the reaction of an amino, hydroxyl or mercapto group with certain diesters of amides of phosphorus acid, followed by oxidation and hydrolysis of the resulting intermediate compounds.

Suitable reagents for the introduction of a solubilising group $-\text{NO}_2$ are lower 15 alkyl nitrates such as methyl nitrate or ethyl nitrate, and acyl nitrates such as acetyl nitrate or benzoyl nitrate.

Other methods for the preparation of compounds of formulae (I) to (IAW) referred to herein are disclosed in US Patent Nos. 5,116,835, 5,126,326; 5,132,400; 5,145,957; 5,198,426; 5,212,157; 5,215,968; 5,212,667; 5,294,720; and 5,296,604; 20 International Patent Application Nos. 91/08221; 91/10442; 92/151319 and 92/21696; European Patent Application Nos. 0528242; 0519433 and 0432595 and Australian Patent Application Nos. 35700/89; 53716/90; 63221/90; 71319/91; 71320/91; 71323/91; 82313/91; 83206/91; 87594/91; 90531/91; 90851/94; 90925/91; 91251/91; 91332/91; 18355/92; 26424/92; 37160/93; 38808/93 and 44930/93, the disclosures of each of which 25 are incorporated herein by reference.

A third embodiment of the invention is directed to pharmaceutical compositions comprising a compound of formula (I) together with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, diluents, adjuvants and/or excipients.

In a fourth embodiment of the invention there is provided a method for inhibiting 30 retroviral proteases in a mammal in need of such inhibition, comprising administering to the mammal an effective amount of a compound of the first embodiment or of a composition of the second embodiment. In one form of the third embodiment, there is provided a method for the treatment or prophylaxis of HIV viral infections such as AIDS.

For inhibiting retroviral proteases or the treatment of HIV viral infections, a 35 composition of the second embodiment may be administered orally, topically, parenterally, e.g. by injection and by intra-arterial infusion, rectally or by inhalation spray.

For oral administration, the pharmaceutical composition may be in the form of tablets, lozenges, pills, troches, capsules, elixirs, powders, including lyophilised powders,

solutions, granules, suspensions, emulsions, syrups and tinctures. Slow-release, or delayed-release, forms may also be prepared, for example in the form of coated particles, multi-layer tablets or microgranules.

Solid forms for oral administration may contain pharmaceutically acceptable binders, sweeteners, disintegrating agents, diluents, flavourings, coating agents, preservatives, lubricants and/or time delay agents. Suitable binders include gum acacia, gelatin, corn starch, gum tragacanth, sodium alginate, carboxymethylcellulose or polyethylene glycol. Suitable sweeteners include sucrose, lactose, glucose, aspartame or saccharine. Suitable disintegrating agents include corn starch, methylcellulose, polyvinylpyrrolidone, xanthan gum, bentonite, alginic acid or agar. Suitable diluents include lactose, sorbitol, mannitol, dextrose, kaolin, cellulose, calcium carbonate, calcium silicate or dicalcium phosphate. Suitable flavouring agents include peppermint oil, oil of wintergreen, cherry, orange or raspberry flavouring. Suitable coating agents include polymers or copolymers of acrylic acid and/or methacrylic acid and/or their esters, waxes, fatty alcohols, zein, shellac or gluten. Suitable preservatives include sodium benzoate, vitamin E, alpha-tocopherol, ascorbic acid, methyl paraben, propyl paraben or sodium bisulphite. Suitable lubricants include magnesium stearate, stearic acid, sodium oleate, sodium chloride or talc. Suitable time delay agents include glycetyl monostearate or glycetyl distearate.

Liquid forms for oral administration may contain, in addition to the above agents, a liquid carrier. Suitable liquid carriers include water, oils such as olive oil, peanut oil, sesame oil, sunflower oil, safflower oil, arachis oil, coconut oil, liquid paraffin, ethylene glycol, propylene glycol, polyethylene glycol, ethanol, propanol, isopropanol, glycerol, fatty alcohols, triglycerides or mixtures thereof.

Suspensions for oral administration may further comprise dispersing agents and/or suspending agents. Suitable suspending agents include sodium carboxymethylcellulose, methylcellulose, hydroxypropylmethylcellulose, polyvinylpyrrolidone, sodium alginate or cetyl alcohol. Suitable dispersing agents include lecithin, polyoxyethylene esters of fatty acids such as stearic acid, polyoxyethylene sorbitan mono- or di-oleate, -stearate or -laurate, polyoxyethylene sorbitan mono- or di-oleate, -stearate or -laurate and the like.

The emulsions for oral administration may further comprise one or more emulsifying agents. Suitable emulsifying agents include dispersing agents as exemplified above or natural gums such as gum acacia or gum tragacanth.

For topical administration, the pharmaceutical composition may be in the form of a cream, ointment, gel, jelly, tincture, suspension or emulsion. The pharmaceutical composition may contain pharmaceutically acceptable binders, diluents, disintegrating agents, preservatives, lubricants, dispersing agents, suspending agents and/or emulsifying agents as exemplified above.

For parenteral administration, the compound of formula I or its salt may be prepared in sterile aqueous or oleaginous solution or suspension. Suitable non-toxic parenterally acceptable diluents or solvents include water, Ringer's solution, isotonic salt solution, 5% dextrose in water, buffered sodium or ammonium acetate solution, 1,3-5 butanediol, ethanol, propylene glycol or polyethylene glycols in mixtures with water. Aqueous solutions or suspensions may further comprise one or more buffering agents. Suitable buffering agents include sodium acetate, sodium citrate, sodium borate or sodium tartrate, for example. Aqueous solutions for parenteral administration are also suitable for administration orally or by inhalation.

10 For rectal administration, the compound of formula I is suitably administered in the form of an enema or suppository. A suitable suppository may be prepared by mixing the active substance with a non-irritating excipient which is solid at ordinary temperatures but which will melt in the rectum. Suitable such materials are cocoa butter, waxes, fats, glycerol, gelatin and polyethylene glycols. Suitable enemas may comprise agents as 15 exemplified above with reference to forms for topical administration.

Suitably, an inhalation spray comprising a compound of formula I will be in the form of a solution, suspension or emulsion as exemplified above. The inhalation spray composition may further comprise an inhalable propellant of low toxicity. Suitable propellants include carbon dioxide or nitrous oxide.

20 The dosage form of the compound of formula I will comprise from 0.01% to 99% by weight of the active substance. Usually, dosage forms according to the invention will comprise from 0.1% to about 10% by weight of the active substance.

The compound of formula I may be administered together or sequentially with one or more other active substances known or believed to have anti-viral activity. 25 Examples of such other active substances include AZT, acyclovir, ddC, ddA, trisodium phosphonoformate, castanospermine, rifabutin, ribaviran, bropirimine, phosphonothioate oligodeoxynucleotides, dextran sulfate, α -interferon and ampligen.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

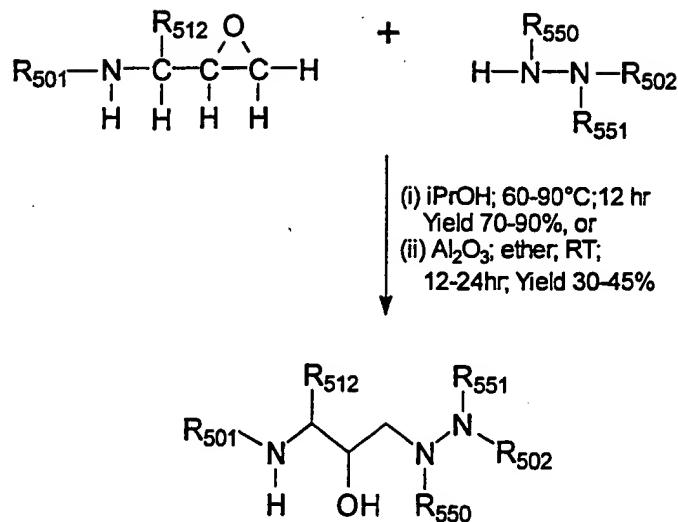
Figure 1 is a graph showing the transformation of the compound of Example 5 30 ("Prodrug") into the compound of Example 20 of International Patent Application No. PCT/AU93/00103 ("Drug") in rabbit's blood *in vitro*.

Figures 2 and 3 are graphs showing the transformation of Prodrug into Drug *in vivo* following intravenous and intramuscular (respectively) administration to a rabbit.

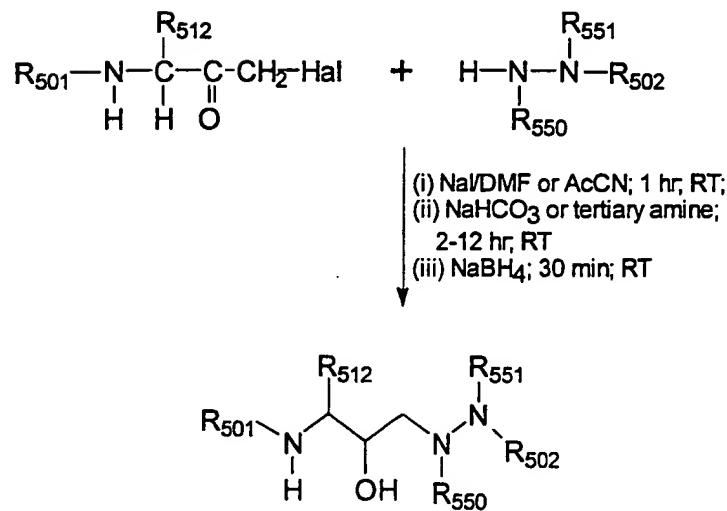
BEST MODE OF CARRYING OUT THE INVENTION

35 Methods for the preparation of compounds of formula (IB) wherein x and y are both 0, B is -CH(OH)- and R₅₀₆, R₅₁₃, R₅₄₂ and R₅₄₃ are hydrogen are described in the following Schemes 11 and 12:

Scheme 11

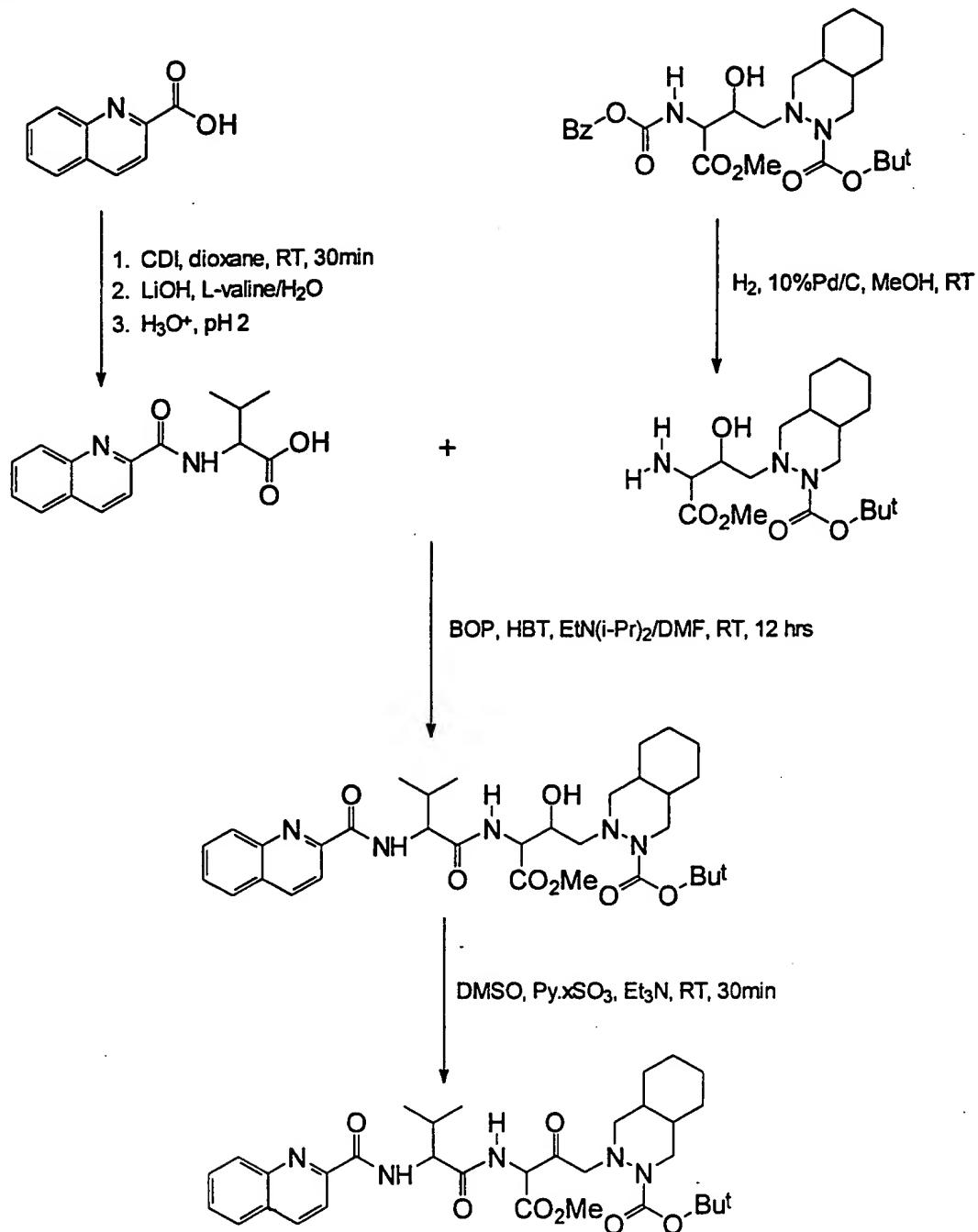


Scheme 12



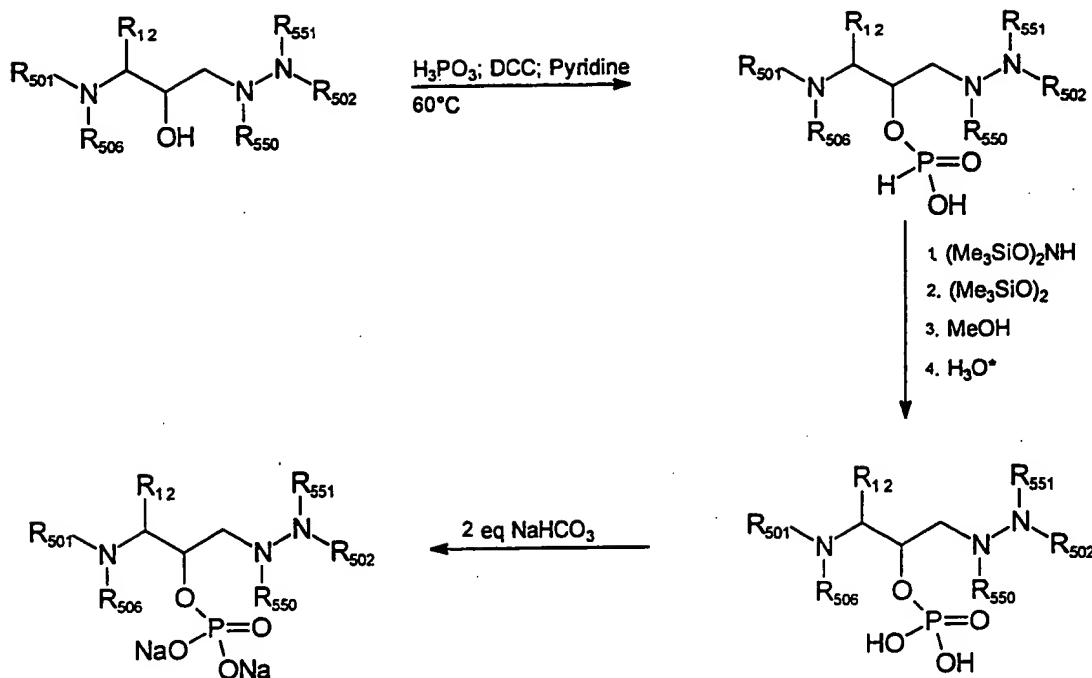
5 Scheme 13 presents an example of a method of preparation of Examples 11 and 12, commencing with the product of Scheme 12 in which R₅₀₁ is benzyloxycarbonyl, R₅₁₂ is methoxycarbonyl, R₅₅₀ and R₅₅₁ together form a 3,4-diazabicyclo[4.4.0]decane system and R₅₀₂ is tert-butoxycarbonyl:

Scheme 13



Scheme 14 presents an example of a method of preparation of compounds of formula shown in Table 4 below, in which the solubilising group Px is P(O)(OH)H or 5 P(O)(OH)₂:

Scheme 14



Compositions of the third embodiment may be prepared by means known in the art for the preparation of pharmaceutical compositions including blending, grinding, 5 homogenising, suspending, dissolving, emulsifying, dispersing and mixing of the compound of formula (I) together with the selected excipient(s), carrier(s), adjuvant(s) and/or diluent(s).

In the method for the treatment of HIV viral infections in accordance with the fourth embodiment of the invention, a compound of the first embodiment will usually be 10 administered orally or by injection. A suitable treatment may consist of the administration of a single dose or multiple doses of the compound of formula (I) or of a composition of the third embodiment. Usually, the treatment will consist of administering from one to five doses daily of the compound of formula (I) for a period of from one day to several years, up to the lifetime of the patient. Most usually, the treatment will consist 15 of the administration of the compound of formula (I) for a period of from one day to one year.

The administered dosage of the compound of formula I can vary and depends on several factors, such as the condition of the patient. Dosages will range from 0.01mg to 200 mg per kg. Usually, the dose of the active substance will be from 0.01mg to 25 mg 20 per kg of body weight.

Examples of dosage forms in accordance with the invention are as follows:

1. Tablet

Compound of formula I

0.01 to 20 mg, generally 0.1 to 10mg

	Starch	10 to 20 mg
	Lactose	100 to 250 mg
	Gelatin	0 to 5 mg
	Magnesium stearate	0 to 5 mg
5		
	2. <u>Capsule</u>	
	Compound of formula I	0.01 to 20 mg, generally 0.1 to 10mg
	Glycerol	100 to 200 mg
	Distilled water	100 to 200 mg
10	Saccharin	0 to 2 mg
	Methyl Paraben	1 to 2 mg
	Polyvinylpyrrolidone	0 to 2 mg
	3. <u>Injectable solution</u>	
	Compound of formula I	0.01 to 20 mg, generally 0.1 to 10mg
15	Sodium chloride	8.5 mg
	Potassium chloride	3 mg
	Calcium chloride	4.8 mg
	Water for injection, q.s. to	10 ml
	4. <u>Elixir</u>	
20	Compound of formula I	0.01 to 20 mg, generally 0.1 to 10mg
	Sucrose	100 mg
	Glycerol	2ml
	Carboxymethylcellulose	20mg
	Cherry flavour	2 mg
25	Water	q.s. to 10 ml

EXAMPLES

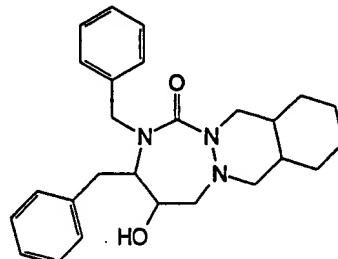
The following Examples describe the preparation of compounds according to the invention and are intended to illustrate the invention. The Examples are not to be construed as limiting in any way the scope of the present invention. Starting materials for the syntheses described in the following Examples are described in International Patent Application No. PCT/AU93/00103. In these Examples, melting points were taken on a hot stage apparatus and are uncorrected. Proton and phosphorus NMR spectra were recorded at 100 MHz or 300MHz on Perkin Elmer R32 or Bruker EM 300 spectrometers, respectively, in CDCl_3 unless otherwise stated. Chemical shifts for proton NMR are ppm downfield from tetramethylsilane; chemical shifts for P^{31} NMR are ppm downfield from 1,2-bis(diphenylphosphino)ethane external standard. Thin layer chromatography (TLC)

was performed on silica gel 60-F254 plates (Merck). Compounds were visualized by ultraviolet light and/or 2% aqueous potassium permanganate solution. The composition (by volume) of the TLC solvent systems were (A) hexane/ethyl acetate 3:2, and (B) concentrated NH₄OH/isopropanol 1:3.

5

Example 1

4S,5S-5,6-Dibenzyl-1,2-(cis-1,2-cyclohexane)dimethyl-4-hydroxy-7-oxo-perhydro-1,2,6-triazepine



Step A: 4S,5S-5-benzyl-1,2-(cis-1,2-cyclohexane)dimethyl-4-t-butyldimethylsilyloxy-7-oxo-perhydro-1,2,6-triazepine: Hydrogen chloride gas was bubbled through the solution of 0.51 g (1.26 mmol) of cis-1,6-3-t-butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-amino-4-phenylbutyl]-3,4-diazabicyclo[4.4.0]decane (isomer having R_f (A) = 0.16 when eluted with 8% methanol in dichloromethane) in 10 ml of 1% solution of methanol in methylene chloride for 30 min at room temperature. After purging the excess of hydrogen chloride with nitrogen gas the solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give 0.42 g (100% yield) of the hydrochloride salt of cis-1,6-4-[(2S,3S)-3-amino-2-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-3,4-diaza-bicyclo[4.4.0]decane as a hygroscopic, white solid. This was dissolved in 1 ml of dry DMF and 0.114 g (1.68 mmol) of imidazole and 0.21 g (1.38 mmol) of t-butyldimethylsilyl chloride were added under nitrogen. The resulting mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature and evaporated to dryness *in vacuo*. The residue was diluted to 20 ml with ethyl acetate, washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate and dried over anhydrous potassium carbonate and filtered off. The filtrate was evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure and the residue was dissolved in 20 ml of dry dioxane. To this, 0.204 g (1.26 mmol) of 1,1'-carbonyldiimidazole was added and the resulting mixture was stirred for 24 hrs at room temperature. After evaporation of the solvent under reduced pressure the residue was diluted to 15 ml with ethyl acetate and washed with water (3x) and saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution, and then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. Evaporation of the solvent under reduced pressure and purification of the residue by column chromatography (silica gel; hexane/ethyl acetate 3:2) gave 0.095 g (17% yield) of the title compound, melting at 145 - 146°C; R_f (A) = 0.43; NMR 0.07, 0.09 (s, s 6H, CH₃); 0.94 (s, 9H, t-butyl CH₃); 1.2 - 2.0 (m, 10H,

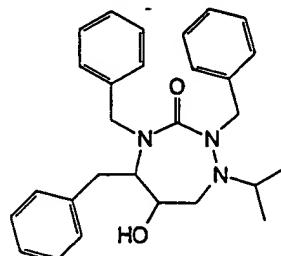
cyclohexane CH₂, CH); 2.5 - 2.8 (m, 4H, CH₂-3, benzyl CH₂); 3.2 - 3.7 (m, 4H, dimethyl CH₂); 3.9 - 4.0 (m, 3H, CH-4,5, NH); 7.1 - 7.32 (m, 5H, aromatic).

Step B: 4*S*,5*S*-5,6-dibenzyl-1,2-(*cis*-1,2-cyclohexane)dimethyl-4-*t*-butyldimethylsilyloxy-7-oxo-perhydro-1,2,6-triazepine: 4.5 mg (0.15 mmol) of 80% dispersion of sodium hydride in mineral oil was added to a solution of 0.0665 g (0.15 mmol) of the product of Step A in 0.2 ml of dry DMF at room temperature. After stirring for 30 min at room temperature, 0.0179 ml (0.15 mmol) of benzyl bromide was then added. The resulting mixture was stirred overnight, then diluted to 15 ml with ethyl acetate and washed with water, saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. Evaporation of the solvent under reduced pressure and purification of the residue by column chromatography gave 0.029 g (36% yield) of the title compound as a heavy syrup; R_f (A) = 0.77; NMR -0.35, -0.18 (s, s, CH₃); 0.8 (s, 9H, *t*-butyl CH₃); 1.2 - 2.2 (m, 10H, cyclohexane CH₂, CH); 2.56 - 4.18 (m, 12H, benzyl CH₂, dimethyl CH₂, CH₂-3, CH-4,5); 6.8 - 7.4 (m, 10H, aromatic).

Step C: 4*S*,5*S*-5,6-Dibenzyl-1,2-(*cis*-1,2-cyclohexane)dimethyl-4-hydroxy-7-oxo-perhydro-1,2,6-triazepine: A mixture of 29 mg (0.0543 mmol) of the product of Step B and 0.0426 g (0.163 mmol) of tetrabutylammonium fluoride hydrate in 1 ml of anhydrous acetonitrile was stirred at 45±5°C for 3 hrs and evaporated to dryness. The residue was purified by column chromatography (silica gel, hexane/ethyl acetate 3:2) to give 0.019 g (86% yield) of the title compound as a colourless foam; R_f (A) = 0.26; NMR 1.2 - 2.1 (m, 18H, cyclohexane CH₂, CH, OH, 3.5 x H₂O); 2.6 - 4.0 (m, 11H, benzyl CH₂, dimethyl CH₂, CH₂-3, CH-5); 4.83 (m, 1H, CH-4); 7.0 - 7.4 (m, 10H, aromatic).

Example 2

4*S*,5*S*-1,5,6-Tribenzyl-2-isopropyl-4-hydroxy-7-oxo-perhydro-1,2,6-triazepine



25

Step A: 4*S*,5*S*-5-benzyl-2-isopropyl-4-*t*-butyldimethylsilyloxy-7-oxo-perhydro-1,2,6-triazepine: When *t*-butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2*S*,3*S*)-3-amino-2-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-carbazate was substituted for *cis*-1,6-3-*t*-butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2*S*,3*S*)-2-hydroxy-3-amino-4-phenylbutyl]-3,4-diazabicyclo[4.4.0]decane in Step A of Example 1 the identical process afforded the title compound in 20% overall yield; melting point = 131 - 132°C (hexane); R_f (A) = 0.18; NMR 0.10, 0.11 (s, s, 6H, silyl CH₃); 0.95 (s, 9H, *t*-butyl

CH₃); 1.1 - 1.35 (m, 6H, isopropyl CH₃); 2.8 - 3.2 (m, 5H, CH₂-3, CH-5, benzyl CH₂); 3.45 (m, 1H, isopropyl CH); 4.18 (m, 1H, CH-4); 4.41 (m, 1H NH-6); 5.63 (s, 1H, NH-1); 7.1 - 7.4 (m, 5H, aromatic).

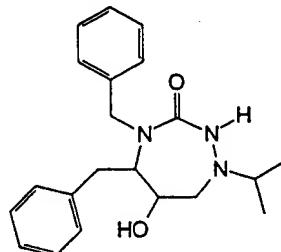
Step B: 4S,5S-1,5,6-tribenzyl-2-isopropyl-4-t-butyldimethylsilyloxy-7-oxo-perhydro-1,2,6-triazepine: A mixture of 0.07 g (0.185 mmol) of the product of Step A and 0.012 g (0.371 mmol) of sodium hydride in 0.2 ml of dry DMF was stirred for 30 min at room temperature, then 0.0441 ml (0.371 mmol) of benzyl bromide was added. The resulting mixture was stirred overnight and worked up as described in Step B of Example 1. The purification of the crude product by column chromatography (silica gel, hexane/ethyl acetate 3:2) gave 0.031 g (30% yield) of the title compound as a colourless syrup; R_f (A) = 0.74, NMR -0.28, -0.22 (s, s, 6H, silyl CH₃); 0.8 (s, 9H, t-butyl CH₃); 1.0 - 1.35 (m, 6H, isopropyl CH₃); 2.35 - 3.3 (m, 5H, CH₂-3, CH-5, 5-benzyl CH₂); 3.45 - 3.82 (m, 2H, isopropyl CH, CH-4); 4.0 - 5.38 (m, 4H, 1,6-benzyl CH₂); 6.6 - 7.8 (m, 15H, aromatic).

Also, the fractions with R_f (A) = 0.63 were combined and evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure to give 0.061 g (70% yield) of 4S,5S-5,6-dibenzyl-2-isopropyl-4-t-butyl-dimethylsilyloxy-7-oxo-perhydro-1,2,6-triazepine as a colourless solid; NMR 0.11 (d, 6H, silyl CH₃); 0.93 (s, 9H, t-butyl CH₃); 1.24 (m, 6H, isopropyl CH₃); 2.4 - 3.4 (m, 5H, CH₂-3, CH-5, 5-benzyl CH₂); 3.75 (m, 1H, isopropyl CH); 4.0 - 4.7 (m, 3H, CH-4, 6-benzyl CH₂); 5.05 (m, 1H, NH); 7.0 - 7.7 (m, 15H, aromatic).

Step C: 4S,5S-1,5,6-Tribenzyl-2-isopropyl-4-hydroxy-7-oxo-perhydro-1,2,6-triazepine: When the title compound of Step B was substituted for 4S,5S-5,6-dibenzyl-1,2-(*cis*-1,2-cyclohexane)-dimethyl-4-t-butyldimethylsilyloxy-7-oxo-perhydro-1,2,6-triazepine in Step C of Example 1, the identical process afforded the title compound with 98% yield as a foam; R_f (A) = 0.68; NMR (CDCl₃) 1.07, 1.19 (d, d, 6H, isopropyl CH₃); 1.58 (s, 1H, OH); 2.6 - 3.15 (m, 5H, CH₂-3, CH-5, 5-benzyl CH₂); 3.2 - 5.3 (m, 6H, isopropyl CH, CH-4, 1,6-benzyl CH₂); 6.8 - 7.6 (m, 15H, aromatic).

Example 3

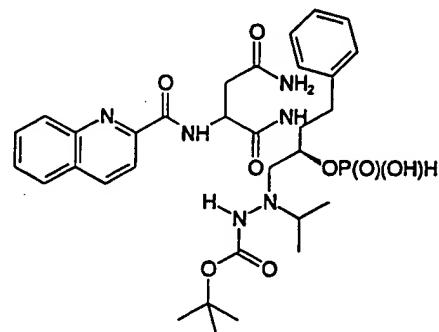
4S,5S-5,6-dibenzyl-2-isopropyl-4-hydroxy-7-oxo-perhydro-1,2,6-triazepine



When 4S,5S-5,6-dibenzyl-2-isopropyl-4-t-butyldimethylsilyloxy-7-oxo-perhydro-1,2,6-triazepine was substituted for 4S,5S-1,5,6-tribenzyl-2-isopropyl-4-t-butyldimethylsilyloxy-7-oxo-perhydro-1,2,6-triazepine in Step C of Example 2 the identical process afforded the title compound in 88% yield; melting point = 191 - 193°C; R_f (A) = 0.17; NMR ⁵ (DMSO-d₆, 80°C) 2.5 - 3.0 (m, 4H, CH₂-3, 5-benzyl CH₂); 3.28 (m, 1H, CH-5); 3.6 (m, 1H, CH-4); 3.8 (m, 1H, isopropyl CH); 4.2 - 4.7 (m, 3H, 6-benzyl CH₂; OH); 5.41 (m, 1H, NH); 7.0 - 7.4 (m, 10H, aromatic).

Example 4

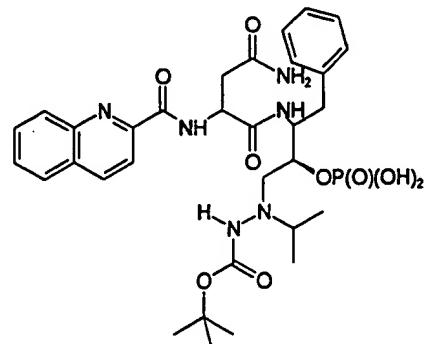
10 **t-Butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2S, 3S)-2-phosphitoxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl carbazate**



To a mixture of 0.4 g (0.67 mmol) of t-butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl carbazate and 0.12 g (1.47 mmol) of anhydrous phosphorous acid in 1.5 ml of anhydrous pyridine was added 0.28 g (1.4 mmol) of dicyclohexylcarbodiimide at room temperature under nitrogen, with stirring. After stirring for 2 hours at 60°C, the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was treated with 28 ml of 0.1 ml aqueous sodium bicarbonate and vigorously stirred for 1 hour at room temperature. The precipitate was filtered off and washed with water and the filtrate was acidified to pH ~ 1.5 with concentrated hydrochloric acid. The 15 product was taken up by extraction with ethyl acetate (3 x 50 ml), and the organic phase was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. Evaporation of the solvent gave 0.42 g (95% yield) of the title product as a colourless solid; R_f (B) = 0.62; H^1 NMR (CDCl₃): 1.08 (m, 6H, isopropyl CH₃); 1.41 (s, 9H, t-butyl CH₃); 2.7 - 4.8 (m, 14H, asn CH₂, butyl CH₂-1, 4; CH-2,3; isopropyl CH; P-OH x 2H₂O); 5.12 (m, 1H, asn CH); 5.89 (s, 0.5 H, PH); 6.2 - 8.5 (m, 15.5 H, aromatic, amide NH, 0.5 PH); 9.02 (m, 1H, asn NH); 20 P^{31} NMR (CDCl₃) 14.99 (J_{P-H} = 636 Hz); 25

Example 5

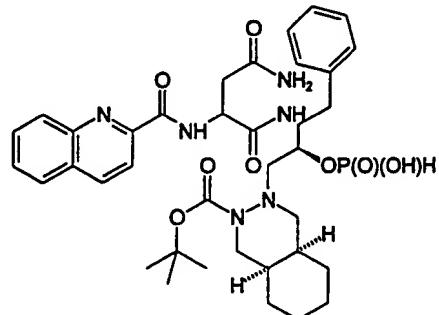
t-Butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2S, 3S)-2-phosphonooxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl carbazate



5 A suspension of 0.4 g (0.6 mmol) of the product of Example 4 in 2 ml of hexamethyldisilazane was stirred for 45 min at 120 \pm 5°C. At this point the reaction mixture became homogeneous. To this 0.3 ml of bis(trimethylsilyl)peroxide (Cookson, P.G et al., *J. Organometal. Chem.*, 1975, **99**, C31) was added and stirring was continued for 1 hour at the above temperature. The reaction mixture was cooled to room 10 temperature, then evaporated to dryness *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in 20 ml of methanol, evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure and redissolved in 12 ml of 0.1 ml aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The resulting mixture was acidified to pH \sim 1.5 with concentrated hydrochloric acid, saturated with sodium chloride and extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 50 ml). The combined organic phase was dried over anhydrous magnesium 15 sulfate and evaporated to dryness to give 0.39 g (96% yield) of the title compound as a colourless solid; R_f (B) = 0.07; H^1 NMR ($CDCl_3$): 1.2 (m, 6H, isopropyl CH_3); 1.4 (s, 9H, t-butyl CH_3); 2.8 - 4.2 (m, 8H, asn CH_2 butyl CH_2 -1,4, CH-3, isopropyl CH); 4.2 - 6.4 (m, 5H, asn CH, butyl CH-2, NH, POH); 6.5 - 8.4 (m, 14H, aromatic, NH); 8.78 (m, 2H, NH); P^{31} NMR ($CDCl_3$) 9.6 (s).

Example 6

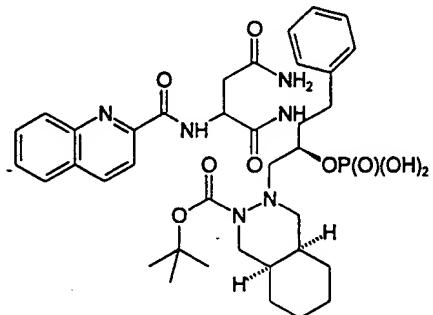
cis-1,6-3-t-Butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2S, 3S)-2-phosphitoxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-3,4-diaza-bicyclo[4.4.0]decane



5 When cis-1,6-3-t-butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-3,4-diaza-bicyclo[4.4.0]decane is substituted for t-butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate in Example 4, the identical process affords the title compound in 89% yield, as a colourless solid; $R_f(B) = 0.64$; ^1H NMR (CDCl_3): 1.1 - 1.8 (m, 19H, t-butyl CH_3 , decane CH_2 -7,8,9,10, CH -1,6); 2.12 (m, 1H, butyl CH -3); 2.6 - 5.1 (m, 19H, asn CH_2 , CH , butyl CH_2 -1,4, CH -2, decane CH_2 -2,5, $\text{POH} \times 2.5 \text{ H}_2\text{O}$); 6.1 - 8.4 (m, 15H, amide NH, PH, aromatic); 9.08 (m, 1H, asn NH); ^{31}P NMR (CDCl_3) 16.43 ($J_{\text{PH}} = 700 \text{ Hz}$).

Example 7

15 **cis-1,6-3-t-Butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2S, 3S)-2-phosphonoxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-3,4-diaza-bicyclo[4.4.0]decane**



When the product of Example 6 is substituted for t-butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2S, 3S)-2-phosphitoxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate in Example 5, the identical process affords the title compound in 83% yield, as a colourless solid; $R_f(B) = 0.12$; ^1H NMR (CDCl_3): 1.1 - 2.4 (m, 20H, t-butyl CH_3 , decane CH_2 -7,8,9,10, CH -1,6, butyl CH -3); 2.7 - 3.9 (m, 9H, asn CH_2 , butyl CH_2 -1,4, CH -2, decane CH_2 -5);

5.1 (m, 1H, *asn* CH); 6.1 - 8.3 (m, 21H, amide NH, aromatic, POH x 2.5 H₂O); 9.05 (m, 1H, *asn* NH); P³¹NMR (CDCl₃) 10.5 (s).

Other representative compounds in accordance with the invention are described in Tables 1 to 5. Other compounds in accordance with the invention are substances in which a hydroxyl, amino or mercapto group is any of the compounds described in the Examples and disclosures of the following, has been derivatised with a solubilising group Px as defined herein:

US Patent Nos. 5,116,835, 5,126,326; 5,132,400; 5,145,951; 5,198,426; 5,212,157; 5,215,968; 5,221,667; 5,250563; 5,268,361; 5,294,720; and 5,296,604; International Patent Application Nos. 90/09191; 91/08221; 91/10442; 92/15319 and 92/21696; European Patent Application Nos. 0574135; 0528242; 0519433 and 0432595 and Australian Patent Application Nos. 35700/89; 42308/89; 45665/89; 46115/89; 53716/90; 63221/90; 66334/90; 71319/91; 71320/91; 71323/91; 77326/91; 81910/91; 82054/91; 88900/91; 82313/91; 83234/91; 83206/91; 85877/91; 87309/91; 87409/91; 87594/91; 15 88900/91; 89941/91; 90531/91; 90851/91; 90925/91; 91223/91; 91251/91; 91332/91; 91790/92; 10812/92; 18355/92; 19373/92; 21944/92; 22889/92; 24129/92; 24690/92; 26424/92; 31628/93; 35165/93; 35621/93; 37160/93; 38808/93; 41230/93; 41659/93; 44930/93 and 49072/93, the disclosures of each of which are incorporated herein by reference.

Example 8

In Vivo Removal of Phosphono Group

Solutions: The product of Example 5 was converted quantitatively into the corresponding disodium salt by treatment of the free acid with 2 equiv. of 0.2 M sodium bicarbonate and lyophilization of the resulting solution. The stock solutions of the disodium salt of the 25 product of Example 5, for blood and animal experiments, were prepared in sterile water.

Analyses: Reverse phase analyses (HPLC) were performed on Waters ternary gradient liquid chromatograph equipped with 996 diode array detector set at 238 nm. Separations were achieved on Alltima RP-18 (250 x 4.6 mm, i.d., 5 μ particles), with the flow rate of 1 ml/min. The isocratic mobile phase composition used for analyses consisted of 40% of 30 0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) and 60% of acetonitrile containing 0.1% TFA and 10% water. The retention time of the product of Example 5 (referred to below as "Prodrug") was in the range of 3.6 - 3.9 minutes and the retention time of t-butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[*(2S, 3S)*-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl carbazate (referred to below as "Drug") was about 6.2 minutes. Detector response was 35 linear from 0.5 to 120 μ M for Prodrug and 0.05 to 50 μ M for Drug.

Standards and Sample Processing: The standards were prepared by serial dilution of Prodrug or Drug in rabbit blood collected into heparinised tubes. Blood samples were transferred into vials containing 150 units of heparin and stored on ice until processed. The blood samples were then separated by centrifuging at 6000 rpm for 10 min. The plasma samples were frozen and stored at -20°C until they were analysed.

Plasma preparation for HPLC analysis: An equal volume (100 µL) of thawed plasma and acetonitrile was stirred with a vortex mixer and allowed to stand at room temperature for 5 minutes, then centrifuged at 14000 rpm for 10 minutes. Samples of the supernantant (50 µL) were injected into the chromatograph.

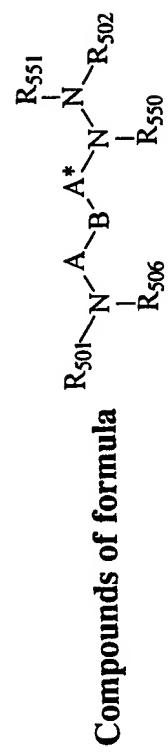
10 **Transformation of Prodrug into Drug by Blood** was established by measurement of prodrug and drug concentrations in plasma following the prodrug incubation in whole rabbit's blood (100 µM) at 36°C for 19 hours. Fig. 1 shows the concentrations of prodrug and drug under these conditions over 19 hours.

15 **Transformation of Prodrug into Drug after intravenous (IV) administration** of prodrug (9.2 mg/kg) to rabbit was established by measurement of prodrug/drug concentrations in plasma over 120 min. The formulated product, containing 30 mg/ml of prodrug, was well tolerated by the rabbit. The plasma profiles of prodrug and drug disappearance are shown in Fig. 2.

20 **Transformation of Prodrug into Drug after Intramuscular (IM) administration** of prodrug (7.9 mg/kg) to rabbit was established by measurement of drug concentrations in plasma over 330 min. The formulated product, containing 30 mg/ml of prodrug was well tolerated by the rabbit. The time dependence of the plasma concentration of the drug are shown in Fig. 3.

25 When prodrug was administered to a dog orally at a dose of 20mg/kg, the blood plasma concentration of drug was found to be 0.044, 0.141, 0.189, 0.172, 0.164, 0.132, 0.089 and 0.060 µM, respectively, after 5, 15, 30, 47, 63, 93, 124 and 155 minutes. When prodrug was administered to a second dog orally at a dose of 10mg/kg, the blood plasma concentration of drug was found to be 0.137, 0.371, 0.297, 0.242, 0.176, 0.11, 0.071, and 0.050 µM, respectively, after 5, 15, 30, 45, 60, 94, 123 and 154 minutes.

TABLE 1



Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	A	B	A*	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
9.	BzOC(O)-	Et	-CH ₂ -	CH ₂ OH —CH—	-CH ₂ -	-(CH ₂) ₄ -	t-BuOC(O)-	
10.		Me	-CH ₂ -	CH ₂ OH —CH—	-CH ₂ -		-SO ₂ Me	
11.		H	COOMe —CH—	-CH(OH)-	-CH ₂ -		t-BuOC(O)-	
12.		H	COOMe —CH—		-CH ₂ -		t-BuOC(O)-	
13.			EtO(CH ₂) ₂	-CH ₂ CF ₂ -	-CH(OAc)-	-CF ₂ CH ₂ -	H	Me
								Ac

TABLE 1 (CONT.)

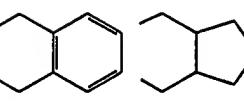
Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	A	B	A*	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
14.	Ac	Ph	-CH ₂ CH ₂ -	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \\ -\text{C}- \\ \\ \text{CO}_2\text{Me} \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \\ -\text{C}- \\ \\ \text{H} \end{array}$	-CH ₂ -	CO ₂ Me	Pr
15.	MeS(O)	iPr	-CH ₂ CHF-	$\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \\ \text{HC}-\text{CH} \end{array}$	-CHFCH ₂ -			-S(O) ₂ Ph
16.	MeS(O) ₂	Pr	-CH(Me)-	-CH(OTHP)-	$\begin{array}{c} \text{COOMe} \\ \\ -\text{CH}- \end{array}$			BzC(O)-
17.	H	BzOC(O)-	-C(Me) ₂ -	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \\ -\text{C}- \\ \\ \text{C(O)NMe}_2 \end{array}$	-C(Me) ₂ -			
18.	Et	Bz	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OS(O)Me} \\ \\ -\text{CH}- \end{array}$	-CH(OH)-	$\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \\ \text{CH}- \end{array}$			-S(O)Me
19.	Et	Bz	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OS(O)Me} \\ \\ -\text{CH}- \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \\ \text{C}- \end{array}$				-S(O)Me

TABLE 1 (CONT.)

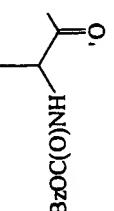
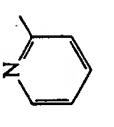
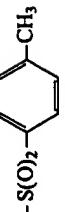
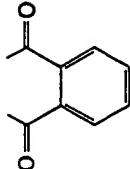
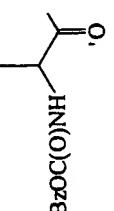
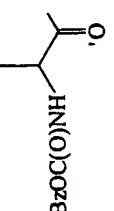
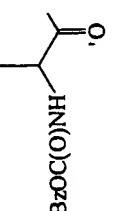
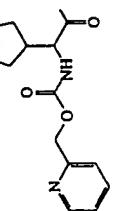
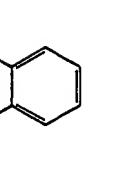
Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	A	B	A*	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₅₂	R ₅₅₃
20.	BzOOC(O)NH- 		$-\text{CH}-$	OH $-\text{C}-$ CH_3	$-\text{CH}(\text{Me})-$	i-Pr	i-Pr	H	
21.	NHC(O)OBz ^t	Me	$-\text{CH}_2\text{CCl}_2-$	$-\text{CH}-$ 	$-\text{CCl}_2\text{CH}_2-$			$-\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$ 	93
22.		H ₂ NCH ₂ CH ₂	$-\text{CH}_2\text{CHCl}-$	$-\text{CH}(\text{OH})-$	$\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$ $-\text{CH}-$	Bz	$-(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{C}(\text{O})-$		
23.		H ₂ NCH ₂ CH ₂	$-\text{CH}_2\text{CHCl}-$	$\text{C}=\text{O}$ $-\text{CH}_2-$	$\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$ $-\text{CH}-$	Bz	$-(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{C}(\text{O})-$		
24.		Me ₂ N	$-\text{CH}_2\text{CF}_2-$	CH_2OAc $-\text{CH}-$	$-\text{CF}_2\text{CH}_2-$		CH_2CNH_2		
25.	Ph	n-Bu	$-\text{CH}_2-$ $\text{N}(\text{Me})\text{Ph}-$	$-\text{CH}_2-$ $\text{C}-$ CF_3	OH $-\text{C}-$ CF_3	Ph			

TABLE 1 (CONT.)

Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	A	B	A*	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₅₂
26.	Me							
27.								
28.								
29.								
30.								
31.								

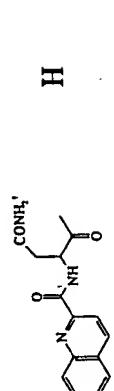
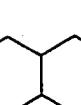
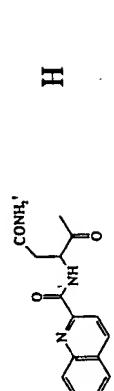
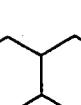
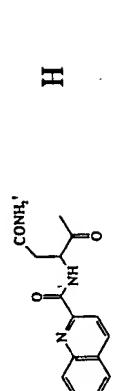
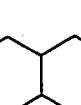
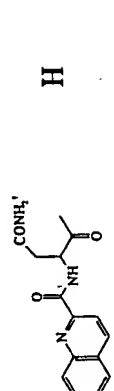
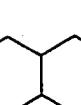
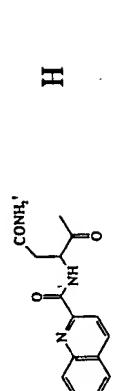
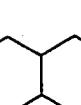
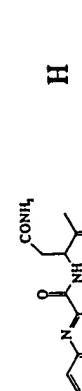
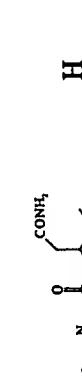
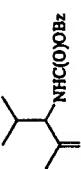
TABLE 1 (CONT.)

Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	A	B	A*	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
32.	PhOC(O)	HOCH ₂ CH ₂	—CH ₂ CF ₂ — CH ₃	CH ₂ OH —C— CH ₂ OH	—CF ₂ CH— CH ₃			
33.		NCCCH ₂ CH ₂	—CH—CHF— CH ₃	CH ₂ OH —C— CO ₂ Me	—CHFCH— CH ₃			
34.	H ₂ NC(O)	HOC(O)CH ₂	—CH— naphthalene	-CH(OH)— naphthalene	—CH— COOH			
35.	H ₂ NC(O)	HOC(O)CH ₂	—CH— naphthalene	—C— O	—CH— COOH			
36.	MeOC(O)	MeOC(O)CH ₂	Bz —CH—	-CH(OH)— naphthalene	—CH ₂ — NMe ₂			
37.	MeOC(O)	MeOC(O)CH ₂	Bz —CH—	—C— O	—CH ₂ — NMe ₂			
					—CH ₂ — COOH			
						n-Pr		
							MeOC(O)–	
							-(CH ₂) ₃ –	
							MeOC(O)–	

TABLE 1 (CONT.)

Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	A	B	A*	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
38.	Me ₂ NS(O) ₂	Ph	—CH— cyclic aromatic	OH —C— CO ₂ NMe ₂	—CH— cyclic aromatic	—CH— cyclic aromatic	—NH ₂ propyl ketone	—NH ₂ cyclic aromatic
39.	Me ₂ NS(O)	OMe	—CH— cyclic aromatic	OH —C— C(S)CH ₃	—CH ₂ CH— CH ₃	S(O)NMe ₂ S(O)NMe ₂	S(O)NMe ₂	—S(O) ₂ OCH ₃
40.		Ac	—CH— cyclic aromatic	OH —C— C(O)CH ₃	—CH— cyclic aromatic	—CH ₂ cyclic aromatic	—CH ₂ cyclic aromatic	—S(O) ₂ OCH ₃
41.	t-BuOC(O)-	H	Bz —CH—	OH —C— C(O)NH ₂	-CH ₂	Bz	H	t-BuOC(O)-
42.	BzOC(O)NH— C(=O)CH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₃	H	Bz —CH—	-CH(OH)-	-CH(Et)-	—CH ₂ cyclic aromatic	—CH ₂ cyclic aromatic	—NHCOOPbz
43.			Bz —CH—	-CH(OH)-	-CH ₂	—CH ₂ cyclic aromatic	—CH ₂ cyclic aromatic	—S(=O) ₂ —N—C(=O)O

TABLE 1 (CONT.)

Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	A	B	A*	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
44.		H	Bz	—CH—	-CH(OH)-	-CH ₂		
45.		H	Bz	—CH—	-CH(OH)-	-CH ₂		
46.		H	Bz	—CH—	-CH(OH)-	-CH ₂		
47.		H	Bz	—CH—	-CH(OH)-	-CH ₂		
48.		H	Bz	—CH—	-CH(OH)-	-CH ₂		
49.	BzOC(=O)NH		H	Bz	—CH—			

97

TABLE 1 (CONT.)

Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	A	B	A*	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
50.	t-BuOC(O)NH- C(=O)-CH ₂ -CH ₃	CH ₃ - C ₆ H ₅ -	Bz —CH—	-CH(OH)-	-CH ₂ -	Bz	H	t-BuOC(O)-
51.	t-BuOC(O)-	H	Bz —C— CONH ₂	-CH(OH)-	-CH ₂ -	—CH ₂ -CH ₃	H	t-BuOC(O)-
52.	t-BuOC(O)-	H	Bz —CH—	-CH(OH)-	-CH ₂ -	N C ₆ H ₅ -CH ₂ -CH ₂ -	CH ₂ - C ₆ H ₅ -	t-BuOC(O)-
53.	n-Pr	n-Pr	Bz —CH—	-CH(OH)-	-CH ₂ -	—CH ₂ -CH ₃	—CH ₂ -CH ₃	t-BuOC(O)-
54.			H			—CH ₂ -CH ₃	—CH ₂ -CH ₃	
55.			H			—CH ₂ -CH ₃	—CH ₂ -CH ₃	
								98

TABLE 1 (CONT.)

Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	A	B	A*	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₀₂
56.		H	Bz —CH—	-CH(OH)-	Bz —CH—	H	H	H	
57.		H	Bz —CH—	-CH(OH)-	Bz —CH—	H	H	H	
58.	t-BuOC(O)-	i-Bu							
59.									
60.	t-BuOC(O)-	H	Bz —CH—	-CH(OH)-					
61.	t-BuOC(O)-	H	Bz —CH—	-CH(OH)-					

TABLE 1 (CONT.)

Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	A	B	A*	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₅₂
62.	BzOC(O)NH 	H	Bz —CH—	OH —C— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —	Bz	H	BzOC(O)–
63.		H	Ph —CH—	OH —C— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —	Bz	H	
64.	CF ₃ CONH 	H	Ph —CH—	OH —C— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —	Bz	H	
65.		H	Bz —CH—	OH —C— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —	Bz	H	
66.		H	Bz —CH—	OH —C— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —	Bz	H	

TABLE 1 (CONT.)

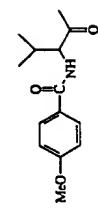
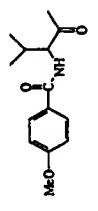
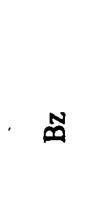
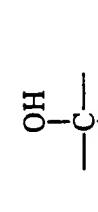
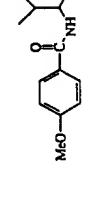
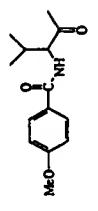
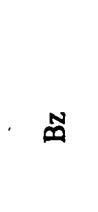
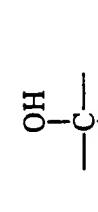
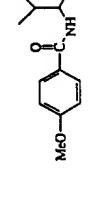
Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	A	B	A*	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
67.		H	Bz —CH—	OH —C— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —		H	
68.		H	Bz —CH—	OH —C— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —		H	
69.		H	Bz —CH—	OH —C— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —		H	
70.		H	Bz —CH—	OH —C— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —		H	
71.		H	Bz —CH—	OH —C— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —		H	
72.		H	Bz —CH—	OH —C— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —		H	

TABLE 1 (CONT.)

Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	A	B	A*	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
73.		H	Bz —CH—	OH —C— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —	Bz	H	
74.		H	Bz —CH—	OH —C— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —	Bz	H	
75.		H	Bz —CH—	OH —C— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —	Bz	H	
76.		H	Bz —CH—	OH —C— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —	Bz	H	
77.		H	Bz —CH—	OH —C— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —	Bz	H	

103

TABLE 1 (CONT.)

Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	A	B	A*	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₅₂
78.	$\text{H}\overset{\text{O}}{ }\text{C}-$		Bz —CH—		-CH(OH)-	-CH ₂ ⁻		
79.	$\text{H}\overset{\text{O}}{ }\text{C}-$		Bz —CH—			-CH ₂ ⁻		
80.								
81.								
82.								

TABLE 1 (CONT.)

Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	A	B	A*	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
83.		H	Bz —CH—	OH —C— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —	Bz	H	
84.		H	Bz —CH—	OH —C— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —	i-Pr	H	t-BuOC(O)– ¹⁰⁴
85.		H	Bz —CH—	OH —C— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —	i-Pr	H	t-BuOC(O)– ¹⁰⁴
86.		H	Bz —CH—	CH ₂ OH —CH—	-CH ₂ —	i-Pr	H	t-BuOC(O)–
87.		H	Bz —CH—	CH ₂ OH —CH—	-CH ₂ —	Bz	H	
88.		H	—CH— C(O)NH ₂	CH(OH)–	-CH ₂ —	Bz	H	t-BuOC(O)–

TABLE 1 (CONT.)

Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	A	B	A*	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
89.		H	$-\text{CH}-$ $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$	$\text{C}\backslash\text{C}$ O	$-\text{CH}_2-$	Bz	H	t-BuOC(O)-
90.		H	Bz $-\text{CH}-$	CH_2OH $-\text{CH}-$	$-\text{CH}_2-$		H	t-BuOC(O)-
91.		H	Bz $-\text{CH}-$	CH_2OH $-\text{CH}-$	$-\text{CH}_2-$		H	t-BuOC(O)-
92.		H	$-\text{CH}-$ $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OBz}$	$-\text{CH}(\text{OH})-$	$-\text{CH}_2-$	$-\text{CH}_2\text{CF}_3$	H	t-BuOC(O)-
93.		H	$-\text{CH}-$ $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OBz}$	$\text{C}\backslash\text{C}$ O	$-\text{CH}_2-$	$-\text{CH}_2\text{CF}_3$	H	t-BuOC(O)-

TABLE 1 (CONT.)

Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	A	B	A*	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
94.		H	Bz —CH—	—CH— C(O)OH	-CH ₂ —			t-BuOC(O)–
95.		H	Bz —CH—		-CH(OH)–			i-Pr
96.		H	Bz —CH—		-CH(OH)–			i-Pr
97.		H	Bz —CH—		-CH(OH)–			t-BuOC(O)–
98.		H	Bz —CH—		-CH(OH)–			t-BuOC(O)–

TABLE 1 (CONT.)

Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	A	B	A*	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
99.		H	Bz —CH—	—CH— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —	Bz	H	t-BuOC(O)– O [–]
100.		H	Bz —CH—	—CH— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —	Bz	H	t-BuOC(O)– O [–]
101.		H	Bz —CH—	—CH— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —	H-N— Cyclohexyl	H	t-BuOC(O)– O [–]
102.		H	Bz —CH—	—CH— C(O)OEt	-CH ₂ —	H-N— Cyclohexyl	H	t-BuOC(O)– O [–]
103.		H	Bz —CH—	-CH(OH)–	-CH ₂ —	i-Pr	H	—C(=O)–NMe ₂

TABLE 1 (CONT.)

Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	A	B	A*	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
104.		H	Bz —CH—	Me C Me	-CH ₂ —	i-Pr	H	t-BuOC(O)–
105.		H	Bz —CH—		-CH ₂ —	i-Pr	H	t-BuOC(O)–
106.		H						
107.		H	Bz —CH—		-CH(OH)–	-CH ₂ —		
108.		PhCO						

108

TABLE 1 (CONT.)

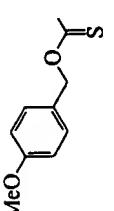
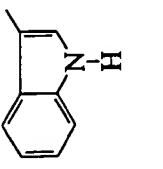
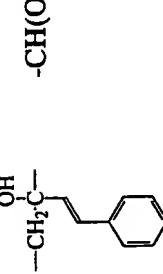
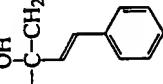
Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	A	B	A*	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
109.								

TABLE 2
Compounds of formula W-(A)_n-B-(A*)_m-V

Compound No	W	(A) _n	B	(A*) _m	V
110.					
111.					
112.					
113.					

TABLE 2 (CONT.)

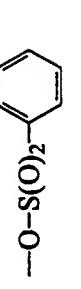
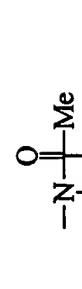
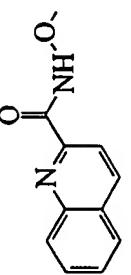
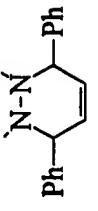
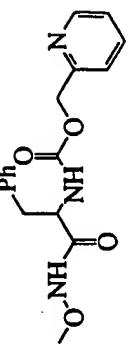
Compound No	W	(A) _n	B	(A*) _m	V
114.	$\text{HO}-\text{N}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)-$	$-\text{CH}-\text{CH}_2-$	$-\text{CH}(\text{NH}_2)-$	$-\text{CH}-$ 	$-\text{NH}-\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$ 
115.		$-\text{CH}_2-\text{OCH}_3$	$-\text{CH}_2-\text{OH}$	$-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-$ $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$	$-\text{O}-\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$ 
116.	$\text{PhC}(\text{O})\text{NH}-$	$-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-$ $\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OMe}$	$-\text{N}-$ $\text{Me}-\text{N}^+\text{Me}$	$-\text{C}(\text{O})-\text{CH}_2-$	$-\text{N}^+\text{Me}-$ $\text{Et}-\text{O}-\text{Me}$
117.		$-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-$	$-\text{O}-$	$-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-$	
118.	$\text{MeO}-\overset{\text{P}}{\underset{\text{O}}{\text{O}}}-\text{O}-$	$-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}-$ $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OBz}$	$-\text{NH}-$	$-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-$ $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OBz}$	

TABLE 2 (CONT.)

Compound No	W	(A) _n	B	(A*) _m	V
119.	<chem>H3C-c1ccccc1S(=O)(=O)NHC(=O)NH-</chem>	<chem>-CH2-</chem>	<chem>-CH-</chem> <chem>O</chem> <chem>(CHOH)3</chem> <chem>CH2OH</chem>	<chem>-CH2-</chem>	<chem>>N-N-C(O)OBu^t</chem> <chem>Et</chem>
120.	<chem>CC(C)C(=O)Nc1ccc2ccccc2n1</chem>	<chem>COOMe</chem> <chem>-CH-</chem>	<chem>N(OH)C(=O)C</chem>	<chem>-CH2-</chem>	<chem>>N-N-C(O)OBu^t</chem>
121.	<chem>CC(C)C(=O)Nc1ccc2ccccc2n1</chem>	<chem>COOMe</chem> <chem>-CH-</chem>	<chem>N(NH2)C(=O)C</chem>	<chem>-CH2-</chem>	<chem>>C(=N)O</chem>
122.		<chem>-CN</chem>	<chem>-(CH2)2O(CH2)2O-</chem>	<chem>-CH2CH2-</chem>	<chem>-O(CH2)2O(CH2)2-</chem>
123.	<chem>MeOC(=O)-</chem>	<chem>-CH2CH2-</chem>			<chem>-N=N-Bu</chem> <chem>O</chem>

TABLE 2 (CONT.)

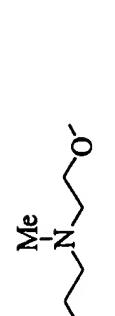
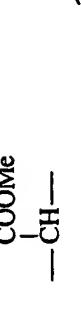
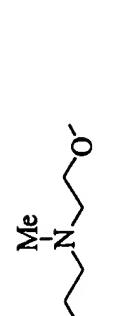
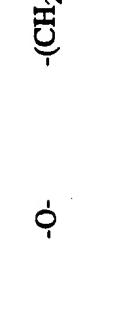
Compound No	W	(A) _n	B	(A*) _m	V
124.	-CN			-CH ₂ CH ₂ -	
125.				-OS(O) ₂ CH ₂ Ph	
126.				-CH ₂ -	
127.				-CH=CH-	
128.				-CH=CH-	

TABLE 2 (CONT.)

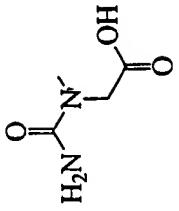
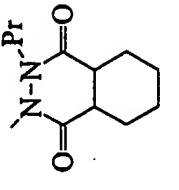
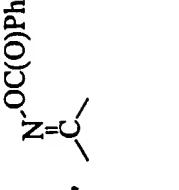
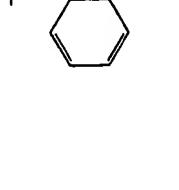
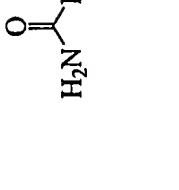
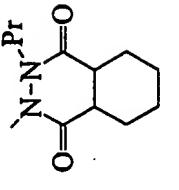
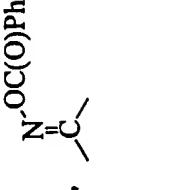
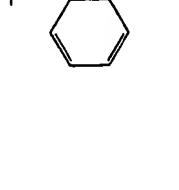
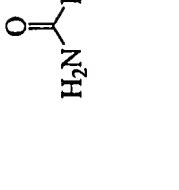
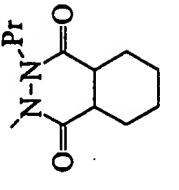
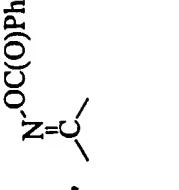
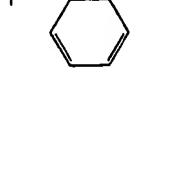
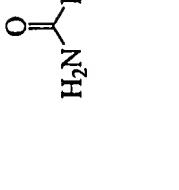
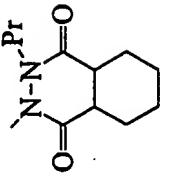
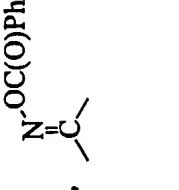
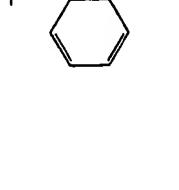
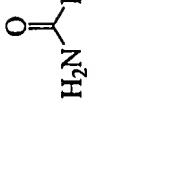
Compound No	W	(A) _n	B	(A*) _m	V
129.					
130.					
131.					
132.					

TABLE 2 (CONT.)

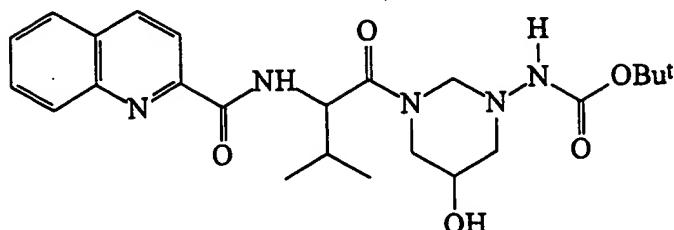
Compound No	W	(A) _n	B	(A [*]) _m	V
133.		$-\text{CH}-$ $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$	$-\text{CH}-$ $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OBz}$	-	
134.		$-\text{CH}-$ $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$	$-\text{CH}-$ $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$	$\text{N}^{\text{H}}\text{NMe}_2$	
135.		$-\text{CH}-$ $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OBz}$	$-\text{CH}-$ $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{SPh}$	CF_3CH_2^-	
136.		$-\text{O}-$ $\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{NMe}_2$	$-\text{O}-$ $\text{S}(\text{O})_2^-$		

TABLE 2 (CONT.)

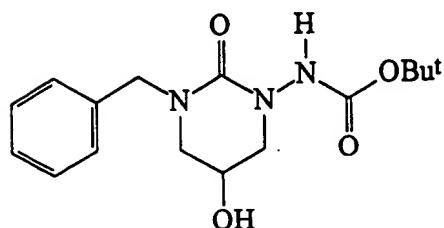
Compound No	W	(A) _n	B	(A*) _m	V
137.		$-\text{CH}_2-\text{C}(\text{O}(\text{Me}))=\text{C}(\text{O}(\text{Me}))-$	$-\text{CH}(\text{OH})-$	$-\text{CH}_2-$	
138.		$-\text{CH}_2-\text{Bz}-$	$-\text{CH}(\text{OH})-$	$-\text{C}(\text{Cl})=\text{C}(\text{Cl})-\text{CH}_2-$	
139.		$-\text{CH}_2-\text{Bz}-$	$-\text{CH}(\text{OH})-$	$-\text{CH}_2-$	
140.		$-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$	$-\text{C}(\text{O})-$	$-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$	

Table 3
Examples of Other Compounds of Formula (I)

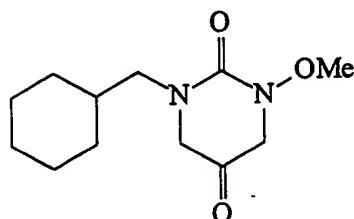
141.



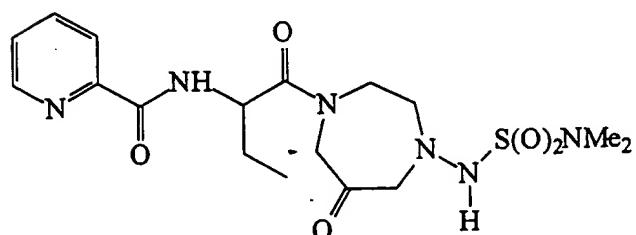
142.



143.



144.



145.

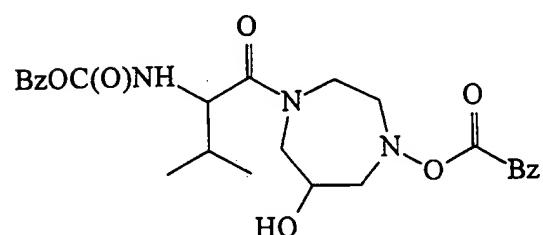
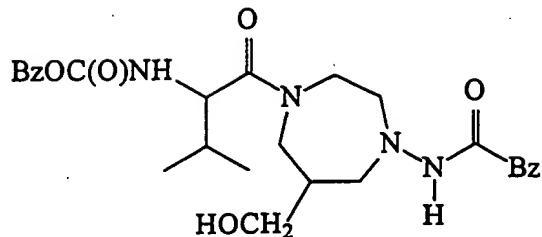
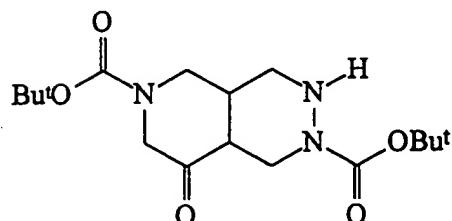


Table 3 (cont.)

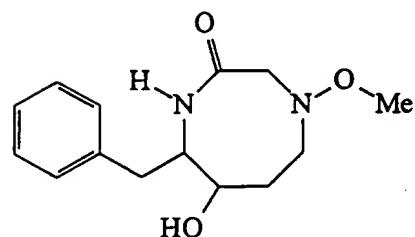
146.



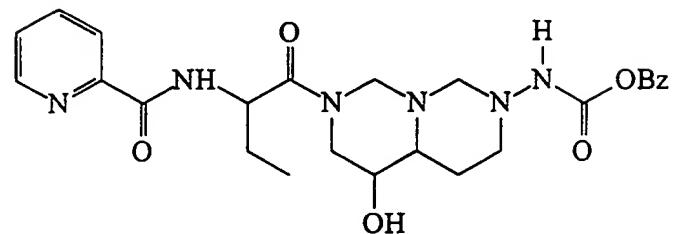
147.



148.



149.



150.

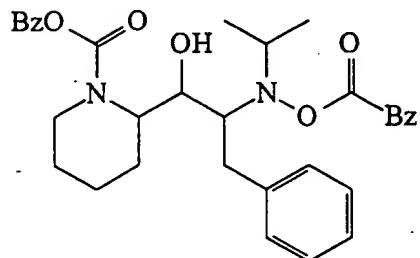
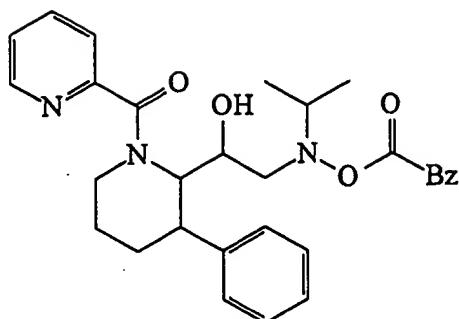
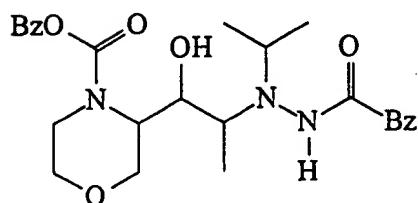


Table 3 (cont.)

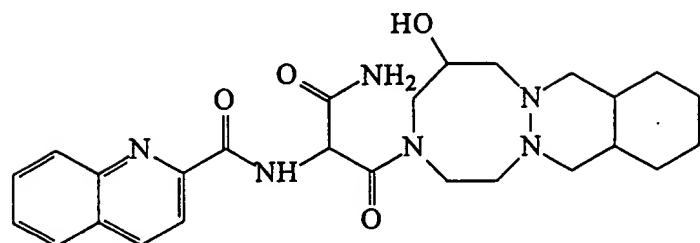
151.



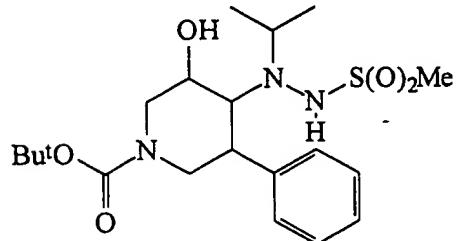
152.



153.



154.



155.

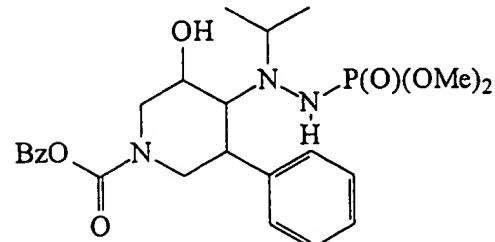
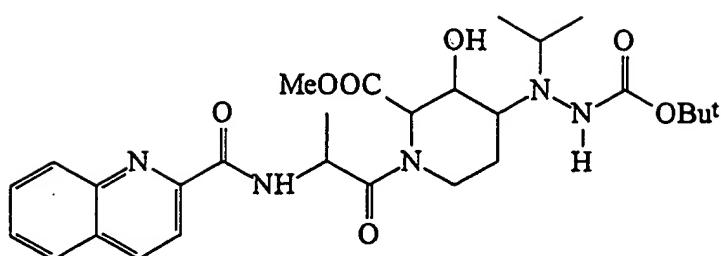
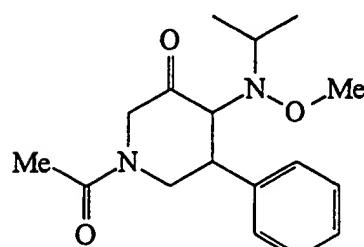


Table 3 (cont.)

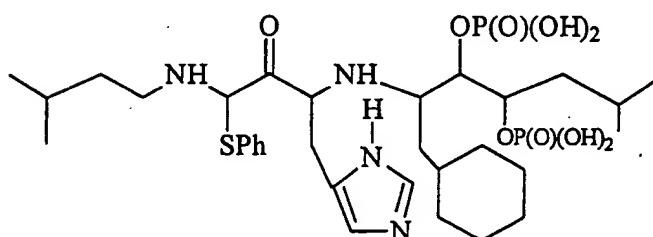
156.



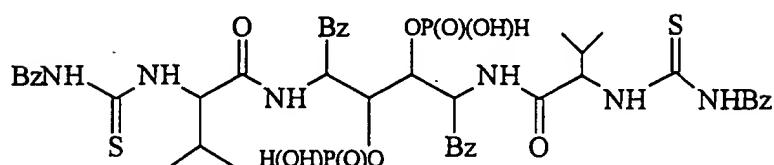
157.



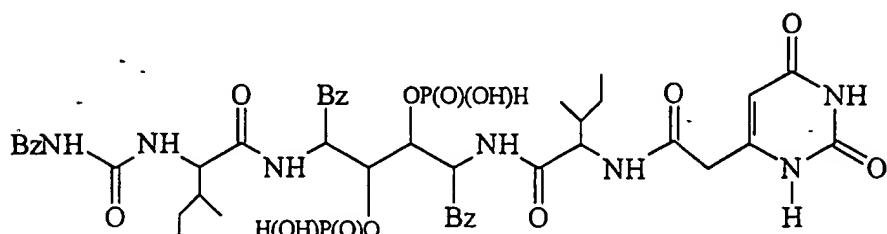
158.



159.



160.



161.

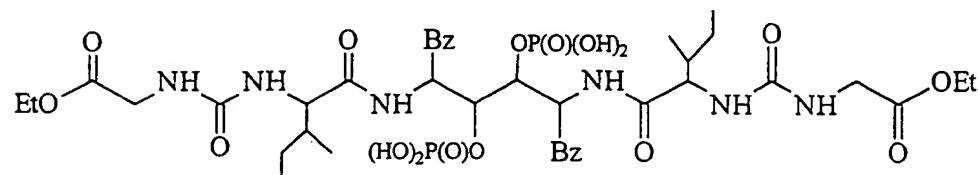
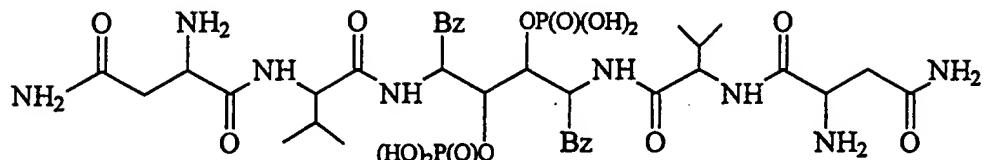
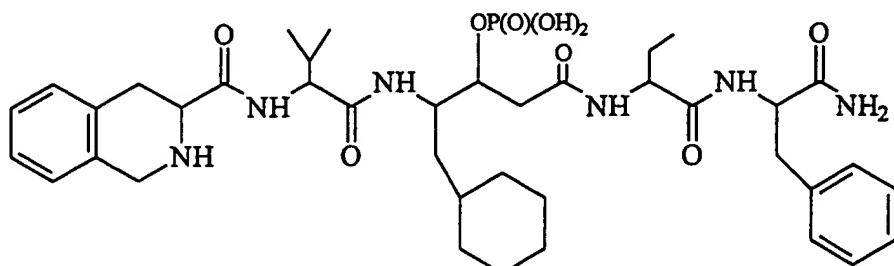


Table 3 (cont.)

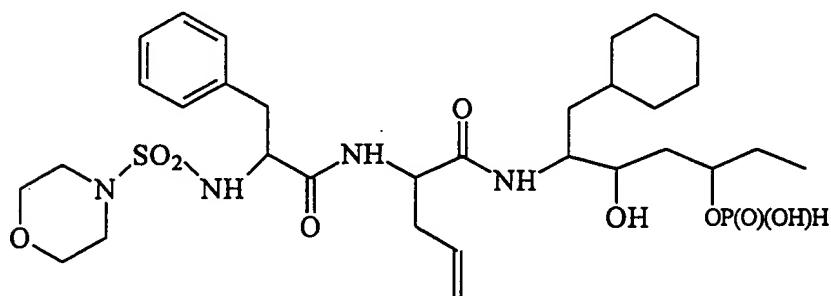
162.



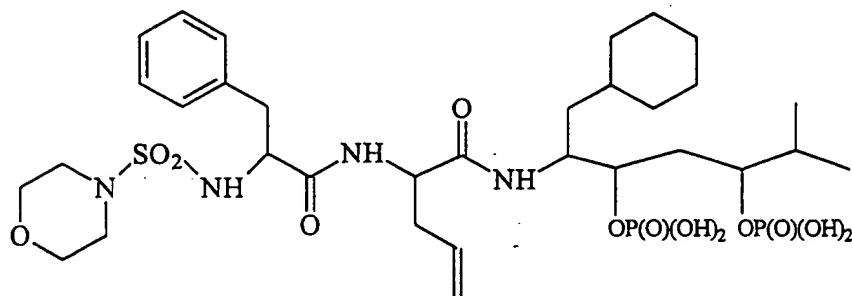
163.



164.



165.



166.

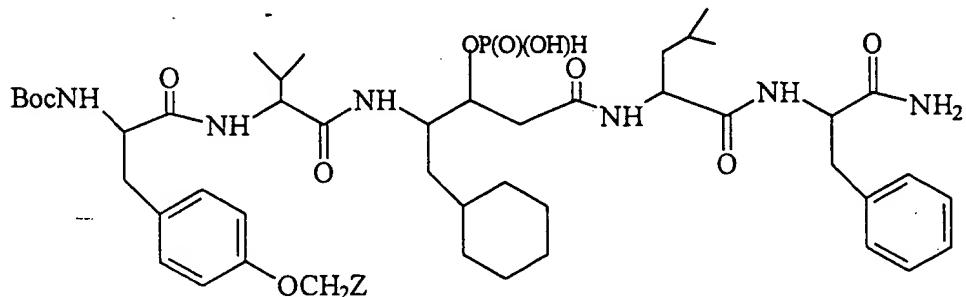
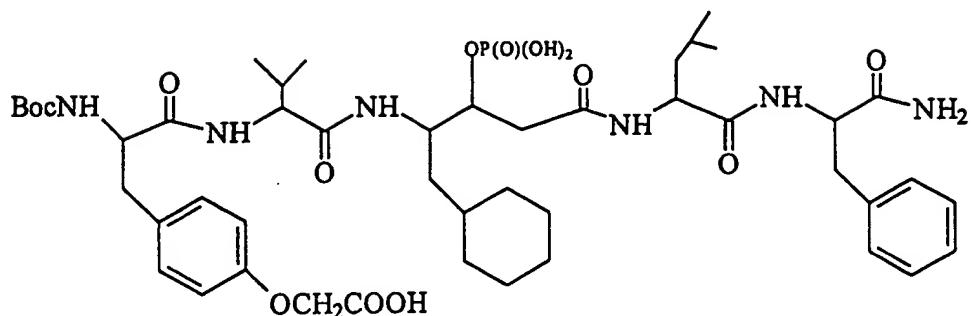
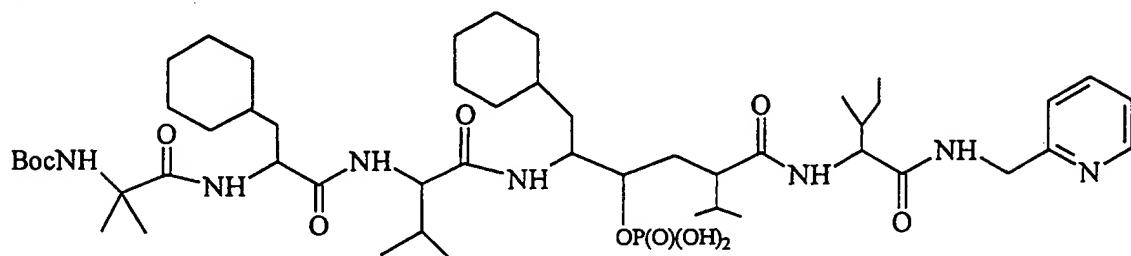


Table 3 (cont.)

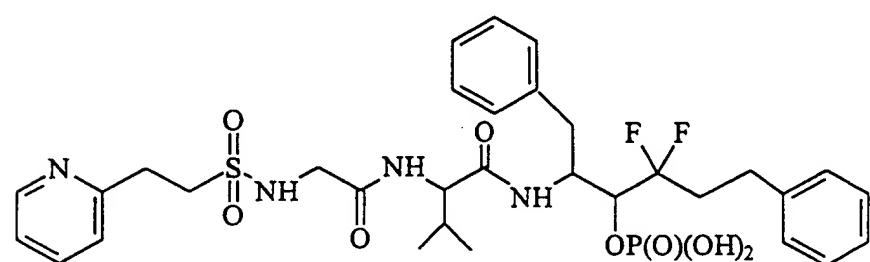
167.



168.



169.



170.

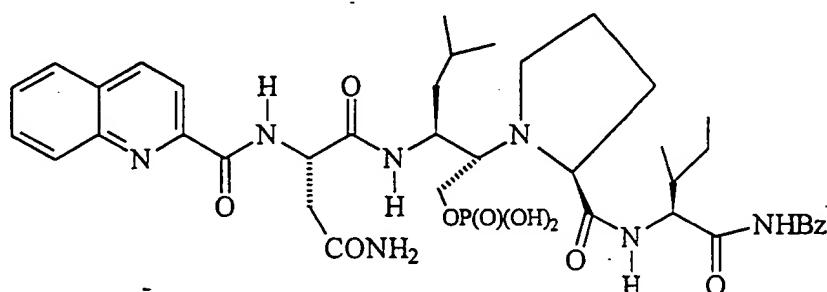
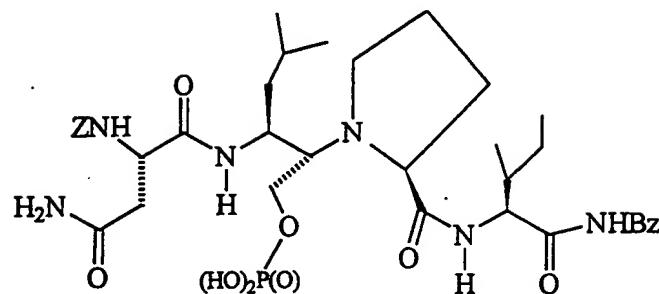
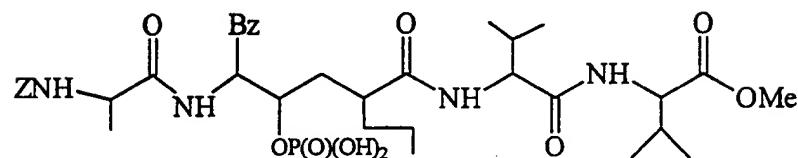


Table 3 (cont.)

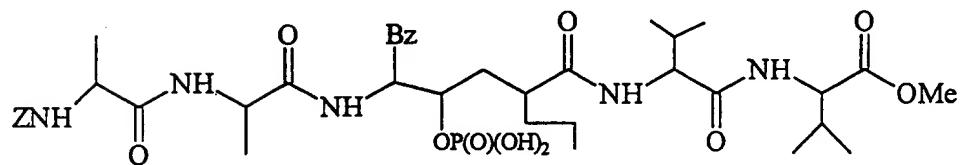
171.



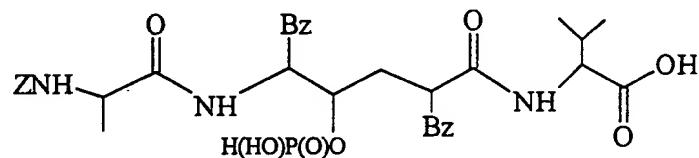
172.



173.



174.



175.

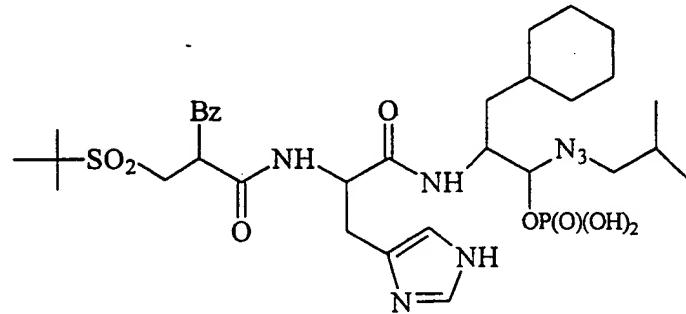
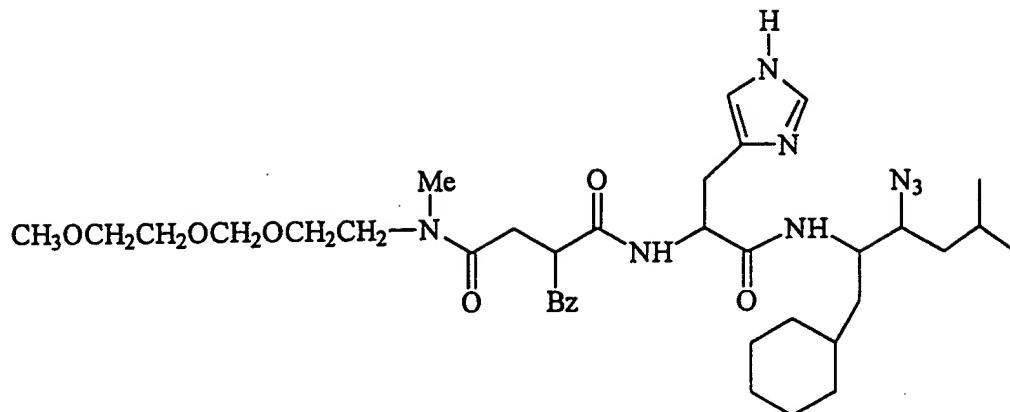
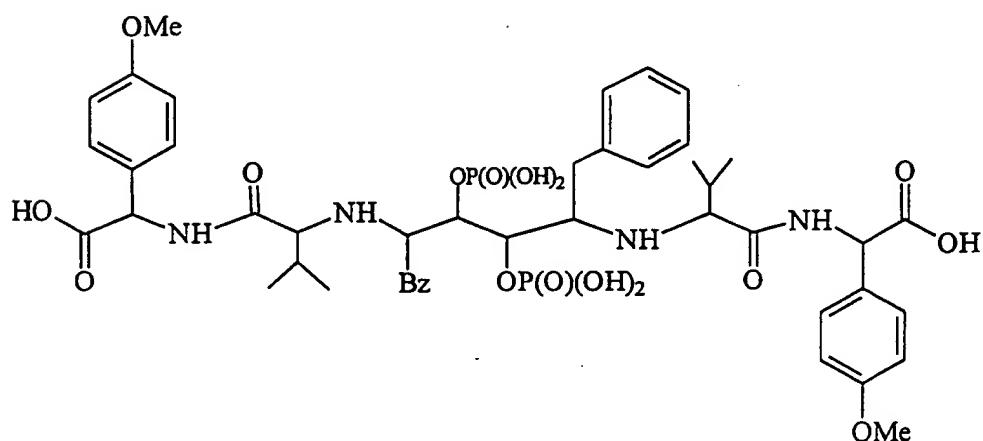


Table 3 (cont.)

176.



177.



178.

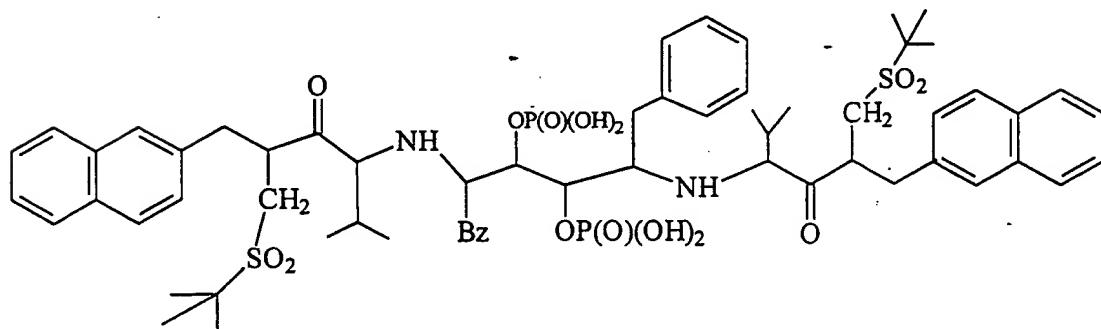
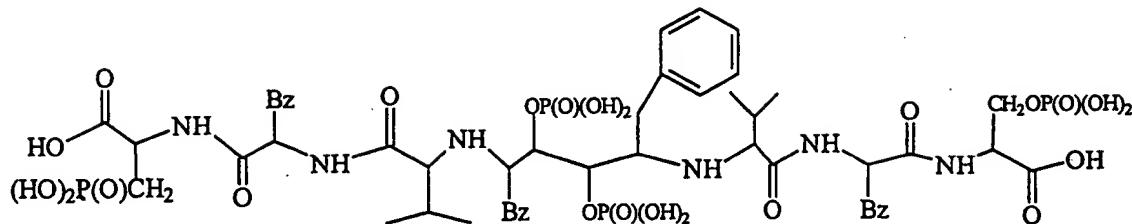
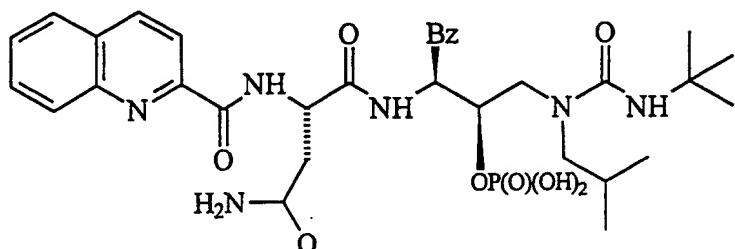


Table 3 (cont.)

179.



180.



181.

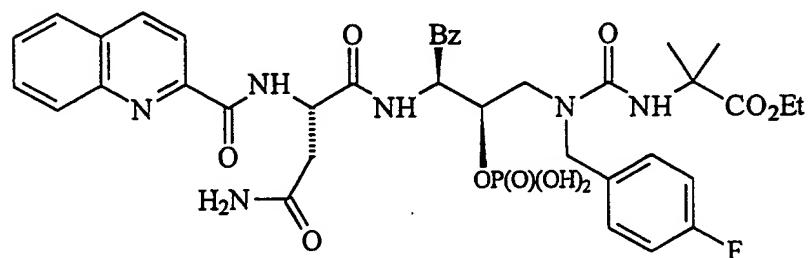
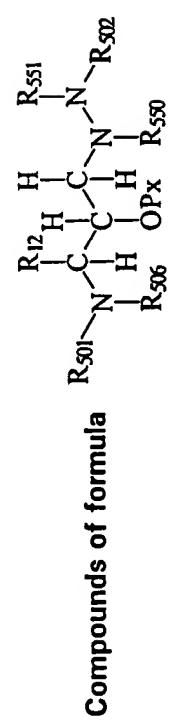


TABLE 4



Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	R ₁₂	P _x	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
182.	Z	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂	i-Pr	H	Boc
183.	Z	H	Bz	P(S)(OH) ₂			Boc
184.	Z	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂			Boc
185.	Z	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂			Boc
186.	Z	H	Bz	HP(O)(OH)	i-Pr	H	-C(O)Bu ^t
187.	Z	H	Bz	HP(O)(OH)	Bz	H	Boc
188.	Z	H	Bz		C ₆ H ₁₁	H	Boc
189.	Z	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂		-CH ₂) ₄ -	Boc

TABLE 4 (cont.)

Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	R ₁₂	P _X	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₅₂
190.	Z	H	Bz		i-Pr	H	Z
191.	Z-Val	H	Bz		Bz	H	Z-Val
192.	Z-Val	H	Bz		CH ₂ C ₆ H ₁₁	H	Z-Val
193.	Z-Val	H	Bz		(p-F)Bz	H	Boc
194.	Z-Val	H	Bz		(p-F)Bz	H	Boc-Val
195.	Z-Val	H	Bz		(p-F)Bz	H	Val
196.	Z-Val	H	Bz		(p-F)Bz	H	MC-Gly-Val
197.	Z-Val	H			(p-F)Bz	H	Boc

TABLE 4 (cont.)

Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	R ₁₂	P _X	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
198.	Z-Val	H	(p-F)Bz		(p-F)Bz	H	H
199.	Z-Val	H	(p-F)Bz		(p-F)Bz	H	
200.	Z-Val	H	(p-F)Bz		(p-F)Bz	H	
201.	Z-Val	H	Bz		CH ₂ C ₆ H ₁₁	H	TMC-Val
202.	Z-Val	H	Bz		(p-F)Bz	H	Z-Val
203.	Z-Val	H	Bz		(p-CN)Bz	H	Z-Val

128

TABLE 4 (cont.)

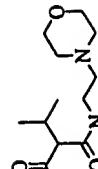
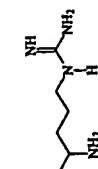
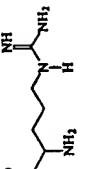
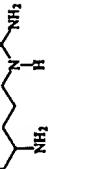
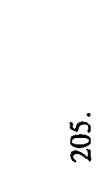
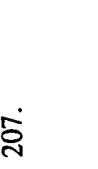
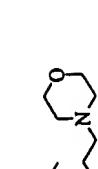
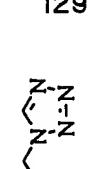
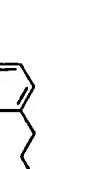
Compound No.	R ₅₀₆	R ₁₂	P _x	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
204.	Z-Val	H	Bz			
205.	Z-Val	H	Bz			
206.	Z-Val	H	Bz			
207.	Z-Val	H	Bz			
208.	Z-Val	H	Bz			
209.	Z-Val	H	(p-F)Bz			

TABLE 4 (cont.)

Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	R ₁₂	P _x	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
210.	Z-Val	H	(p-F)Bz		(p-F)Bz	H	
211.	Z-Val	H	(p-F)Bz		P(O)(OH)2	(p-F)Bz	H
212.	Z-Asn	H	Bz		P(O)(OH)2	(p-F)Bz	H
213.	Z-Asn	H	Bz		P(O)(OH)2	(p-F)Bz	Z-Val
214.	Z-Asn	H	Bz		P(O)(OH)2	Bz	H
215.	Z-Ile	H	Bz		P(S)(OH)2		Z-Ile
216.	Z-Glu	H	Bz		(p-F)Bz	H	Z-Glu
217.	QC-Val	H	Bz		P(O)(OH)2	i-Pr	H
218.	QC-Val	H	Bz		P(O)(OH)2		Boc
219.	QC-Val	H	Bz		HP(O)(OH)	Bz	H
220.	QC-Asn	H	Bz		HP(O)(OH)	i-Pr	H

131

TABLE 4 (cont.)

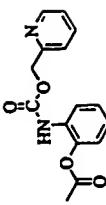
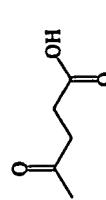
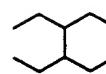
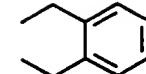
Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	R ₁₂	P _x	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
221.	QC-Asn	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂	i-Pr	H	
222.	QC-Asn	H	Bz	HP(O)(OH)	i-Pr	H	
223.	QC-Asn	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂	i-Pr	H	Boc
224.	QC-Asn	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂	i-Pr	H	QC-Val
225.	QC-Asn	H	Bz			H	Boc
226.	QC-Asn	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂			
227.	QC-Asn	H	Bz				

TABLE 4 (cont.)

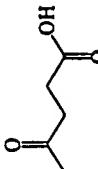
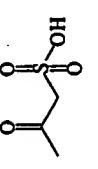
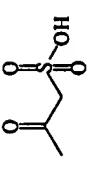
Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	R ₁₂	P _X	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₅₂
228.	QC-Asn	H	Bz		i-Pr	H	-C(O)Bu ^t
229.	QC-Asn	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂	i-Pr	H	-C(O)NHBu ^t
230.	QC-Asn	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂	Bz	H	Boc
231.	QC-Asn	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂	C ₆ H ₁₁	H	Boc
232.	QC-Asn	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂	-CH ₂ 4-		Boc
233.	QC-Asn	H	Bz		(p-F)Bz	H	Boc
234.	QC-Asn	H	(p-F)Bz		Bz	H	QC-Val
235.	QC-Asn	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂			Boc
236.	QC-Thr	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂			Boc

TABLE 4 (cont.)

Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	R ₁₂	P _x	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
237.	QC-(CN)Ala	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂			Boc
238.	BzC(O)	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂		H	Boc
239.	BzC(O)-Val	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂	Bz	H	BzC(O)-Val
240.	PC-Val	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂			Boc
241.	PC-Val	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂			Boc
242.	PC-Val	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂			
243.	PC-Val	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂	Bz	H	PC-Val
244.	PC-Val	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂	i-Pr	H	PC-Val
245.	PC-Val	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂	CH ₂ C ₆ H ₁₁	H	PC-Val
246.	PC-Asn	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂	i-Pr	H	Boc
							133

TABLE 4 (cont.)

Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	R ₁₂	P _x	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
247.	H	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂			Boc
248.	Val	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂	H	H	Val
249.	Val	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂	CH ₂ C ₆ H ₁₁	H	Val
250.	Val	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂		H	Val
251.	Boc	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂	Bz	H	Boc
252.	Boc	H	Bz	S(O) ₂ OH	CH ₂ C ₆ H ₁₁	H	Boc
253.	Boc	H	Bz	B(OH) ₂	i-Pr	H	Boc
254.	Boc-Val	H	Bz	S(O) ₂ OH	CH ₂ C ₆ H ₁₁	H	Boc-Val
255.	Boc-Val	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂		H	Boc-Val
256.	Boc-Val	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂	Bz	H	Boc-Val
257.	MC-Val	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂	Bz	H	MC-Val
258.	MC-Val	H	Bz	S(O) ₂ OH	(p-F)Bz	H	Boc
259.	MC-Val	H	Bz	S(O) ₂ OH	(p-F)Bz	H	Z-Val
260.	MC-Val	H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂	(p-F)Bz	H	Val

TABLE 4 (cont.)

Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	R ₁₂	P _x	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
261.	MC-Val	H	Bz		(p-F)Bz	H	
262.	MC-Val	H	Bz	NO ₂	i-Pr	H	
263.	MC-Val	H		(p-F)Bz		(p-F)Bz	H
264.	TMC-Val	H	Bz			Bz	H
265.	TMC-Val	H	Bz			i-Pr	H
266.	Asn	H	Bz			(p-F)Bz	H
267.	TFA	H	Bz			(p-F)Bz	H
							135
							TMC-Val
							Boc
							Boc

TABLE 4 (cont.)

Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	R ₁₂	P _x	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₀₂
268.	TFA	H	Bz		(p-F)Bz	H	H	Z-Val
269.	TFA-Val	H	Bz		i-Pr	H	H	
270.	Ac-Val	H	Bz		Bz	H	H	Ac
271.	Ac-Val	H	Bz		CH ₂ C ₆ H ₁₁	H	H	Ac-Val
272.	Ac-Val	H	Bz		(p-F)Bz	H	H	Ac-Val
273.	Ac-Val	H	Bz		(p-CN)Bz	H	H	Ac-Val
274.	Ac-Val	H	Bz		i-Pr	H	H	Ac-Val
275.	Ac-Val	H	Bz		i-Pr	H	H	
276.	Ac-Ile	H	Bz		CH ₂ C ₆ H ₁₁	H	H	Ac-Ile
277.	PhC(O)NH-Aasn	H	Bz		i-Pr	H	H	Boc
278.			Bz		P(O)(OH) ₂	i-Pr	H	Boc

TABLE 4 (cont.)

Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	R ₁₂	P _X	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
279.		H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂	i-Pr	H	Boc
280.		H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂	i-Pr	H	Boc
281.		H	Bz	P(O)(OH) ₂	i-Pr	H	CH ₃ OC(O)-Val
282.		H	Bz		(p-F)Bz	H	CH ₃ OC(O)-Val
283.		H	Bz		(p-CN)Bz	H	CH ₃ OC(O)-Val
284.		H	Bz		(p-F)Bz	H	CH ₃ OC(O)-Val
285.		H	Bz		i-Pr	H	CH ₃ OC(O)-Val
286.		H		Bz	H	H	CH ₃ OC(O)-Val

TABLE 4 (cont.)

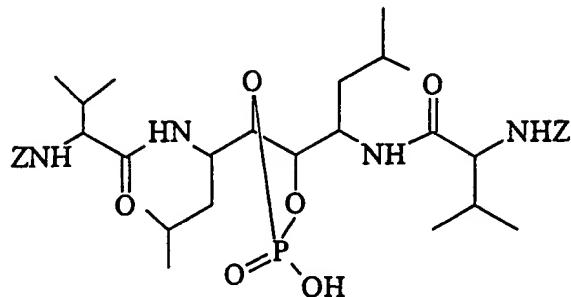
Compound No.	R ₅₀₁	R ₅₀₆	R ₁₂	P _x	R ₅₅₀	R ₅₅₁	R ₅₀₂
287.		H	Bz		i-Pr	H	
288.		H	CH ₂ C ₆ H ₁₁		i-Pr	H	
289.	MeSO ₂	H	Bz		Bz	H	BzC(O)-Val
290.		H	Bz		n-Bu	H	
291.	Z	H	Bz		P(O)(OH) ₂		Boc
292.	QCGlu	H	Bz		P(O)(OH) ₂		Boc
293.	ZAsn	H	Bz		P(O)(OH) ₂		Boc

138

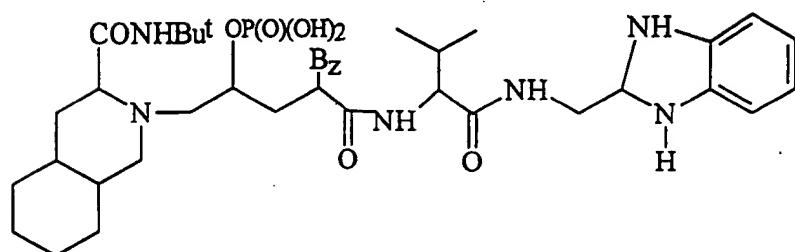
TABLE 5

Further examples of compounds of formula (I)

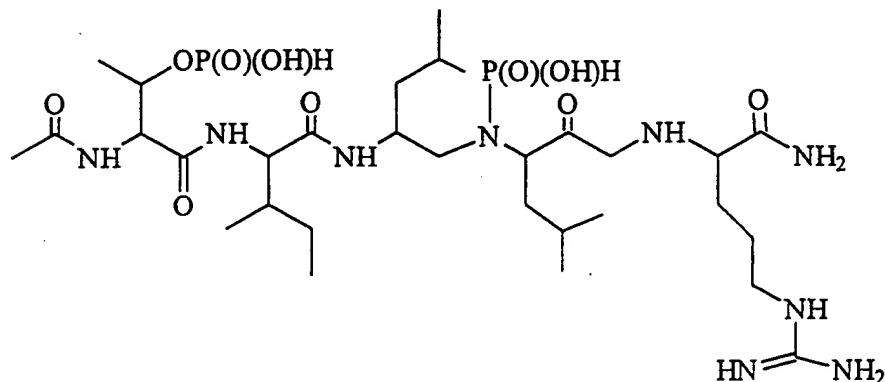
294.



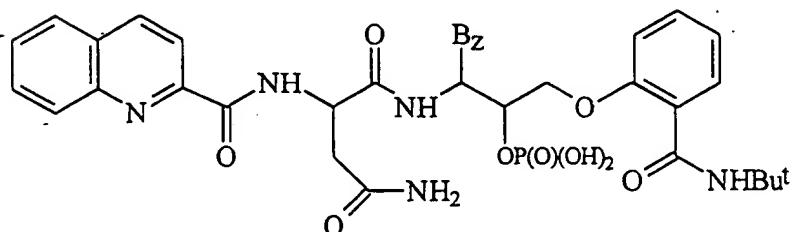
295.



296.

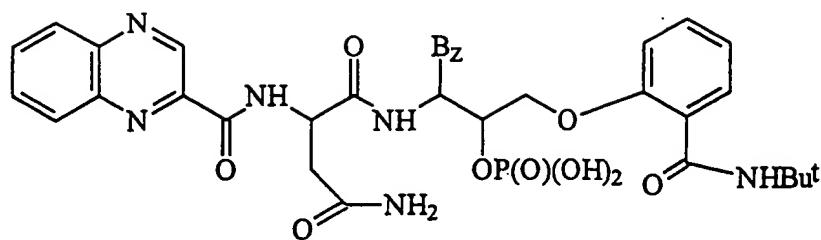


297.

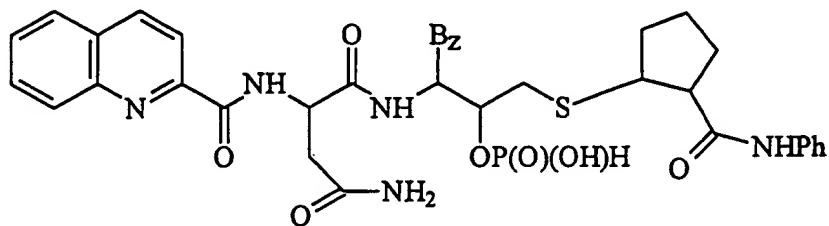


140

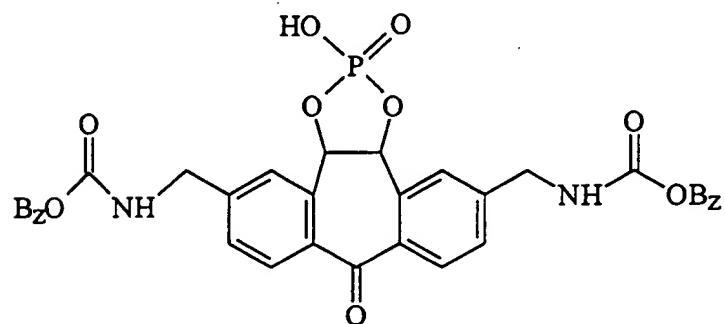
298.



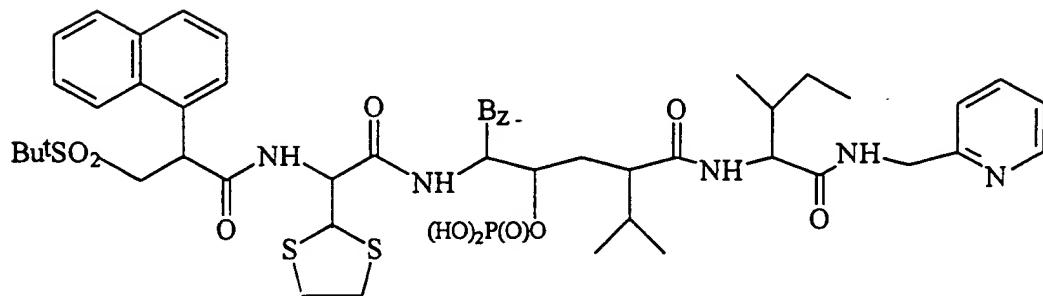
299.



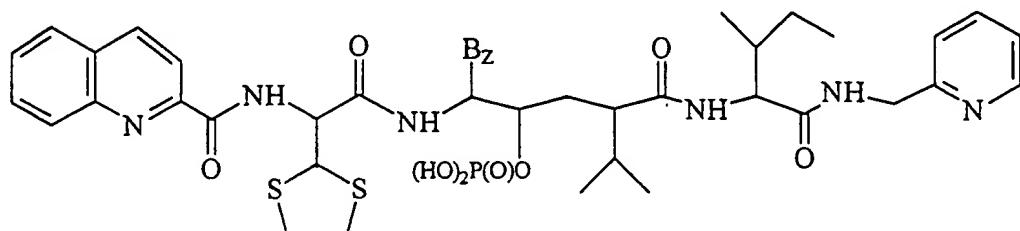
5 300.



301.

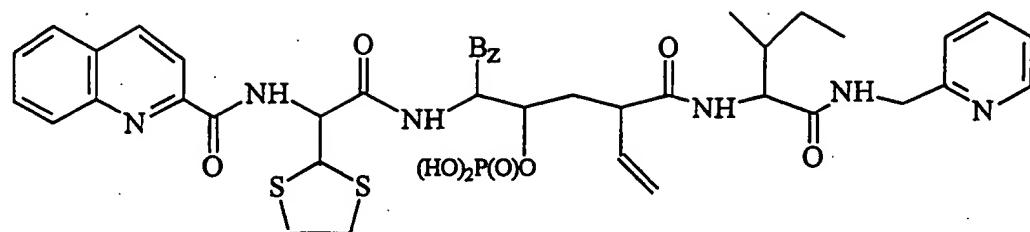


302.

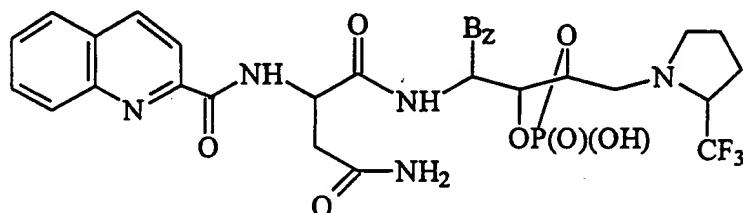


141

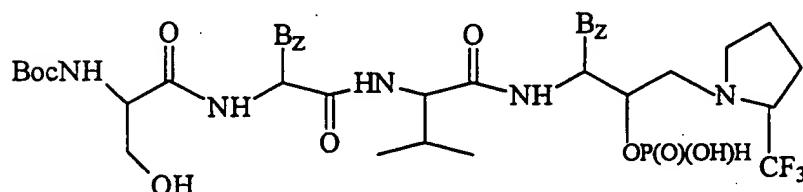
303.



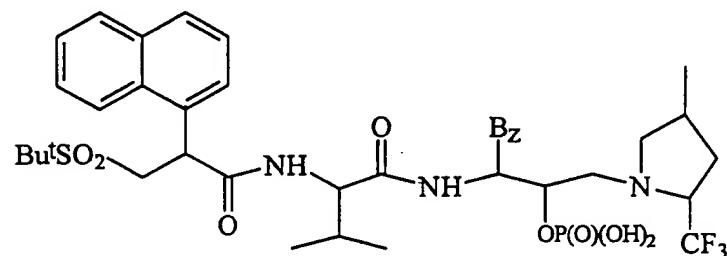
304.



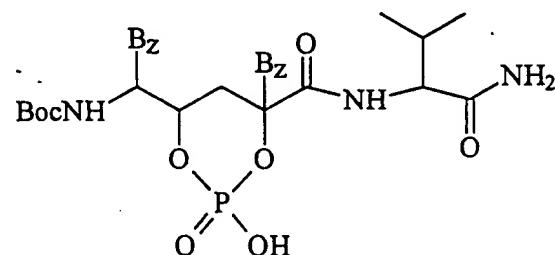
5 305.



306.

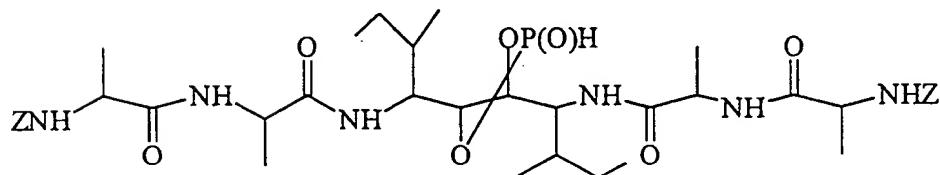


307.



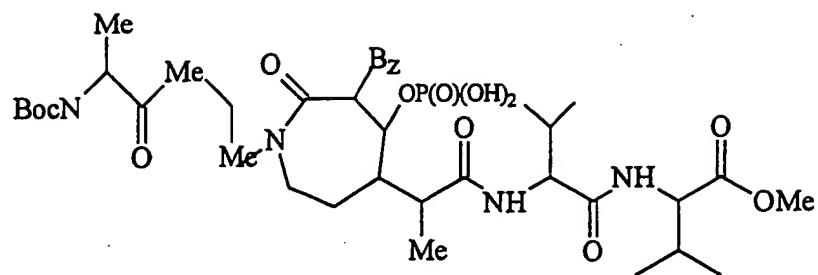
10

308.

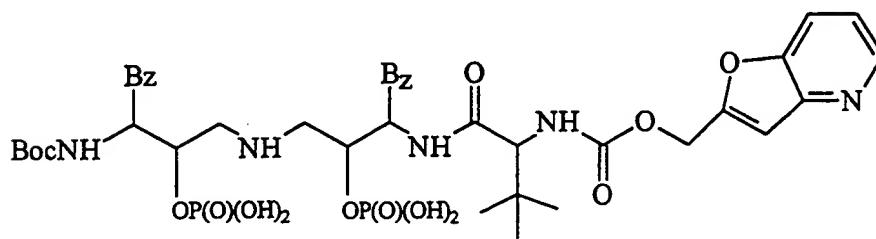


142

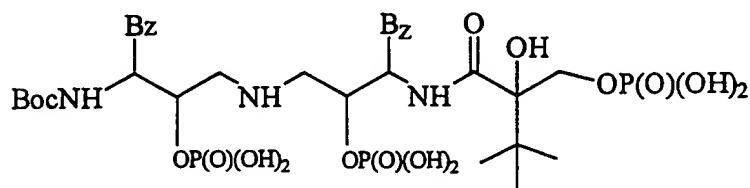
309.



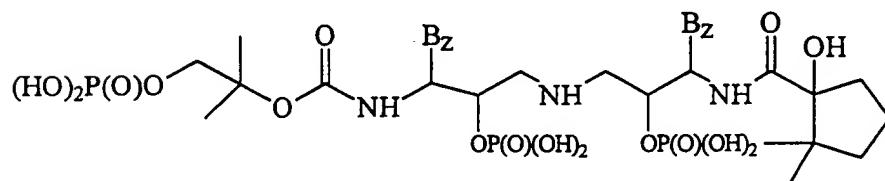
310.



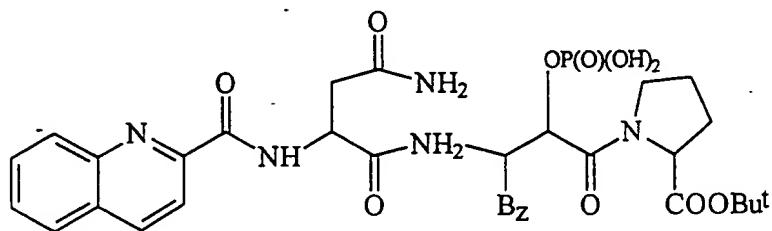
311.



312.

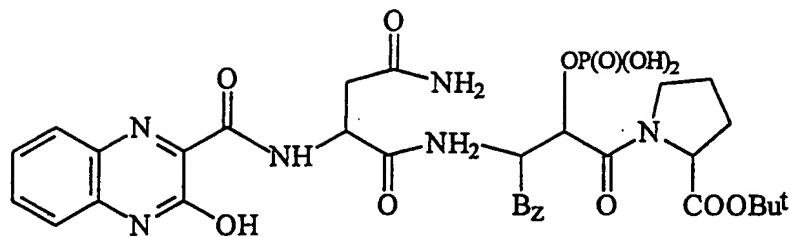


313.

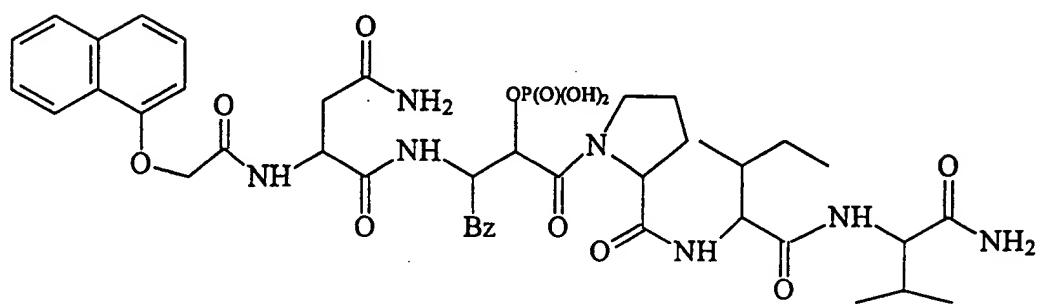


143

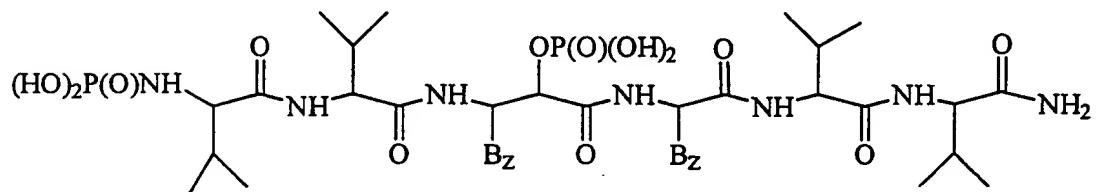
314.



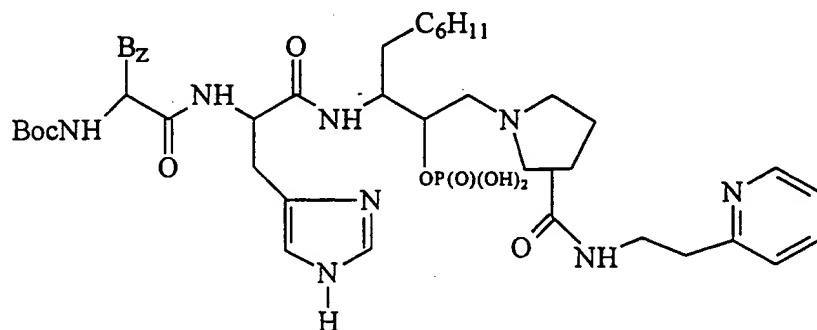
315.



5 316.



317.



CLAIMS

1. A compound of the general formula (I) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof:



5 wherein

W is selected from the group consisting of R_1-X- , R_1-X^*- , $-Y^*$, $-CN$, $-N=CR_5R_5^*$, $-C(R_5)=NR_3$, $-C(R_5)=NOR_3$, $-C(NR_3R_4)=NR_5^{**}$, $-C(D)OR_3$, $-C(D)SR_3$ and $-C(D)NR_3R_4$, wherein

Y^* is as defined below,

10 R_1 , R_3 and R_4 are independently selected from the group consisting of R_6 and a solubilising group Px which is labile *in vivo*, wherein R_6 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen,

15 R_{20} , wherein R_{20} is selected from the group consisting of optionally substituted $(C_1-C_{18})alkyl$,

optionally substituted $(C_2-C_{18})alkenyl$,

optionally substituted $(C_2-C_{18})alkynyl$,

optionally substituted $(C_3-C_{18})cycloalkyl$,

optionally substituted $(C_3-C_{18})cycloalkyl(C_1-C_{18})alkyl$,

20 optionally substituted $(C_3-C_{18})cycloalkyl(C_2-C_{18})alkenyl$,

optionally substituted $(C_3-C_{18})cycloalkyl(C_2-C_{18})alkynyl$,

optionally substituted $(C_6-C_{24})aryl$,

optionally substituted $(C_6-C_{24})aryl(C_1-C_{18})alkyl$,

optionally substituted $(C_6-C_{24})aryl(C_2-C_{18})alkenyl$,

25 optionally substituted $(C_6-C_{24})aryl(C_2-C_{18})alkynyl$,

optionally substituted $(C_1-C_{18})acyl$,

optionally substituted heterocyclic,

optionally substituted heterocyclic $(C_1-C_{18})alkyl$,

optionally substituted heterocyclic $(C_2-C_{18})alkenyl$, and

30 optionally substituted heterocyclic $(C_2-C_{18})alkynyl$

$C(D)OR_{21}$,

$C(D)SR_{21}$,

$C(D)NR_{21}R_{22}$,

$C(NR_{21})R_{22}$,

35 $C(NR_{21})OR_{22}$, and

$C(NR_{21})NR_{22}R_{23}$, wherein R_{21} , R_{22} and R_{23} independently are selected from hydrogen and R_{20} as previously defined, or R_{21} and R_{22} together, or R_{22} and R_{23} together form a

saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein,

or R_3 and R_4 , when present, together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein,

5

D is selected from O and S ,

X is selected from the group consisting of Y , $S(O)$ and $S(O)_2$ wherein Y is as defined below,

10 X^* is selected from the group consisting of NR_{10} , O and S , wherein R_{10} has the meaning of R_6 as previously defined,

R_{1*} is selected from the group consisting of R_1 as previously defined, $P(O)(OR_7)R_8$, $S(O)_zOR_7$ and $S(O)_zNR_7R_8$, wherein z is 1 or 2 and R_7 and R_8 independently have the meaning of R_{20} as previously defined, or R_7 and R_8 together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein,

15

R_5 and R_{5*} are independently selected from the group consisting of H , CF_3 , $C(D)OR_{103}$, $C(D)SR_{103}$ $C(D)NR_{103}R_{104}$ and R_{20} as previously defined, wherein D is as previously defined, and wherein R_{103} and R_{104} have the meaning of R_6 as previously defined, or R_{103} and R_{104} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein, and

20

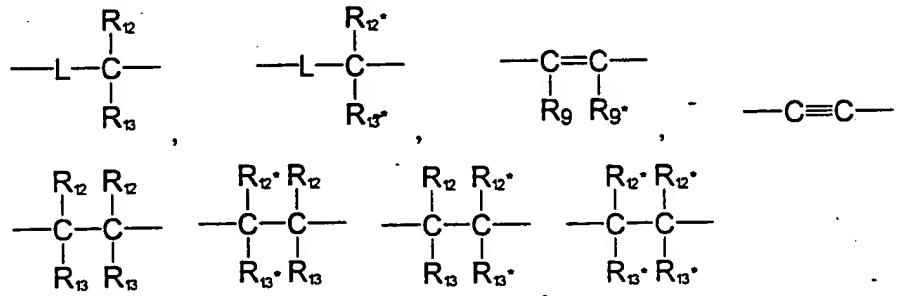
R_{5**} is selected from hydrogen and R_{20} as previously defined;

n is 0-6;

m is 0-6 and $n+m \geq 1$;

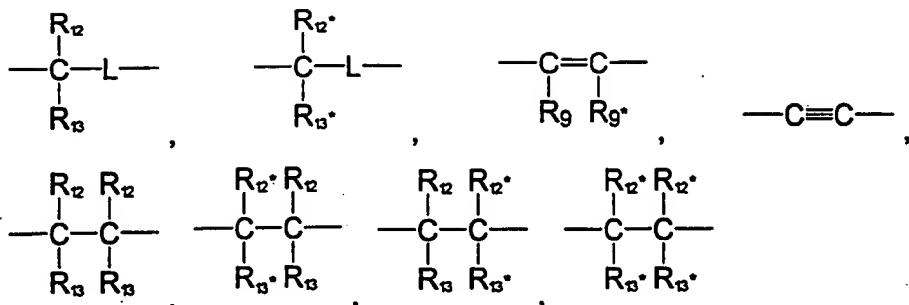
25

A at each occurrence is independently selected from the group consisting of



and a residue of a naturally occurring or synthetic amino acid;

A^* at each occurrence is independently selected from the group consisting of



and a residue of a naturally occurring or synthetic amino acid; wherein

5 R_{12}^* , R_{13}^* , R_9 and R_{9^*} are independently selected from the group consisting

of F, Cl, Br, I and R_5 as previously defined,

10 R_{11} has the meaning of R_1 as previously defined,

R_{12} has the meaning of R_6 as previously defined,

15 R_{13} is selected from the group consisting of

F, Cl, Br, I, R_6 as previously defined, and R_{200} , wherein R_{200} is selected from the group consisting of

CN,

NCO,

NCS,

OCN,

15 SCN,

N_3 ,

OR_{60} ,

SR_{60} ,

$NR_{60}R_{61}$,

20 $D_1C(D_2)R_{60}$,

$D_1C(D_2)D_3R_{60}$,

$D_1C(D_2)NR_{60}R_{61}$,

$NR_{60}C(D_1)R_{61}$,

$NR_{60}C(D_1)D_2R_{61}$,

25 $NR_{60}C(D_1)NR_{61}R_{62}$,

$NR_{60}OR_{61}$,

amidino,

guanidino,

$S(O)R_{60}$,

30 $S(O)_2D_1R_{60}$,

$S(O)NR_{60}R_{61}$,

$S(O)_2NR_{60}R_{61}$,

$D_1S(O)R_{60}$,

$D_1S(O)_2OR_{60}$,

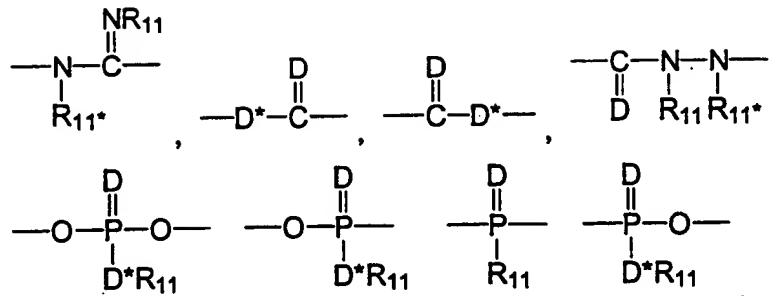
$D_1S(O)NR_{60}R_{61}$,
 $D_1S(O)_2NR_{60}R_{61}$,
 $P(D_1)(D_2R_{60})R_{61}$,
 $P(D_1)(D_2R_{60})D_3R_{61}$,
5 $P(D_1)(D_2R_{60})NR_{61}R_{62}$,
 $P(D_1)R_{60}R_{61}$,
 $D_1P(D_2)(D_3R_{60})R_{61}$,
 $D_1P(D_2)(D_3R_{60})D_4R_{61}$,
10 $D_1P(D_2)(D_3R_{60})NR_{61}R_{62}$,
 $D_1P(D_2)R_{60}R_{61}$,
 $NR_{60}NR_{61}R_{62}$ and
15 $ONR_{60}R_{61}$, wherein D_1 , D_2 , D_3 and D_4 independently have the
 meaning of D as previously defined, and R_{60} , R_{61} and R_{62}
 independently have the meaning of R_6 as previously defined
15 or any two or more of R_{60} , R_{61} and R_{62} form part of a
 saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system
 as defined herein,
or R_{12} and R_{13} together are selected from the group consisting of $=O$, $=S$,
 $=C\begin{array}{c} R_{60} \\ \diagup \\ \diagdown \\ R_{61} \end{array}$,
 $=NOR_{60}$, $=NR_{60}$, $-OQO-$, $-SQS-$ and $-SQO-$, wherein Q
20 is optionally substituted (C_1-C_{12})alkylidene as defined herein and R_{60} is
 as previously defined, and
L is selected from the group consisting of a bond,

$$\begin{array}{c} D \\ \parallel \\ -C-N- \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} D \\ \parallel \\ -N-C- \end{array} \quad , \quad \begin{array}{c} -O- \\ | \\ -S- \end{array} \quad , \quad \begin{array}{c} -S(O)z- \\ | \\ -S(O)z- \end{array} \quad ,$$

$$\begin{array}{c} -N- \\ | \\ -S(O)z-N- \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} -N-S(O)z- \\ | \\ R_{11} \end{array} \quad , \quad \begin{array}{c} -N-S(O)z-N- \\ | \\ R_{11} \end{array} \quad ,$$

$$\begin{array}{c} D \\ \parallel \\ -N-C-N- \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} D \\ \parallel \\ -S(O)z-N-C- \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} D \\ \parallel \\ -S(O)z-N-C-N- \\ | \\ R_{11} \end{array} \quad ,$$

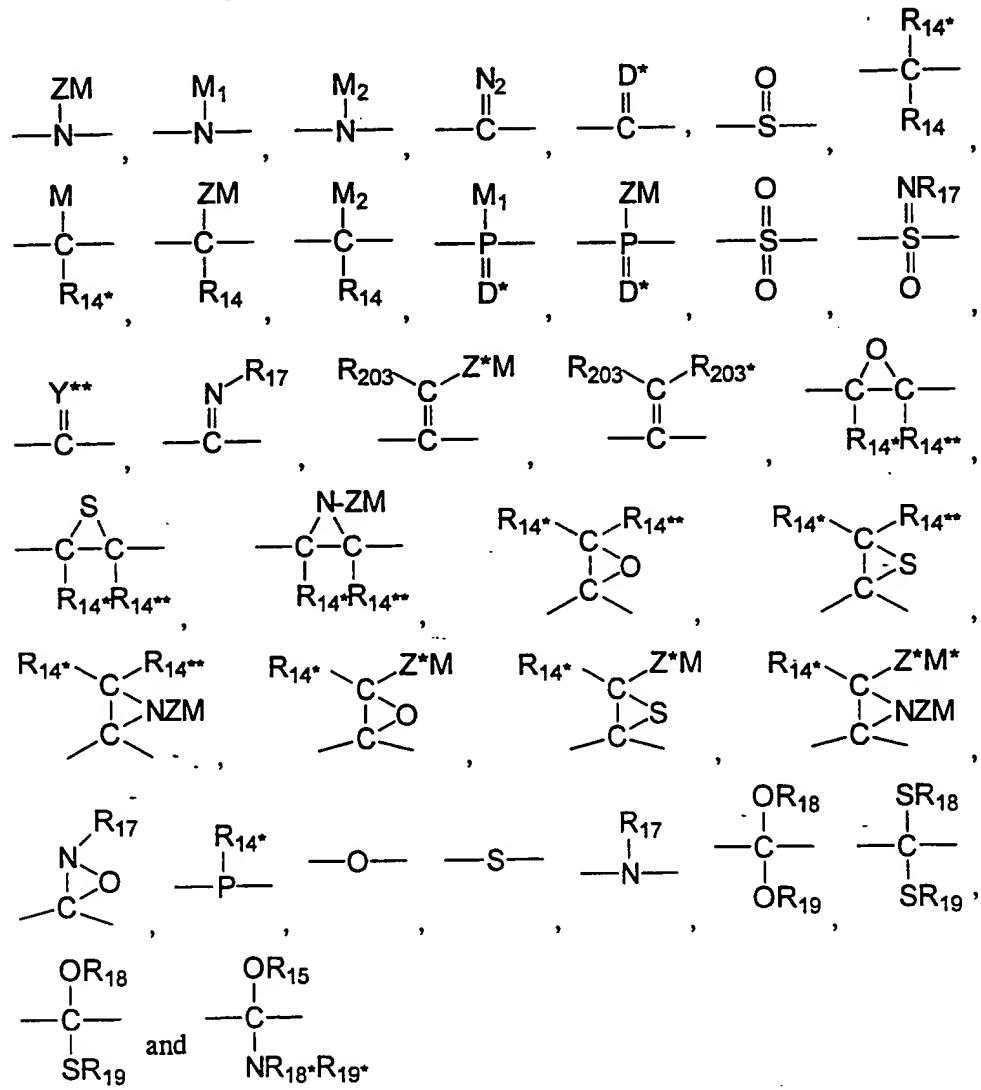
$$\begin{array}{c} D \\ \parallel \\ -D^*-C-N- \\ | \\ R_{11} \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} D \\ \parallel \\ -N-C-D^*- \\ | \\ R_{11} \end{array} \quad , \quad \begin{array}{c} R_{13}^{**} \\ | \\ C=N- \end{array} \quad , \quad \begin{array}{c} NR_{11} \\ | \\ -C-N- \\ | \\ R_{11}^* \end{array} \quad ,$$
25



-CH₂- and -CH₂-CH₂-, wherein R₁₁ and D are as previously defined, R_{11*} and D* have the meaning of R₁₁ and D respectively, and z is 1 or 2;

5 R_{13}^{**} is F, Cl, Br, OR₆₀ or NR₆₀R₆₀ wherein R₆₀ and R₆₁ are as previously defined,

B is selected from the group consisting of



15 wherein R_{203} and R_{203*} independently have the meaning of R_6 as previously
defined,

R_{14*} and R_{14**} are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen,

R_{20} as previously defined,

CF_3 ,

5 $C(D^*)OR_{40}$,

$C(D^*)SR_{40}$ and

$C(D^*)NR_{40}R_{41}$, wherein R_{40} and R_{41} independently have the meaning of R_{21} and R_{22} as previously defined or R_{40} and R_{41} form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein,

10 R_{14} is selected from the group consisting of F, Cl, Br, I, R_{14*} as previously defined and R_{200} as previously defined,

R_{17} and R_{17*} independently have the meaning of R_6 as previously defined,

D^* has the meaning of D as previously defined,

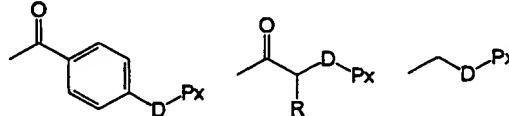
15 Z is a saturated or unsaturated (C_2 - C_4)alkylidene radical which is optionally substituted with one or more groups selected from F, Cl, Br, I and R_{14*} as previously defined,

Z^* is a saturated or unsaturated (C_1 - C_3)alkylidene radical which is optionally substituted with one or more groups selected from F, Cl, Br, I and R_{14*} as previously defined,

20 M_1 is selected from the group consisting of OR_{15} , SR_{15} and $NR_{15}R_{17}$, wherein R_{15} is selected from the group consisting of:

Px as previously defined,

R_6 as previously defined,



25 25, wherein Px and D are as previously defined and R is H or C_1 - C_4 alkyl, and a glycosyl radical which is derived from a synthetic or naturally occurring aldose, ketose, deoxyaldose, deoxyketose, aminoaldose, aminoketose or an oligosaccharide thereof, and

30 R_{17} is as previously defined, or

R_{15} and R_{17} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein,

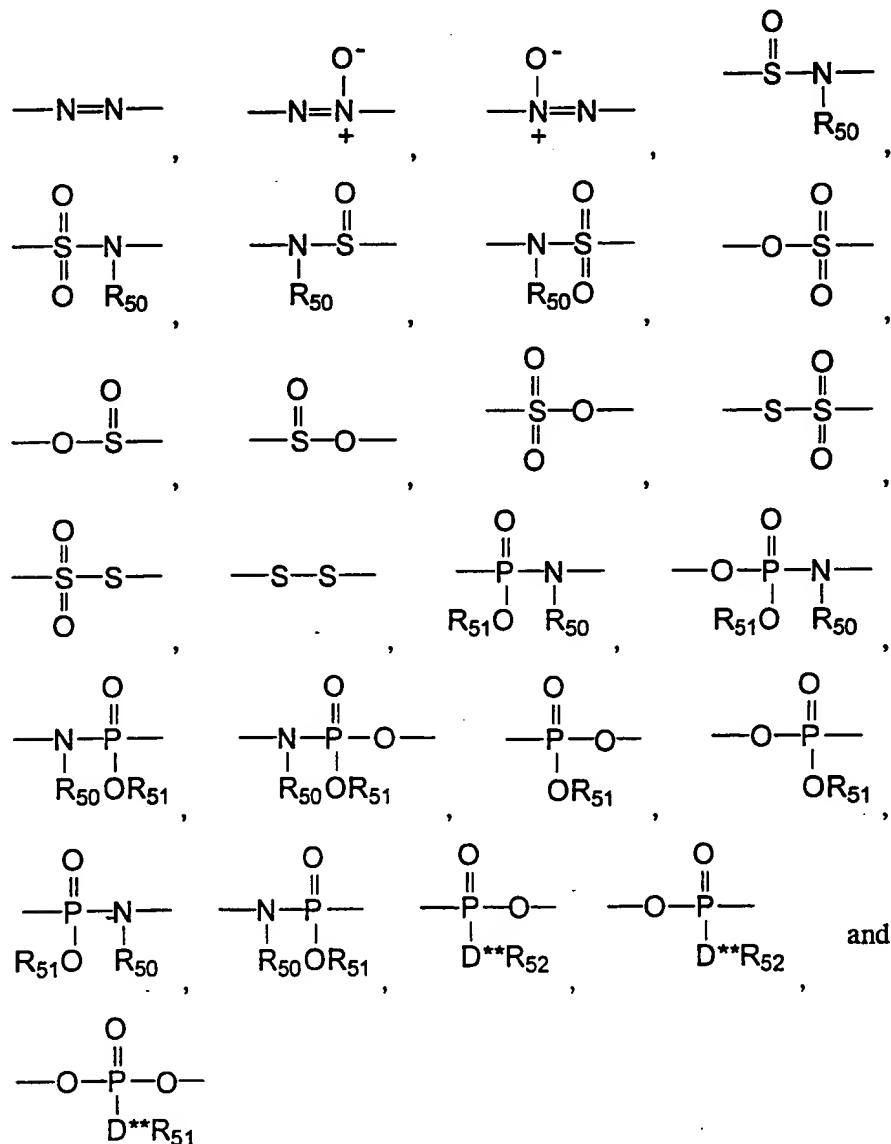
M and M^* are independently selected from the group consisting of M_1 as previously defined, OCN , SCN , YR_2 , Y^* and $N=CR_{30}R_{31}$, wherein Y,

35 Y^* and R_2 are as defined below, and R_{30} and R_{31} independently have the meaning of R_{20} as previously defined,

M_2 is selected from the group consisting of R_{14*} as previously defined, $-CR_{30*}=Y^{**}$ and $-CR_{30*}=NR_{17*}$, where Y^{**} is as defined below, R_{30*} has the meaning of R_{20} as previously defined, and R_{17*} is as previously defined,

5 R₁₈ and R₁₉ independently have the meaning of R₂₀ as previously defined or
R₁₈ and R₁₉ together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein, and
R_{18*} and R_{19*} together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein;

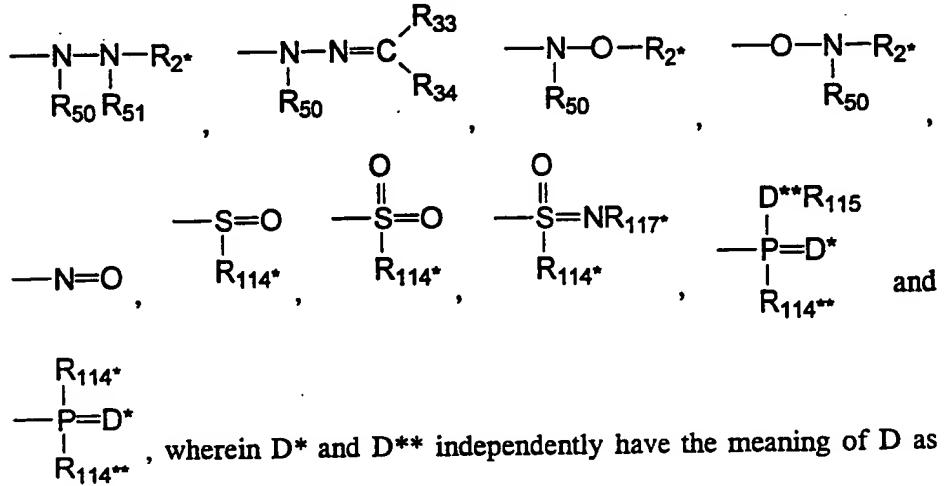
10 V is selected from the group consisting of YR_2 , Y^* and $C(R_{30}) = Y^{**}$, wherein
Y is absent or is selected from the group consisting of:



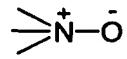
wherein D^{**} is selected from the group consisting of a bond, O, S and NR_{50} , R_{50} has the meaning of R_6 as previously defined, R_{51} has

the meaning of R_{15} as previously defined and R_{52} has the meaning of R_{20} as previously defined, or R_{50} and R_{51} , when present, together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein, and

5 R_2 has the meaning of R_6 as previously defined,
 Y^* is selected from the group consisting of



10 R_2 has the meaning of R_6 as previously defined;
 R_{114}^* , R_{114}^{**} , R_{115} and R_{117}^* have the meaning of R_{14}^* , R_{14}^{**} , R_{15} and R_{17}^* respectively, as previously defined; R_{50} and R_{51} are as previously defined or R_{50} and R_{51} together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein; R_2^* is selected from the group consisting of R_2 as previously defined, P_x as previously defined, $S(O)_zOR_{120}$ and $S(O)_zNR_{120}R_{121}$, wherein z is 1 or 2; R_{33} and R_{34} are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and R_{20} as previously defined, or R_{33} and R_{34} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein, and R_{120} and R_{121} independently have the meaning of R_{20} as previously defined, or R_{120} and R_{121} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein,
 R_{30} is as previously defined, and
 Y^{**} is selected from $=N-NR_{115}R_{117}$ and $=N-OR_{115}$, wherein R_{115} and R_{117} have the meaning of R_{15} and R_6 respectively, as previously defined, or
 R_{115} and R_{117} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein,
and wherein any group selected from R_1 , R_1^* , R_2 , R_2^* , R_9 , R_{11} , R_{12} , R_{13} , R_{50} and R_{51} may, together with any other group selected from R_1 , R_1^* , R_2 , R_2^* , R_9^* , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_{12} , R_{13} , R_{50} and R_{51} form one or more saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system(s) as defined herein,



and wherein any tertiary amino nitrogen atom may be replaced by the group , and, wherein any hydroxyl, mercapto or amino group may be protected by a protecting group which is labile *in vivo*.

2. A compound according to claim 1, of the general formula (I') or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof:



wherein

W' is selected from the group consisting of R₁-X-, R'₁-X*-, -Y'*-, -CN, -N=CR₅R₅*, -C(R₅)=NR₃, -C(R₅)=NOR₃, -C(D)OR₃, -C(D)SR₃ and -C(D)NR₃R₄, wherein

10

Y'* is as defined below,

R₁, R₃ and R₄ are independently selected from the group consisting of R₆ and a solubilising group Px which is labile *in vivo*, wherein R₆ is selected from the group consisting of

15

hydrogen,

R₂₀, wherein R₂₀ is selected from the group consisting of

optionally substituted (C₁-C₁₈)alkyl,

optionally substituted (C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl,

optionally substituted (C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl,

20

optionally substituted (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl,

optionally substituted (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl,

optionally substituted (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl(C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl,

optionally substituted (C₃-C₁₈)cycloalkyl(C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl,

optionally substituted (C₆-C₂₄)aryl,

25

optionally substituted (C₆-C₂₄)aryl(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl,

optionally substituted (C₆-C₂₄)aryl(C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl,

optionally substituted (C₆-C₂₄)aryl(C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl,

optionally substituted (C₁-C₁₈)acyl,

optionally substituted heterocyclic,

30

optionally substituted heterocyclic(C₁-C₁₈)alkyl,

optionally substituted heterocyclic(C₂-C₁₈)alkenyl, and

optionally substituted heterocyclic(C₂-C₁₈)alkynyl

C(D)OR₂₁,

C(D)SR₂₁, and

35

C(D)NR₂₁R₂₂, wherein R₂₁ and R₂₂ independently are selected

from hydrogen and R₂₀ as previously defined, or R₂₁ and R₂₂ together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic

or fused ring system as defined herein,

or R_3 and R_4 , when present, together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein,

D is selected from O and S,

5 X is selected from the group consisting of Y' , $S(O)$ and $S(O)_2$ wherein Y' is as defined below,

X^* is selected from the group consisting of NR_{10} , O and S, wherein R_{10} has the meaning of R_6 as previously defined,

10 R'_{1*} is selected from the group consisting of R_1 as previously defined, $S(O)_zOR_7$ and $S(O)_zNR_7R_8$, wherein z is 1 or 2 and R_7 and R_8 independently have the meaning of R_{20} as previously defined, or R_7 and R_8 together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein,

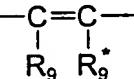
15 R_5 and R_{5*} are independently selected from the group consisting of H, CF_3 , $C(D)OR_{103}$, $C(D)SR_{103}$ $C(D)NR_{103}R_{104}$ and R_{20} as previously defined, wherein D is as previously defined, and wherein R_{103} and R_{104} have the meaning of R_6 as previously defined, or R_{103} and R_{104} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein;

20 n' is 0-8;

m' is 0-8 and $n'+m' \geq 1$;

A' and A'^* are independently at each occurrence selected from the group consisting of O, S, $S(O)$, $S(O)_2$, NR_{11} , $CR_{12}R_{13}$ and $CR_{12*}R_{13*}$, or two consecutive

groups $A'-A'$ or $A'^*-A'^*$ are a structural unit selected from



$\text{---C}=\text{C} \text{---}$, wherein

25 and

R_{12*} , R_{13*} , R_9 and R_{9*} are independently selected from the group consisting of F, Cl, Br, I and R_5 as previously defined,

R_{11} has the meaning of R_1 as previously defined,

R_{12} has the meaning of R_6 as previously defined,

30 R_{13} is selected from the group consisting of

F, Cl, Br, I, R_6 as previously defined, and R_{200} , wherein R_{200} is selected from the group consisting of

CN,

NCO,

NCS,

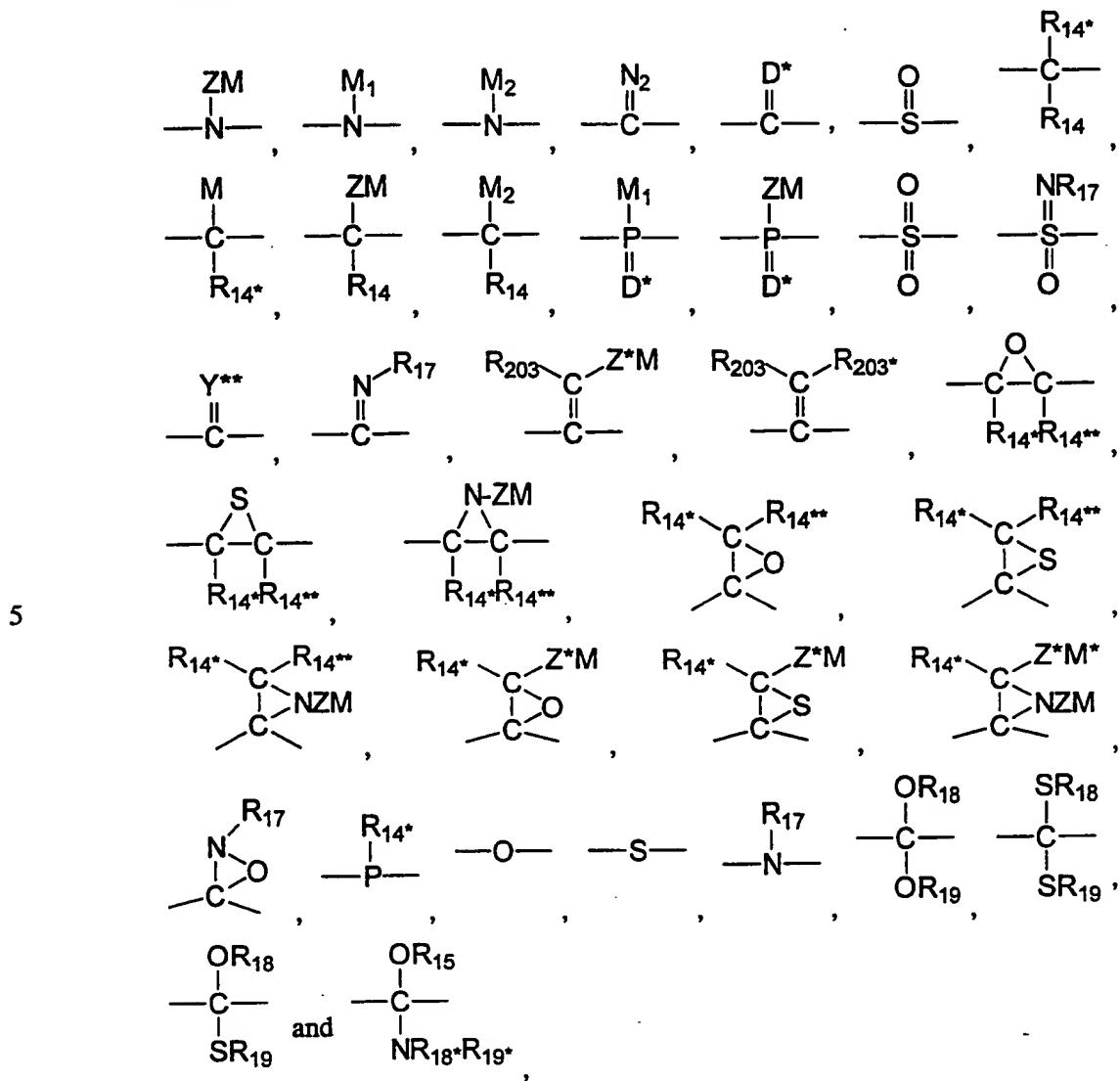
OCN,

SCN,

35

N₃,
 OR₆₀,
 SR₆₀,
 NR₆₀R₆₁,
 5 D₁C(D₂)R₆₀,
 D₁C(D₂)D₃R₆₀,
 D₁C(D₂)NR₆₀R₆₁,
 NR₆₀C(D₁)R₆₁,
 NR₆₀C(D₁)D₂R₆₁,
 10 NR₆₀C(D₁)NR₆₁R₆₂,
 NR₆₀OR₆₁,
 amidino,
 guanidino,
 S(O)R₆₀,
 15 S(O)₂D₁R₆₀,
 S(O)NR₆₀R₆₁,
 S(O)₂NR₆₀R₆₁,
 D₁S(O)R₆₀,
 D₁S(O)₂OR₆₀,
 20 D₁S(O)NR₆₀R₆₁,
 D₁S(O)₂NR₆₀R₆₁,
 P(D₁)(D₂R₆₀)R₆₁,
 P(D₁)(D₂R₆₀)D₃R₆₁,
 P(D₁)(D₂R₆₀)NR₆₁R₆₂,
 25 P(D₁)R₆₀R₆₁,
 D₁P(D₂)(D₃R₆₀)R₆₁,
 D₁P(D₂)(D₃R₆₀)D₄R₆₁,
 D₁P(D₂)(D₃R₆₀)NR₆₁R₆₂,
 D₁P(D₂)R₆₀R₆₁,
 30 NR₆₀NR₆₁R₆₂ and
 ONR₆₀R₆₁, wherein D₁, D₂, D₃ and D₄ independently have the
 meaning of D as previously defined, and R₆₀, R₆₁ and R₆₂
 independently have the meaning of R₆ as previously defined
 or any two or more of R₆₀, R₆₁ and R₆₂ form part of a
 saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system
 as defined herein,
 35 or R₁₂ and R₁₃ together are selected from the group consisting of =O, =S,
 =NOR₆₀, =NR₆₀, -OQO-, -SQS- and -SQQ-, wherein Q is optionally
 substituted (C₁-C₁₂)alkylidene as defined herein and R₆₀ is as previously
 defined;
 40

B' is selected from the group consisting of



R₁₄ is selected from the group consisting of F, Cl, Br, I, R_{14*} as previously defined and R₂₀₀ as previously defined,

R₁₇ and R_{17*} independently have the meaning of R₆ as previously defined, D* has the meaning of D as previously defined,

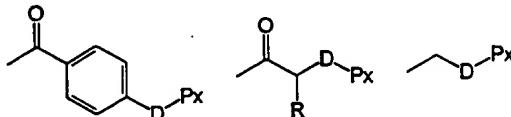
5 Z is a saturated or unsaturated (C₂-C₄)alkylidene radical which is optionally substituted with one or more groups selected from F, Cl, Br, I and R_{14*} as previously defined,

Z* is a saturated or unsaturated (C₁-C₃)alkylidene radical which is optionally substituted with one or more groups selected from F, Cl, Br, I and R_{14*} as previously defined,

10 M₁ is selected from the group consisting of OR₁₅, SR₁₅ and NR₁₅R₁₇, wherein R₁₅ is selected from the group consisting of:

Px as previously defined,

R₆ as previously defined,



15 , , , wherein Px and D are as previously defined and R is H or C₁-C₄ alkyl, and a glycosyl radical which is derived from a synthetic or naturally occurring aldose, ketose, deoxyaldose, deoxyketose, aminoaldose, aminoketose or an oligosaccharide thereof, and

20 R₁₇ is as previously defined, or

R₁₅ and R₁₇ together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein,

M and M* are independently selected from the group consisting of M₁ as previously defined, OCN, SCN, Y'R₂, Y'* and N=CR₃₀R₃₁, wherein Y', Y'* and R₂ are as defined below, and R₃₀ and R₃₁ independently have the meaning of R₂₀ as previously defined,

25 M₂ is selected from the group consisting of R_{14*} as previously defined, -CR_{30*}=Y** and -CR_{30*}=NR_{17*}, where Y** is as defined below, R_{30*} has the meaning of R₂₀ as previously defined, and R_{17*} is as previously defined,

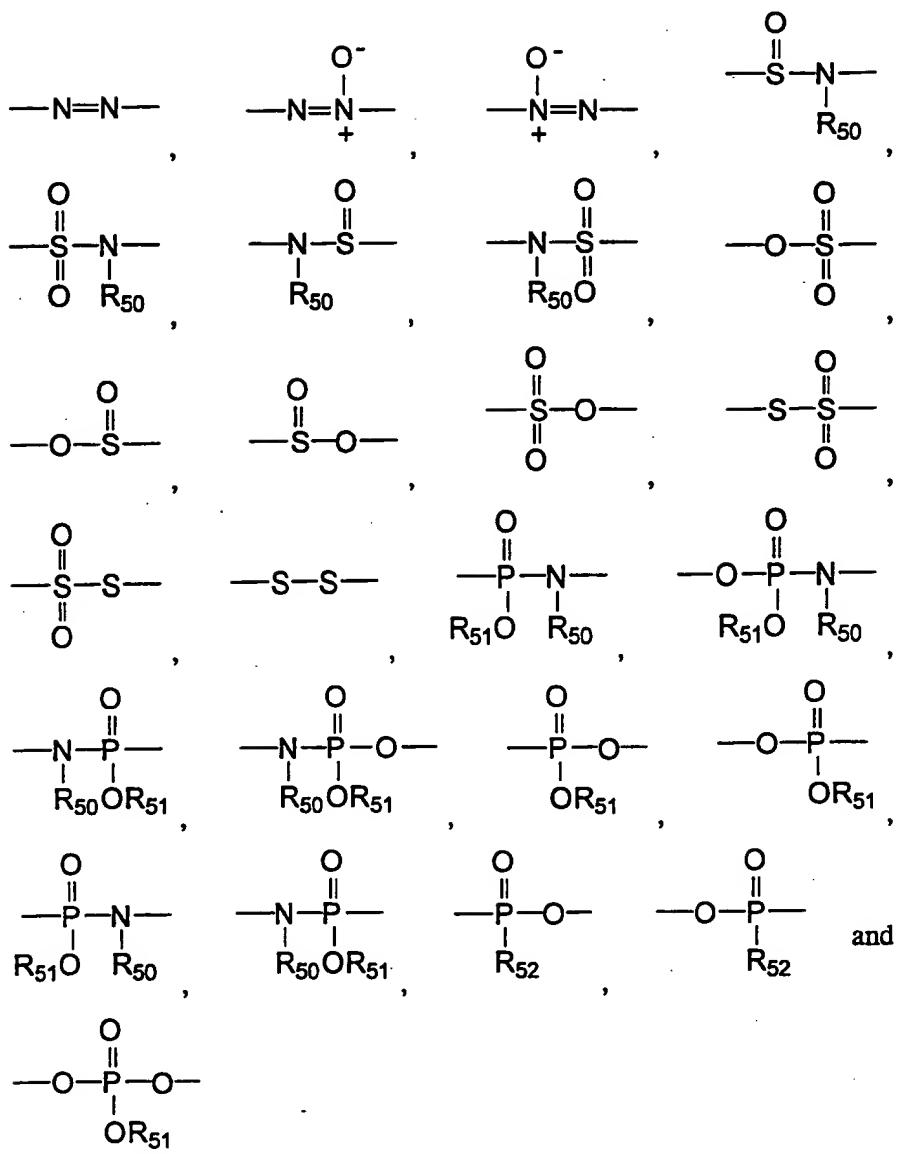
30 R₁₈ and R₁₉ independently have the meaning of R₂₀ as previously defined or R₁₈ and R₁₉ together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein, and

R_{18*} and R_{19*} together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein;

35 V' is selected from the group consisting of Y'R₂, Y'* and C(R₃₀)=Y**, wherein Y' is selected from the group consisting of

5

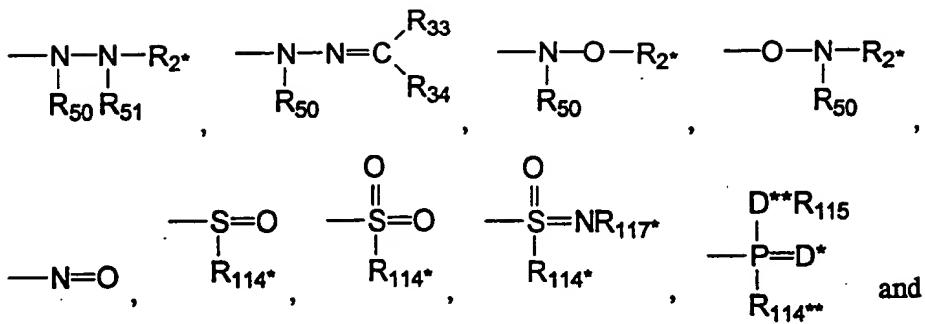
10



wherein R_{50} has the meaning of R_6 as previously defined, R_{51} has the meaning of R_{15} as previously defined and R_{52} has the meaning of R_{20} as previously defined, or R_{50} and R_{51} together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein, and

R_2 has the meaning of R_6 as previously defined,
 Y^{**} is selected from the group consisting of

158



R_{114^*}
 $P=D^*$
 $R_{114^{**}}$, wherein D^* and D^{**} independently have the meaning of D as

previously defined; R_{114*} , R_{114**} , R_{115} and R_{117*} have the meaning of R_{14*} , R_{14**} , R_{15} and R_{17*} respectively, as previously defined; R_{50} and R_{51} are as previously defined or R_{50} and R_{51} together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein; R_{2*} is selected from the group consisting of R_2 as previously defined, $S(O)_zOR_{120}$ and $S(O)_zNR_{120}R_{121}$, wherein z is 1 or 2; R_{33} and R_{34} are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and R_{20} as previously defined, or R_{33} and R_{34} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein, and R_{120} and R_{121} independently have the meaning of R_{20} as previously defined, or R_{120} and R_{121} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein,

R_{30} is as previously defined, and

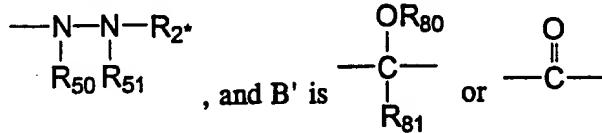
Y** is selected from =N-NR₁₁₅R₁₁₇ and =N-OR₁₁₅, wherein R₁₁₅ and R₁₁₇ have the meaning of R₁₅ and R₆ respectively, as previously defined, or R₁₁₅ and R₁₁₇ together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein,

and wherein any group selected from R_1 , R'_1* , R_2 , R_2* , R_9 , R_{11} , R_{12} , R_{50} and R_{51} may, together with any other group selected from R_1 , R'_1* , R_2 , R_2* , R_9* , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_{12} , R_{50} and R_{51} form one or more saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system(s) as defined herein,

25 and wherein any tertiary amino nitrogen atom may be replaced by the group
 and, where the sequence $W'-(A')_n\cdot B'-(A'')_m\cdot V'$ contains a grouping of three
 heteroatoms together, one atom of those three heteroatoms is oxidised sulfur in the
 form of $S(O)$ or $S(O)_2$, or oxidised phosphorus in the form of $P(O)$, or the three
 heteroatoms comprise two nitrogen atoms which form part of a heterocycle,

provided that the sequence $W'-(A')_n-B'-(A'')_m-V'$ does not contain two oxygen atoms together or three sulfur atoms together;

and wherein (a) when W' is R'_1*X^* wherein X^* is NR_{10} , and V' is Y'^* wherein Y'^* is



5 wherein R_{81} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, $-R_{100}H$, $-R_{100}C(O)OR_{101}$, $-R_{100}C(O)NR_{101}R_{102}$, $-R_{100}NR_{102}C(O)R_{100^*}$ and $-R_{100}C(O)R_{100^*}$,

10 wherein R_{101} and R_{102} are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, optionally substituted (C_1-C_{18})alkyl, optionally substituted (C_3-C_{18})cycloalkyl, optionally substituted (C_3-C_{18})cycloalkyl-(C_1-C_{18})alkyl, optionally substituted (C_6-C_{24})aryl, optionally substituted (C_7-C_{25})aralkyl, optionally substituted (C_2-C_{18})alkenyl, optionally substituted (C_8-C_{26})aralkenyl, optionally substituted (C_2-C_{18})-alkynyl, optionally substituted (C_8-C_{26})-aralkynyl and optionally substituted heterocyclic,

15 and wherein R_{100} and R_{100^*} are independently divalent radicals derived from a member selected from the group consisting of (C_1-C_{18})alkyl, (C_3-C_{18})cycloalkyl, (C_3-C_{18})cycloalkyl(C_1-C_{18})alkyl, (C_6-C_{24})aryl, (C_7-C_{25})aralkyl, (C_2-C_{18})alkenyl, (C_8-C_{26})aralkenyl, (C_2-C_{18})-alkynyl, (C_8-C_{26})aralkynyl and heterocyclic, any of which may be optionally substituted as defined herein,

20 and R_{80} is selected from the group consisting of R_{81} as previously defined and a solubilising and/or protecting group Px which is labile *in vivo*,

then at least one of the following applies:

25 (i) R_{50} is a group R_{53} , wherein R_{53} is selected from the group consisting of $C(D^*)OR_{21^*}$, $C(D^*)NR_{21^*}R_{22^*}$, $C(D^*)SR_{21^*}$, $C(D^*)R_{55}$, CF_3 , R_{55} and a solubilising group Px which is labile *in vivo*, wherein

D^* has the meaning of D as previously defined,

30 R_{21^*} and R_{22^*} have the meaning of R_{21} and R_{22} respectively, as previously defined,

and wherein R_{55} is selected from the group consisting of optionally substituted (C_1-C_{18})alkyl(C_6-C_{24})aryl, optionally substituted (C_2-C_{18})alkenyl(C_6-C_{24})aryl, optionally substituted (C_2-C_{18})-alkynyl(C_6-C_{24})aryl, optionally substituted (C_3-C_{18})cycloalkyl-(C_2-C_{18})alkenyl, optionally substituted (C_3-C_{18})cycloalkyl(C_2-C_{18})alkynyl, optionally substituted (C_3-C_{18})cycloalkyl-(C_6-C_{24})aryl, optionally substituted acyl(C_6-C_{24})aryl, optionally

substituted heterocyclic(C_1 - C_{18})alkyl, optionally substituted heterocyclic(C_2 - C_{18})alkenyl, optionally substituted heterocyclic(C_2 - C_{18})alkynyl and optionally substituted heterocyclic(C_2 - C_{18})-(C_6 - C_{24})aryl,

5 and n' , m' , R'_{1*} , R_{10} , A' , A'^* , R_{51} and R_{2*} are as previously defined,

(ii) one of R_{2*} and R_{51} is a group R_{54} , wherein R_{54} is selected from the group consisting of R_{55*} , $C(D^*)NR_{21*}R_{22*}$, $C(D^*)OR_{55*}$, $C(D^*)R_{55*}$, $C(D^*)SR_{21*}$, CF_3 , $S(O)_zOR_{120}$, $S(O)_zNR_{120}R_{121}$, and a solubilising group Px which is labile *in vivo*, wherein z is 1 or 2 and R_{120} and R_{121}

10 are as previously defined or R_{120} and R_{121} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein, and wherein R_{21*} and R_{22*} have the meaning of R_{21} and R_{22} respectively, as previously defined, and R_{55*} has the meaning of R_{55} , as previously defined,

15 and n' , m' , R'_{1*} , R_{10} , A' , A'^* , R_{50} and the other of R_{2*} and R_{51} are as previously defined,

(iii) at least one A' or A'^* is selected from the group consisting of $CR_{112}R_{13}$, $CR_{12}R_{113}$, $CR_{112}R_{13*}$ and $CR_{12*}R_{113}$, wherein R_{112} and R_{113} are independently selected from the group consisting of R_{55} as previously defined, $C(D)OR_{21*}$, $C(D)SR_{21*}$, $C(D)NR_{21*}R_{22*}$, F , Cl , Br and I , wherein R_{21*} and R_{22*} have the meaning of R_{21} and R_{22} respectively, as previously defined,

20 and D , n' , m' , R'_{1*} , R_{2*} , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_{12} , R_{12*} , R_{13} , R_{13*} , R_{50} and R_{51} are as previously defined,

25 (iv) R'_{1*} is selected from the group consisting of optionally substituted (C_2 - C_{18})alkenyl, optionally substituted (C_2 - C_{18})alkynyl, optionally substituted (C_3 - C_{18})cycloalkyl(C_2 - C_{18})alkenyl, optionally substituted (C_3 - C_{18})cycloalkyl(C_2 - C_{18})alkynyl, optionally substituted (C_6 - C_{24})aryl- $(C_2$ - C_{18})alkenyl, optionally substituted (C_6 - C_{24})aryl(C_2 - C_{18})alkynyl, optionally substituted (C_2 - C_{18})acyl, wherein the optional substituent is other than amino, optionally substituted (C_6 - C_{24})aryl(C_2 - C_{18})acyl, optionally substituted heterocyclic(C_1 - C_{18})alkyl, optionally substituted heterocyclic(C_2 - C_{18})alkenyl, optionally substituted heterocyclic(C_2 - C_{18})alkynyl, $C(O)OR_{90}$, $C(O)NR_{91}R_{92}$, CF_3 , $S(O)_zOR_{120}$, $S(O)_zNR_{120}R_{121}$ and a solubilising group Px which is labile *in vivo*,

30 wherein z is 1 or 2 and R_{120} and R_{121} are as previously defined, wherein R_{90} is selected from the group consisting of (C_3 - C_{18})cycloalkyl, (C_3 - C_{18})cycloalkyl(C_1 - C_{18})alkyl, heterocyclic, (C_1 - C_{18})alkyl-

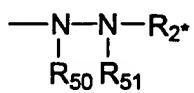
heterocyclic, $(C_6-C_{24})\text{aryl}$, $(C_6-C_{24})\text{aryl}(C_1-C_{18})\text{alkyl}$ and $(C_6-C_{24})\text{aryl}(C_1-C_{18})\text{alkylheterocyclic}$,

and wherein R_{91} and R_{92} are independently selected from the group consisting of optionally substituted $(C_2-C_{18})\text{alkenyl}$, optionally substituted $(C_2-C_{18})\text{alkynyl}$, optionally substituted $(C_3-C_{18})\text{cycloalkyl}$, optionally substituted $(C_1-C_{18})\text{alkyl}$, optionally substituted $(C_3-C_{18})\text{cycloalkyl}$, optionally substituted $(C_2-C_{18})\text{alkenyl}$, optionally substituted $(C_3-C_{18})\text{cycloalkyl}$, optionally substituted $(C_2-C_{18})\text{alkynyl}$, optionally substituted $(C_6-C_{24})\text{aryl}$, $(C_2-C_{18})\text{alkenyl}$, optionally substituted $(C_6-C_{24})\text{aryl}$, $(C_2-C_{18})\text{alkynyl}$, optionally substituted $(C_2-C_{18})\text{acyl}$, optionally substituted $(C_6-C_{24})\text{aryl}(C_2-C_{18})\text{acyl}$, optionally substituted heterocyclic, optionally substituted heterocyclic $(C_1-C_{18})\text{alkyl}$, optionally substituted heterocyclic $(C_2-C_{18})\text{alkenyl}$, and optionally substituted heterocyclic $(C_2-C_{18})\text{alkynyl}$, or R_{91} and R_{92} together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein,

and m' , n' , A' , A'^* , R_{2*} , R_{50} , R_{51} and R_{10} are as previously defined,

(v) a group selected from R_1 , R'_1* , R_2 , R_{2*} , R_9 , R_{11} , R_{12} , R_{50} and R_{51} , taken together with another group selected from R_1 , R'_1* , R_2 , R_{2*} , R_9* , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_{12} , R_{50} and R_{51} is selected from the group consisting of $-\text{C}(\text{O})-$ and optionally substituted methylene;

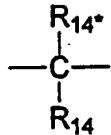
(b) when W' is R'_1*X^* wherein X^* is NR_{10} , and V' is Y'^* wherein Y'^* is



, and B' is selected from $-\text{CH}(\text{OH})-$ and $-\text{C}(\text{O})-$ then at least one of the following also applies when one of the conditions (i) to (iv) defined above in (a) applies:

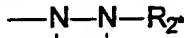
- (vi) $n' > 1$,
- (vii) $n' = 0$,
- (viii) $m' > 1$,
- (ix) $m' = 0$,
- (x) R_{50} and R_{51} together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein,
- (xi) R_{50} is a group R_{56} , wherein R_{56} is selected from the group consisting of $\text{C}(\text{D}^*)\text{OR}_{21*}$, $\text{C}(\text{D}^*)\text{NR}_{21*}\text{R}_{22*}$, $\text{C}(\text{D}^*)\text{SR}_{21*}$, $\text{C}(\text{D}^*)\text{R}_{55}$ and a solubilising and/or protecting group P_x which is labile *in vivo*, wherein R_{21*} and R_{22*} are as previously defined, and
- (xii) $n' = m' = 1$ and A'^* is other than $-\text{CH}_2-$,

and (c) when B' is selected from ---P---R_{14}^* ---O--- ---S--- ---N---R_{17} ---N---R_{14}^* .



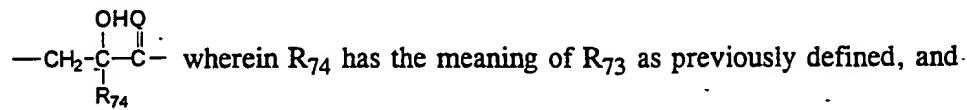
and $\begin{array}{c} \text{R}_{14}^* \\ | \\ \text{---C---} \\ | \\ \text{R}_{14} \end{array}$, wherein R_{14} , R_{14}^* and R_{17} are as previously defined, then at least one group selected from R_2 or R_{2*} , R_{11} , R_{12} , R_{50} and R_{51} together with another group selected from R_1 , or R_{1*} , R_{10} , R_{11} and R_{12} forms a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein, said ring being substituted with at least one polar group selected from $=\text{O}$, $=\text{S}$, OH , SH , NHR_{10*} and C(O)OH , wherein R_{10*} has the meaning of R_{10} as previously defined, said polar group being sterically capable of being located within the compound of formula (I) not more than 5 Ångstrom units from the P, O, S, N or C atom of group B,

provided that when W' is $\text{R}'_{1*}\text{X}'^*$ and X'^* is NH and V' is Y'^* wherein Y'^* is



wherein R'_{1*} is other than H and R_{71} and R_{72} are independently selected from the group consisting of H, ($\text{C}_1\text{---C}_6$)alkyl, optionally substituted phenyl, optionally substituted naphthyl, optionally substituted phenyl($\text{C}_1\text{---C}_2$)alkyl and optionally substituted naphthyl($\text{C}_1\text{---C}_2$)alkyl, and when

(a) B' is $-\text{CH(OH)}$ - and $(\text{A}')_n$ is $-\text{CH(R}_{73})$ - wherein R_{73} is selected from the group consisting of ($\text{C}_1\text{---C}_6$)alkyl optionally substituted with 1-5 fluorine atoms, ($\text{C}_3\text{---C}_6$)alkenyl, ($\text{C}_1\text{---C}_6$)alkoxy- CH_2 -, $(\text{CH}_2)_p$ phenyl, $(\text{CH}_2)_p$ naphthyl, $(\text{CH}_2)_p(\text{C}_5\text{---C}_6)$ cycloalkyl and $(\text{CH}_2)_p$ indolyl, wherein said $(\text{CH}_2)_n$ phenyl, $(\text{CH}_2)_n$ naphthyl, $(\text{CH}_2)_n(\text{C}_5\text{---C}_6)$ cycloalkyl and $(\text{CH}_2)_n$ indolyl are optionally substituted with nitro, halogen, ($\text{C}_1\text{---C}_4$)alkyl, ($\text{C}_1\text{---C}_4$)alkoxy or ($\text{C}_1\text{---C}_4$)alkylthio and wherein p is 0, 1 or 2, then $(\text{A}'^*)_m$ is other than



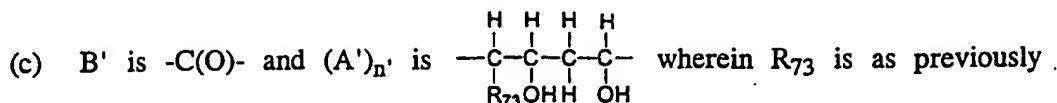
when

(b) B' is $-\text{C---C---}$ wherein R_{74} has the meaning of R_{73} as previously defined and

$(\text{A}')_n$ is $\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \\ | \quad | \quad | \\ \text{---C---C---C---} \\ | \quad | \quad | \\ \text{R}_{73} \text{ OH} \text{ H} \end{array}$ wherein R_{73} is as previously defined, then $(\text{A}'^*)_m$ is

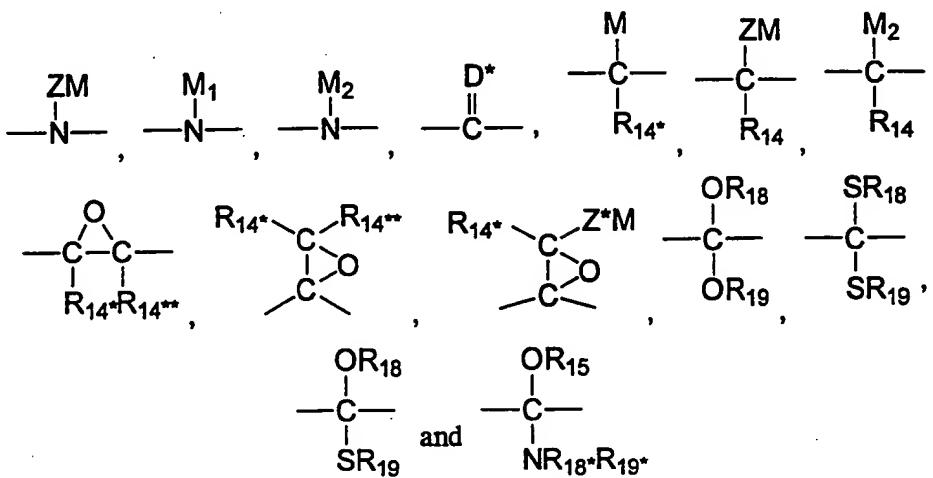
other than $-\text{C(O)}$ -, and when

163



3. A compound according to claim 1, wherein B is selected from the group consisting of

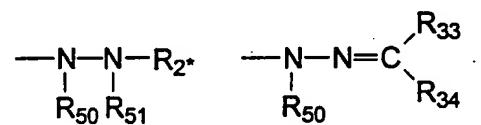
5



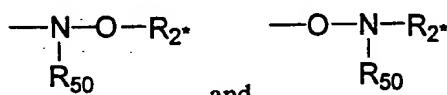
where Z , Z^* , M , M_1 , M_2 , D^* , R_{14} , R_{14^*} , $\text{R}_{14^{**}}$, R_{15} , R_{18} , R_{18^*} , R_{19} and R_{19^*} are as defined in claim 1,

10 V is YR_2 , Y^* or $\text{C}(\text{R}_{30})=\text{Y}^{**}$, wherein R_2 , R_{30} and Y^{**} are as defined in claim 1, Y is

selected from the group consisting of $\text{---N}=\text{N}---$, $\text{---N}=\text{N}^+---$, $\text{---N}=\text{N}^----$, and

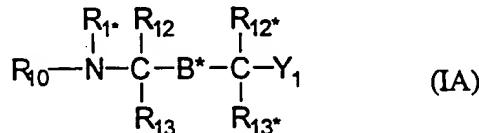


Y^* is selected from the group consisting of



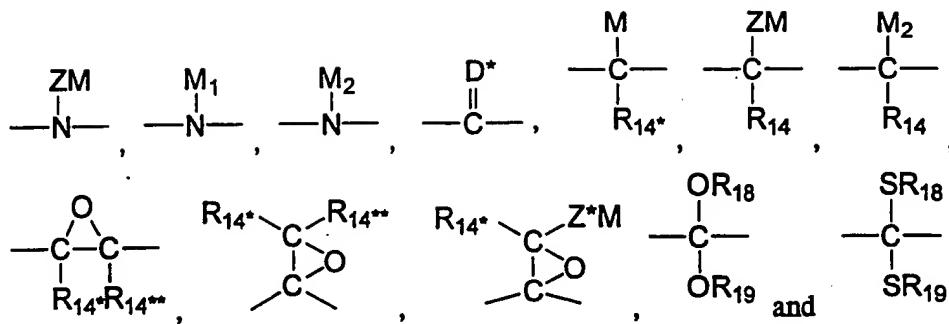
and, wherein R_{33} , R_{34} , R_{50} , R_{51} and R_{2^*} are as defined in claim 1.

15 4. A compound according to claim 1 having the structure represented by formula (IA):



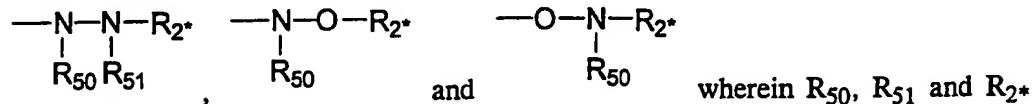
wherein R_{1^*} , R_{10} , R_{12} , R_{12^*} , R_{13} and R_{13^*} are as defined in claim 1,

B^* is selected from the group consisting of



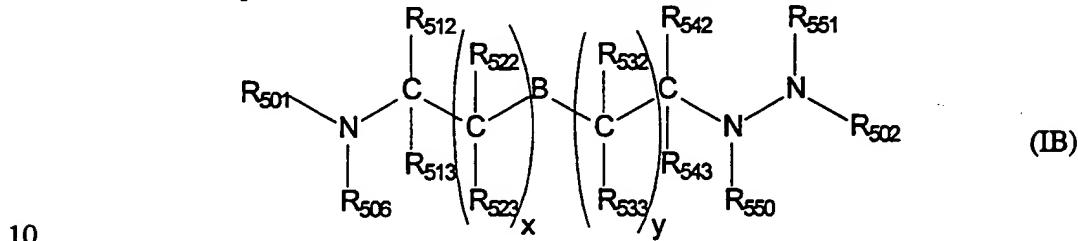
where Z , Z^* , M , M_1 , M_2 , D^* , R_{14} , R_{14^*} , $R_{14^{**}}$, R_{18} and R_{19} are as defined in claim 1, and

5 Y_1 is selected from the group consisting of



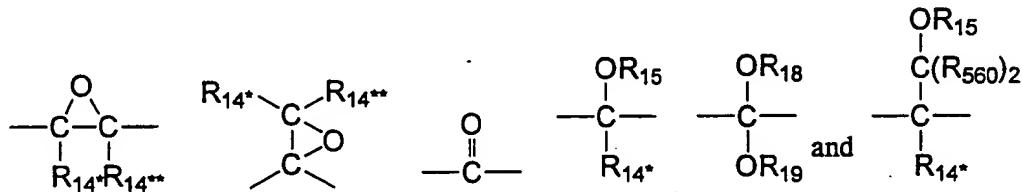
are as defined in claim 1.

5. A compound according to claim 1 of the general formula (IB):



10 wherein x and y are independently 0 or 1,

B is selected from the group consisting of



wherein R_{14^*} , $R_{14^{**}}$, R_{15} , R_{18} and R_{19} are as defined in claim 1 and each R_{560} is independently hydrogen or (C_1-C_4) alkyl,

15 R_{502} and R_{506} are independently a group R_{600} , wherein R_{600} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, $C(O)OR_{621}$, $C(O)SR_{621}$, $C(O)NR_{621}R_{622}$, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_5-C_{10}) cycloalkyl, (C_5-C_{10}) cycloalkyl(C_1-C_6)alkyl, (C_5-C_{10}) cycloalkyl(C_2-C_6)alkenyl, (C_6-C_{10}) aryl, (C_6-C_{10}) aryl(C_1-C_6)alkyl, (C_6-C_{10}) aryl(C_2-C_6)alkenyl, (C_1-C_6) acyl, heterocyclic,

20 heterocyclic(C_1-C_6)alkyl and heterocyclic(C_2-C_6)alkenyl, each of which may be substituted by up to three substituents selected from the substituents defined herein for "optionally substituted (C_1-C_{18}) alkyl" and R_{621} and R_{622} have the meaning of R_{21} and R_{22} respectively, as defined in claim 1, or R_{621} and R_{622}

together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined below,

R₅₀₁ is selected from the group consisting of R₆₀₀ as previously defined, S(O)OR₆₃₂, S(O)₂R₆₃₂, S(O)NR₆₃₂R₆₃₃, S(O)₂R₆₃₂R₆₃₃, NH₂, NHR₆₃₁ and NR₆₃₁R₆₃₂, wherein R₆₃₁ has the meaning of R₆ as defined in claim 1 and R₆₃₂ and R₆₃₃ independently have the meaning of R₂₀ as defined in claim 1, or R₅₀₁ and R₅₀₆ together form part of a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system, or R₆₃₁ and R₆₃₂, or R₆₃₂ and R₆₃₃ together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein,

R₅₁₂ and R₅₄₂ independently have the meaning of R₆₀₀ as previously defined, R₅₂₂ and R₅₃₂ are independently selected from the group consisting of R₆₀₀ as previously defined, F, Cl, Br and I,

R₅₁₃ and R₅₄₃ are independently selected from the group consisting of R₆₀₀ as previously defined and R₂₀₀ as defined in claim 1,

R₅₂₃ and R₅₃₃ are independently selected from the group consisting of R₆₀₀ as previously defined, F, Cl, Br, I, and R₂₀₀ as defined in claim 1,

R₅₅₀ has the meaning of R₆ as defined in claim 1 and R₅₅₁ is selected from the group consisting of R₆₅₀, hydrogen, S(O)OR₆₃₂, S(O)₂R₆₃₂, S(O)NR₆₃₂R₆₃₃ and S(O)₂R₆₃₂R₆₃₃, wherein R₆₅₀ has the meaning of R₆ as defined in claim 1 and R₆₃₂ and R₆₃₃ are as previously defined, or R₆₃₂ and R₆₃₃ together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein, or R₅₅₀ and one of R₅₅₁ and R₅₀₂ together form a diazaheterocycle wherein R₅₅₀, R₅₅₁ or R₅₀₂ and the two nitrogen atoms to which they are bonded are part of a stable 5 to 10-membered ring which may comprise up to two further heteroatoms selected from O, S and N and to which may be fused one or more cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl or heterocyclic residues, which diazaheterocycle may be substituted by one or more of the substituents defined herein for "optionally substituted (C₁-C₁₈)alkyl", and wherein two substituents may together form part of a ring,

30 or one pair selected from R₅₁₂ and R₅₁₃, R₅₂₂ and R₅₂₃ (when present), R₅₃₂ and R₅₃₃ (when present), and R₅₄₂ and R₅₄₃, together are =O;

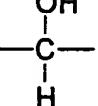
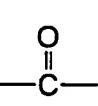
wherein, when B is other than $\text{---}\overset{\text{O}}{\underset{\text{R}_{14}^*}{\text{C}}}\text{---}$ or $\text{---}\overset{\text{OR}_{15}}{\underset{\text{R}_{14}^*}{\text{C}}}\text{---}$ then at least one of conditions

(i) to (xi) below applies:

35 (i) at least one of R₅₁₂ and R₅₄₂ is a group R₆₅₅, wherein R₆₅₅ is selected from the group consisting of (C₁-C₆)alkyl(C₆-C₁₀)aryl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl(C₆-C₁₀)aryl, (C₅-C₁₀)cycloalkyl(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₅-C₁₀)cycloalkyl(C₆-C₁₀)aryl, acyl(C₆-

C_{10} aryl, heterocyclic(C_1 - C_6)alkyl, heterocyclic(C_2 - C_6)alkenyl, heterocyclic- $(C_6$ - C_{10})aryl, $C(D^*)OR_{21*}$, $C(D^*)SR_{21*}$ and $C(D^*)NR_{21*}R_{22*}$, wherein D^* , R_{21*} and R_{22*} are as defined in claim 1,

- 5 (ii) at least one of R_{522} and R_{532} , when present, is selected from the group consisting of R_{655} as previously defined, F, Cl, Br and I,
- (iii) at least one of R_{513} and R_{543} , when present, is selected from the group consisting of R_{655} as previously defined, and R_{200} as defined in claim 1,
- 10 (iv) at least one of R_{523} and R_{533} , when present, is selected from the group consisting of R_{655} as previously defined, F, Cl, Br, I and R_{200} as defined in claim 1,
- (v) R_{550} is a group R_{656} , wherein R_{656} is selected from the group consisting of $(C_1$ - C_6)alkyl(C_6 - C_{10})aryl, $(C_2$ - C_6)alkenyl(C_6 - C_{10})aryl, $(C_5$ - C_{10})cycloalkyl- $(C_2$ - C_6)alkenyl, $(C_5$ - C_{10})cycloalkyl(C_6 - C_{10})aryl, acyl(C_6 - C_{10})aryl, heterocyclic(C_1 - C_6)alkyl, heterocyclic(C_2 - C_6)alkenyl, heterocyclic- $(C_6$ - C_{10})aryl,
- 15 (vi) R_{551} is selected from the group consisting of R_{656} as previously defined, $S(O)OR_{632}$, $S(O)_2R_{632}$, $S(O)NR_{632}R_{633}$ and $S(O)_2R_{632}R_{633}$, wherein R_{632} and R_{633} are as previously defined,
- (vii) R_{502} is selected from the group consisting of R_{656} as previously defined, $C(D^*)SR_{21*}$ and $C(D^*)NR_{21*}R_{22*}$, wherein D^* , R_{21*} and R_{22*} are as defined in claim 1,
- 20 (viii) R_{502} and R_{551} are both hydrogen or are both $(C_1$ - C_6)acyl,
- (ix) R_{14*} is selected from the group consisting of $C(D^*)OR_{40}$, $C(D^*)SR_{40}$ and $C(D^*)NR_{40}R_{41}$, wherein R_{40} and R_{41} are as previously defined,
- 25 (x) R_{501} is selected from the group consisting of R_{656} as previously defined, $S(O)OR_{632}$, $S(O)_2R_{632}$, $S(O)NR_{632}R_{633}$, $S(O)_2R_{632}R_{633}$, NH_2 , NHR_{631} and $NR_{631}R_{632}$, wherein R_{632} and R_{633} are as previously defined,
- (xi) R_{501} and R_{506} are both $(C_1$ - C_6)acyl,

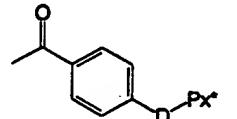
and wherein when B is  or  then at least one of the following

30 conditions also applies:

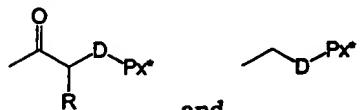
- (xii) $x + y > 0$,
- (xiii) $x + y = 0$ and at least one of R_{532} and R_{533} is other than hydrogen,
- (xiv) R_{50} and R_{51} together form a diazaheterocycle as previously defined,
- (xv) at least one of R_{501} , R_{502} , R_{506} and R_{551} is optionally substituted heterocyclic(C_1 - C_{18})alkyl, and

(xvi) at least one of R_{512} , R_{542} , R_{522} , R_{532} , R_{513} , R_{543} , R_{523} and R_{533} is selected from the group consisting of $C(O)OR_{621}$, $C(O)SR_{621}$ and $C(O)NR_{621}R_{622}$, wherein R_{621} and R_{622} are as previously defined.

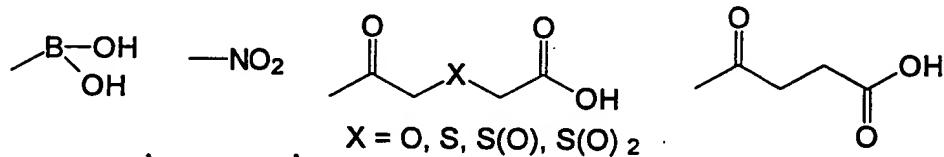
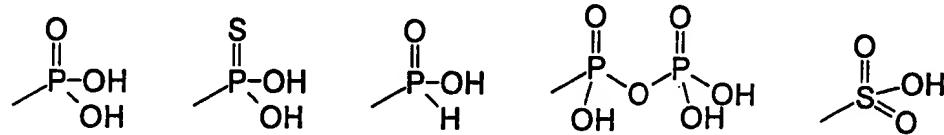
6. A compound according to claim 1 comprising at least one solubilising group Px ,



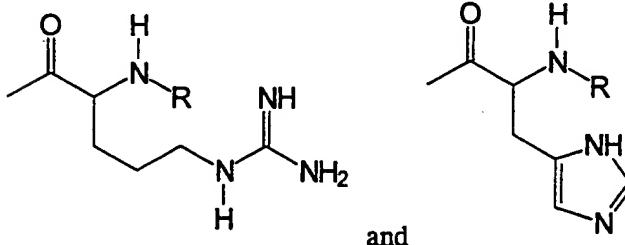
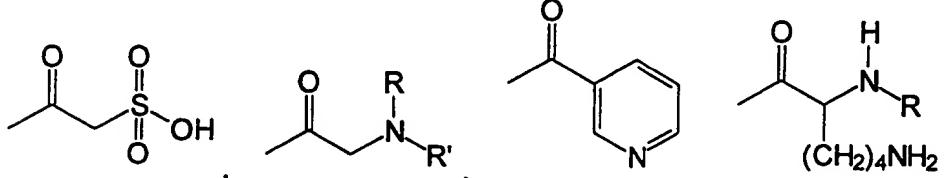
5 wherein Px is selected from the group consisting of Px^* ,



, and wherein D is O or S, R is H or C_1-C_4 alkyl, and wherein Px^* is selected from:

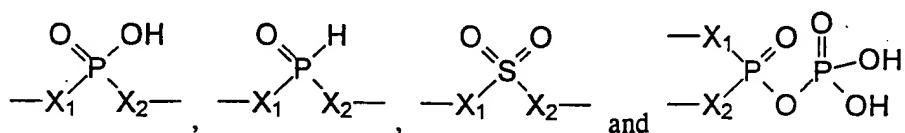


10



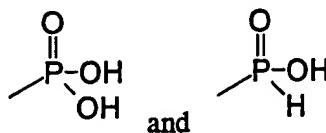
and

or, wherein the compound of formula (I) as defined in claim 1 includes two functional groups capable of being derivatised by a solubilising group Px , said two functional groups being in sufficiently close proximity to one another, comprising a cyclic structure 15 including a structural unit selected from:

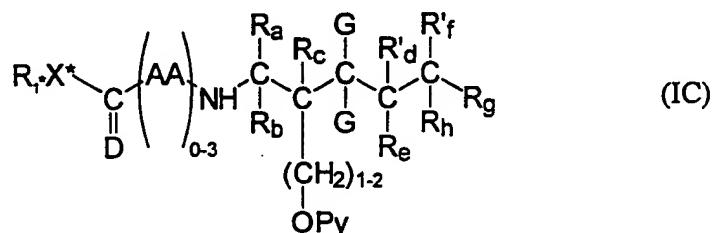


wherein X_1 and X_2 are independently selected from O, S and NR_6 wherein R_6 is as defined in claim 1.

7. A compound according to claim 6 wherein said solubilising group is selected from

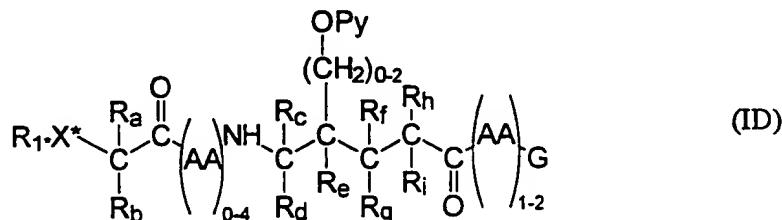


5 8. A compound according to claim 1, selected from the group consisting of formula (IC) to (IAW), wherein each AA is independently a residue of a naturally occurring or synthetic amino acid as herein defined; R_1* , R_1 , X and X^* are as defined in claim 1; R_a to R_j independently are $-(CH_2)_{a-6}OPy$ or R_6 , wherein a can be 0, 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5, and wherein Py is a solubilising group Px as defined herein, and R_6 is as defined in claim 1:

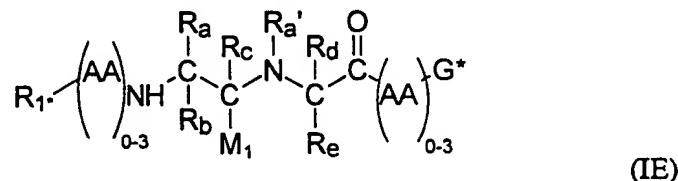


10

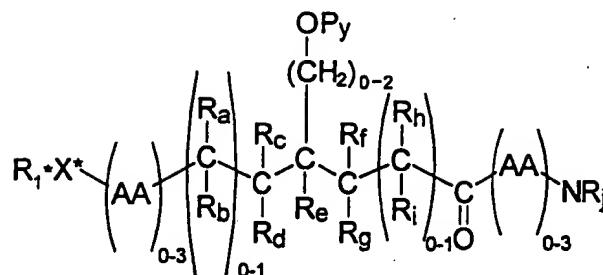
wherein D' is O or S, and each G is independently hydrogen or R_{200} as defined in claim 1 and wherein R'_d and R'_f are R_d and R_f or, taken together, may be trimethylene or tetramethylene optimally substituted with $-C(O)OR$; or $-C(O)NR_iR_j$;



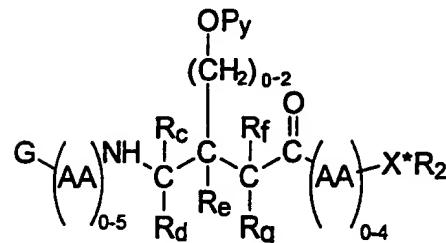
15 wherein G is selected from R_1* and X^*R_1* ;



wherein R_a' is OPy or R_6 as defined in claim 1, M_1 is R_6 as defined in claim 1, $(CH_2)_{1-2}OPy$ or $(CH_2)_{1-2}NHPy$, and G^* is OR_2 or NR_iR_2 ;

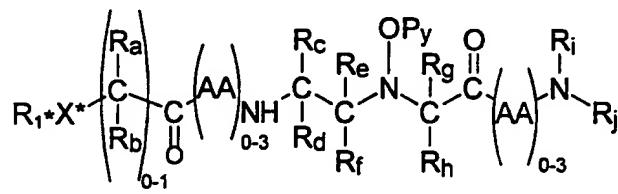


(II);



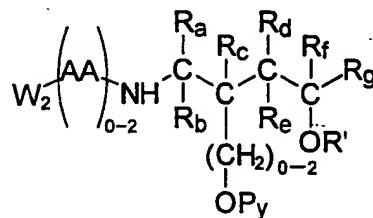
(IG)

wherein G is hydrogen, R_a , R_1*X^* or $R_1*X^*C(R_a)(R_b)C(O)$, and wherein R_a , R_1* , and the atoms to which they are bound may optionally form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, 5 bicyclic or fused ring system;



(III)

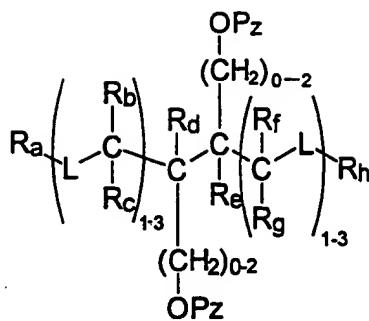
wherein R_a , R_1* , and the atoms to which they are bound may optionally form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system;



(II)

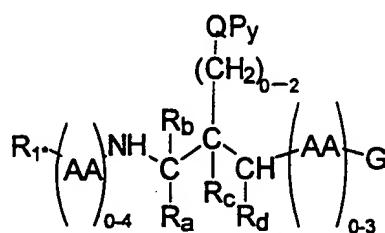
10 wherein W_2 is R_1X or R_6 as defined in claim 1, and R' is Py or R_6 as defined in claim 1, or R' and Py, taken together with the oxygen atoms to which they are attached form a

group selected from $\text{HO}-\overset{\text{O}}{\underset{\text{O}}{\text{P}}}-\text{O}-$, $\text{H}-\overset{\text{O}}{\underset{\text{O}}{\text{P}}}-\text{O}-$ and $\text{O}-\overset{\text{O}}{\underset{\text{O}}{\text{S}}}-\text{O}-$;

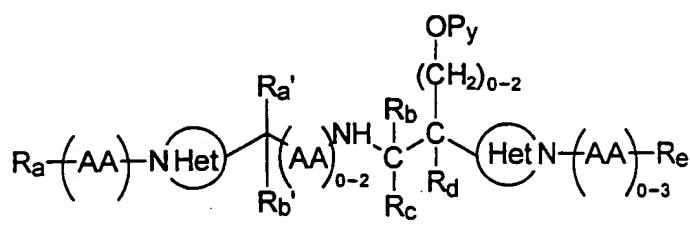


wherein each L is independently as defined in claim 1 and each Pz is independently hydrogen or Py, provided that at least one Pz is Py or, when each Pz is Py, the groups Py, together with the oxygen atoms to which the are bound define a cyclic group selected

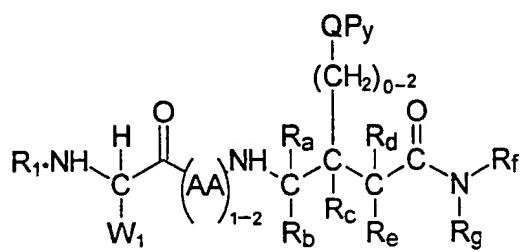
5 from $\text{HO}-\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{O}-)$, $\text{HO}-\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{O}-)$ and $\text{O}-\text{S}(\text{O})(\text{O}-)$;



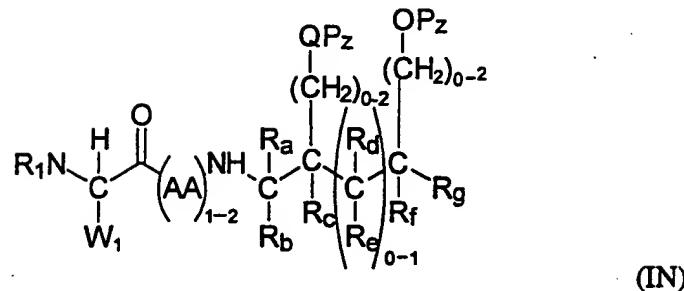
wherein Q is O or NRf and G is R1* or X* R1*;



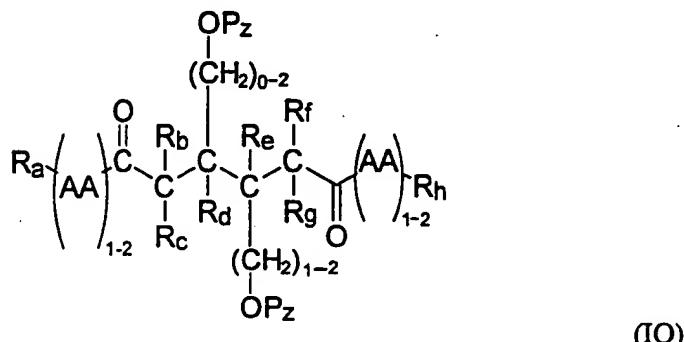
wherein each **NHet** is independently a 5- or 6- membered saturated or unsaturated 10 heterocycle containing a nitrogen atom and optionally additionally one or two heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur, and wherein Ra' and Rb' independently have the meaning of $-(\text{CH}_2)_{0-6}\text{OPy}$ or R6, or taken together are = O;



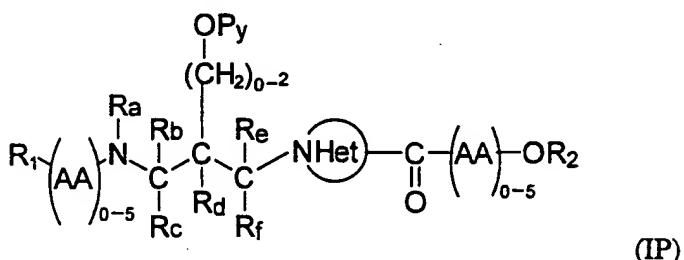
wherein W1 is selected from R1X and R1*X*, and Q is selected from O and NRh;



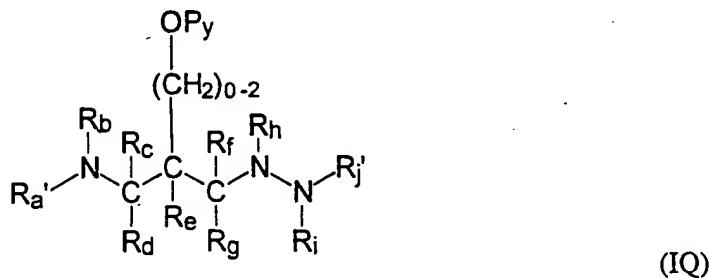
wherein W_1 is selected from R_1X and R_1*X^* , each P_z is independently hydrogen or Py, provided that at least one P_z is Py, and Q is selected from O and NR_h ;



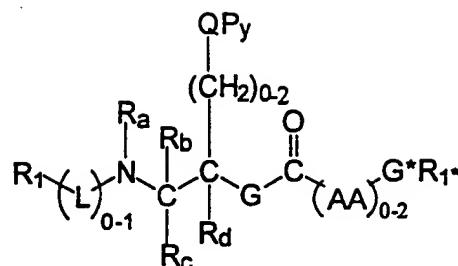
5 wherein each P_z is independently hydrogen or Py, provided that at least one P_z is Py;



wherein $NHet$ is a 5- or 6- membered saturated or unsaturated heterocycle containing a nitrogen atom and optionally additionally one or two heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur;

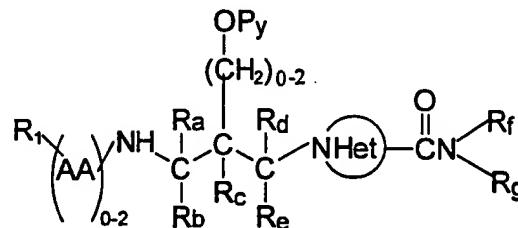


wherein R_a' and R_j' are independently selected from R_1 and R_1* , as defined in claim 1;



(IR)

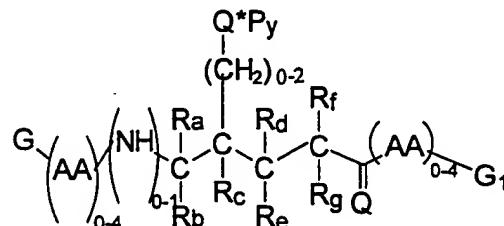
wherein G is selected from $\begin{array}{c} \text{Re} \\ | \\ -\text{C}- \\ | \\ \text{Rf} \end{array}$, $\begin{array}{c} \text{Re} \quad \text{Rg} \\ | \quad | \\ -\text{C}-\text{C}- \\ | \quad | \\ \text{Rf} \quad \text{Rh} \end{array}$ and a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system, Q is O or NH, and G* is X or X* as defined in claim 1;



5

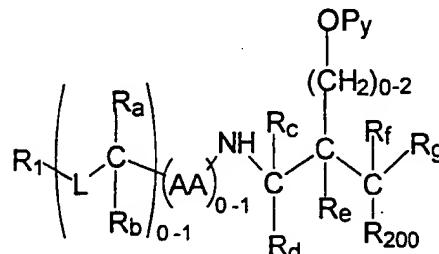
(IS)

wherein NHet is a 5-12 membered saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system containing a nitrogen atom and optionally additionally from 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur;



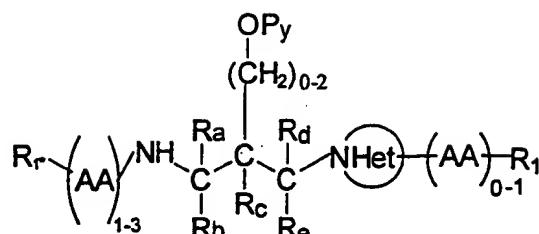
(IT)

10 wherein G is selected from hydrogen and R1*X*, Q is O, S or NH, Q* is O or NH, and G1 is selected from R1 and R1*X*;



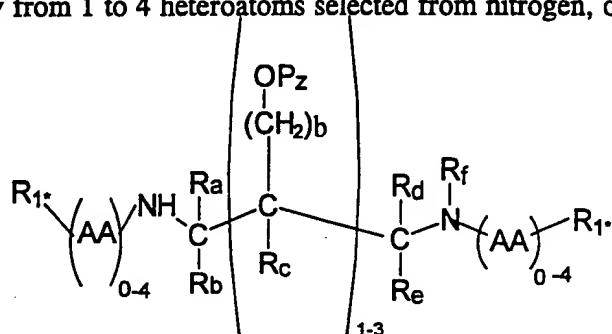
(IU)

wherein R200 is as defined in claim 1;



(IV)

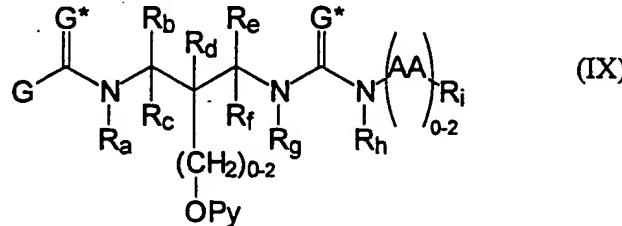
wherein **NHET** is an optionally substituted 5-12 membered saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system containing a nitrogen atom and optionally additionally from 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur;



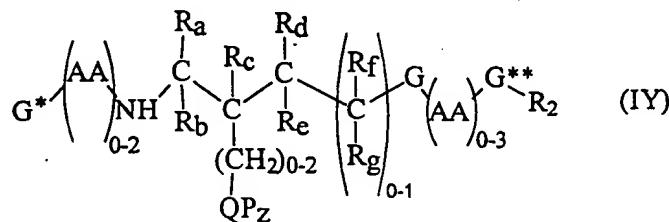
5

(TW)

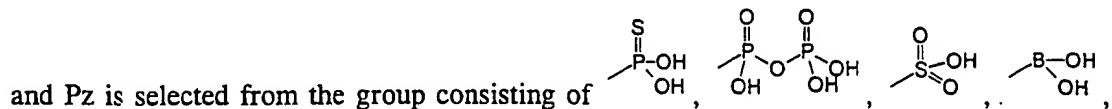
wherein b is 0, 1 or 2, provided that at least one b is greater than 0, and each Pz is independently hydrogen or Py, provided that at least one Pz is Py;

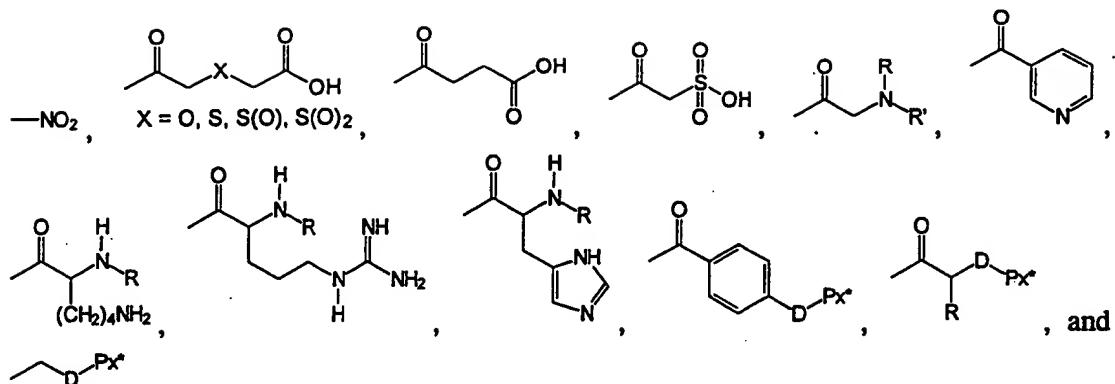


wherein each G^* is independently selected from O, S and NR_6 and G is selected from 10 OR_6 , NHR_6 and R_{20} ;

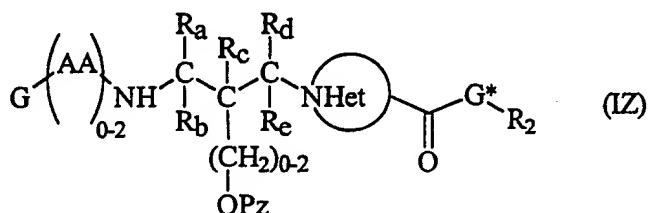


wherein G is -C(O)- or -CH₂-, G* is R₁ or R_{1*}, G** is -O- or -NR_h-, Q is -O- or -NR_j



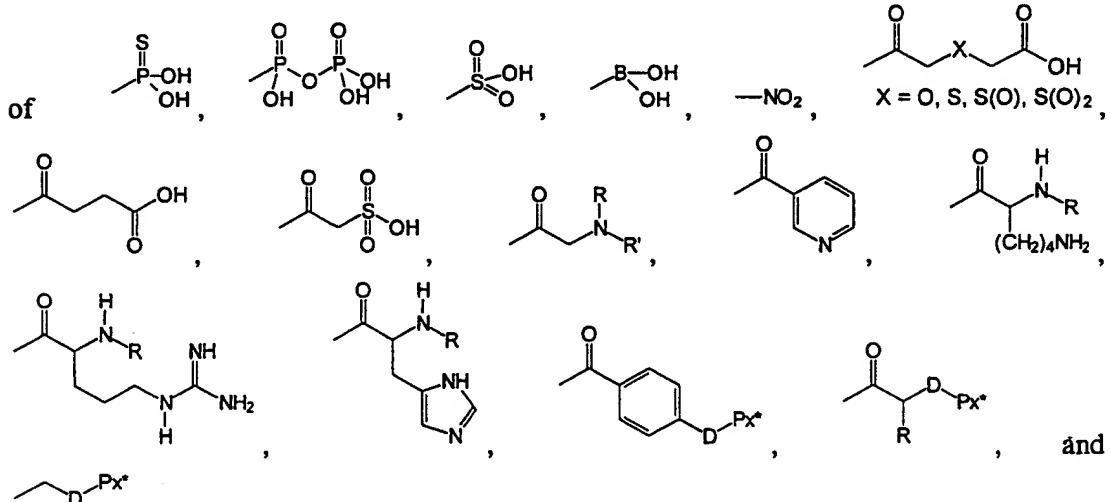


wherein R and R' are independently hydrogen or C₁-C₄ alkyl, D is O or S and Px* is as defined herein;



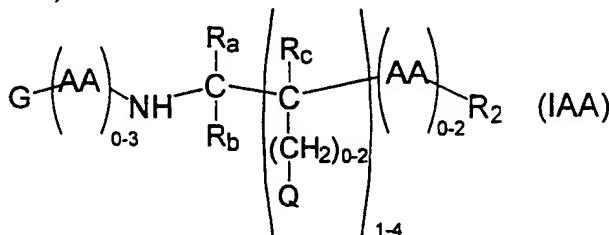
5

wherein G is R₁ or R₁*, G* is -O- or -NR_d- and Pz is selected from the group consisting

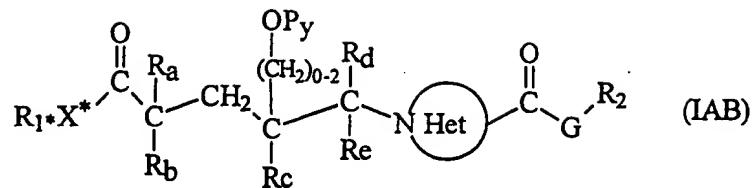


10

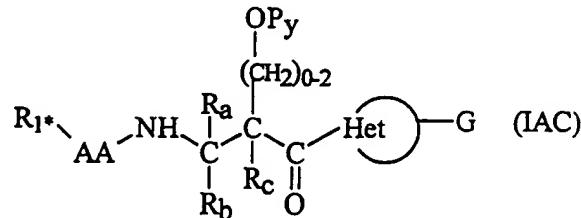
wherein R and R' are independently hydrogen or C₁-C₄ alkyl, D is O or S and Px* is as defined herein;



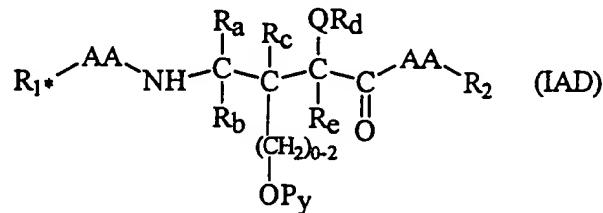
wherein G is R₁ or R₁*, and each Q is independently H, -OPz or -NR_dPz, wherein each Pz is independently hydrogen or Py, provided that at least one Pz is Py;



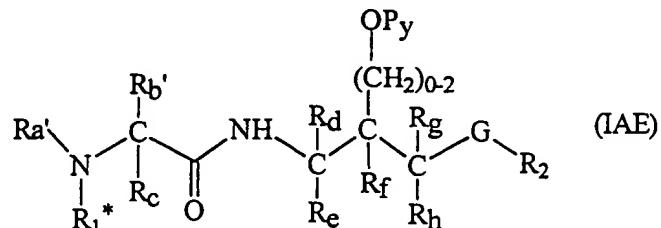
wherein N Het is a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused nitrogen containing ring system and G is a bond or is $-\text{O}-$ or $-\text{NR}_f$;



5 wherein G is absent or X^*R_1^* and Het is a 3 to 10-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocycle containing a nitrogen atom and optionally additionally one to three heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur;

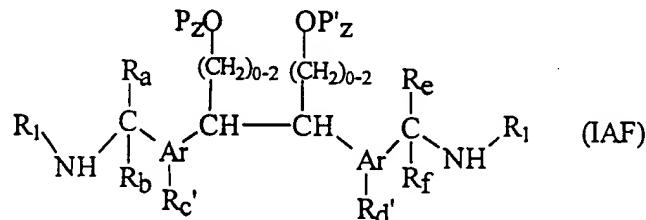


wherein Q is selected from $-\text{O}-$, $-\text{S}-$ and $-\text{NR}_f$;



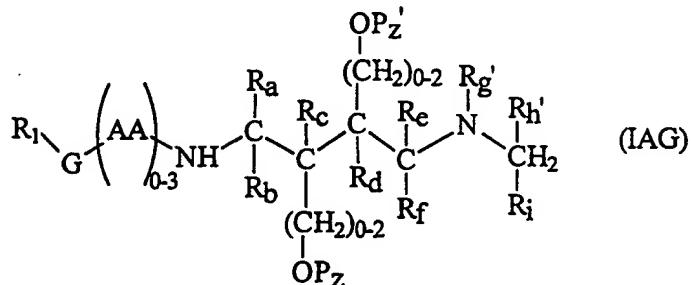
10

wherein G is O , S , $\text{S}(\text{O})$ or $\text{S}(\text{O})_2$, and R_a' and R_b' have the meaning of R_a and R_b or R_a' and R_b' together are trimethylene or tetramethylene;



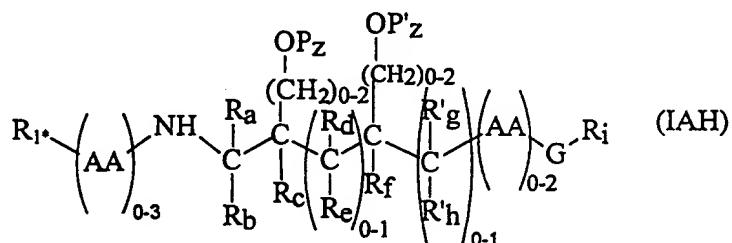
wherein each Ar is independently $(\text{C}_6\text{--C}_{14})\text{aryl}$, R'_c and R'_d are R_c and R_d or, taken 15 together, are $-\text{C}(\text{O})-$ or $-\text{CH}(\text{OH})-$, and wherein Pz and Pz' are independently hydrogen or

Py with the proviso that at least one of Pz and Pz' is Py, or Pz and Pz' together with the oxygen atoms to which they are attached form a group selected from $\text{HO}-\overset{\text{O}}{\text{P}}-\text{O}-$, $\text{H}-\overset{\text{O}}{\text{P}}-\text{O}-$, and $\text{O}-\overset{\text{O}}{\text{S}}-\text{O}-$.



5 wherein G is a bond or X as defined in claim 1, R_g' and R_h' are R_g and R_h or together form a saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system, and Pz and Pz' are independently hydrogen or Py with the proviso that at least one of Pz and Pz' is Py, or Pz and Pz' together with the oxygen atoms to which they are attached form a group selected

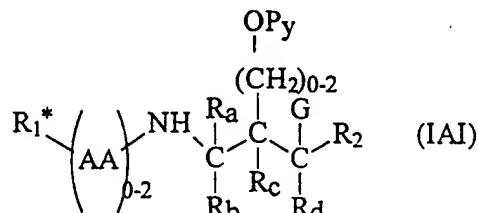
from $\text{HO}-\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{O}-\text{O}-\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{O}-\text{H}))_2$, $\text{H}-\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{O}-\text{O}-\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{O}-\text{H}))_2$ and $\text{O}=\text{S}(\text{O})(\text{O}-\text{O}-\text{S}(\text{O})=\text{O})$;



10

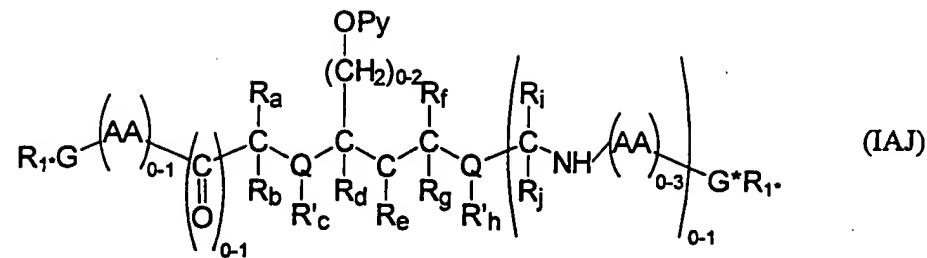
wherein G is a bond, O, S or NRj, R_g' and R_h' are R_g and R_h, or taken together may be -C(O)-, and Pz and Pz' are independently hydrogen or Py with the proviso that at least one of Pz and Pz' is Py, or Pz and Pz' together with the oxygen atoms to which they are

attached from a group selected from $\text{HO}-\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{O}-\text{O}-)-$, $\text{H}-\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{O}-\text{O}-)-$ and $\text{O}-\text{S}(\text{O})(\text{O}-\text{O}-)-$;

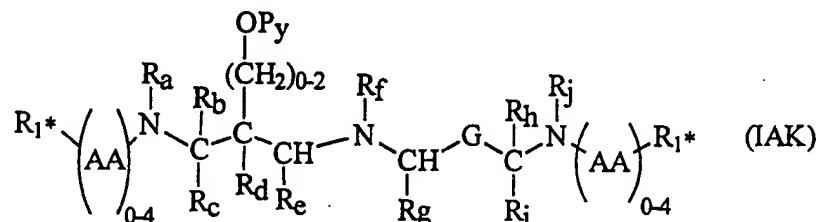


15

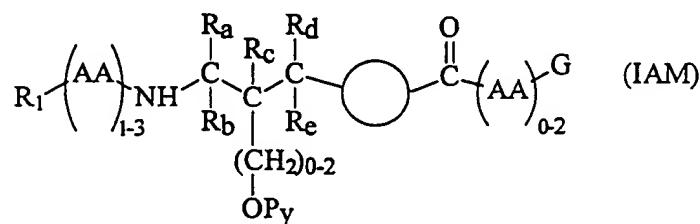
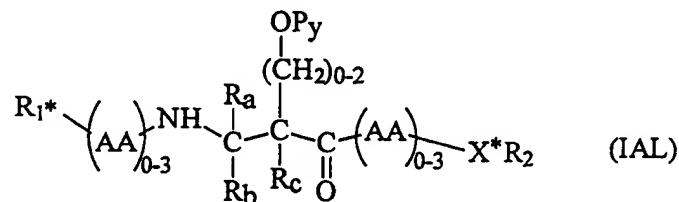
wherein G is OPy, NHR_e, NPyR_e or R_e;



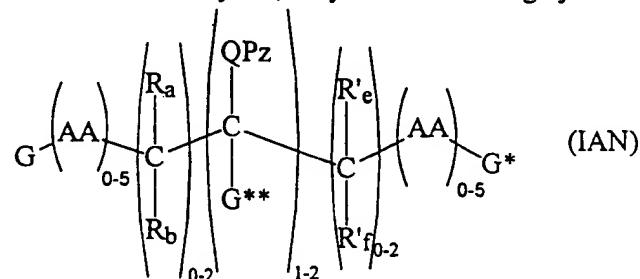
wherein G and G* are independently a bond, O, S or NH, and R'd and R'h are R'd and R'h or taken together are -CR'2- or -CR2'-CR2'- wherein each R' independently has the meaning of R6 as defined in claim 1, Q and Q* are independently N or CR6, or when Q* is CR6 then Rg and R6 together may be a double bond;



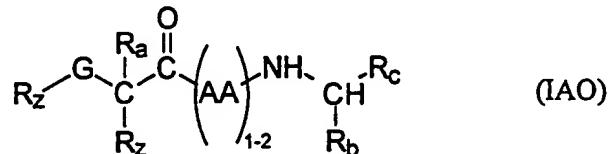
wherein G is -C(O)- or -C(R6)(CH2)0-4OG* wherein G* is R6 or Py;



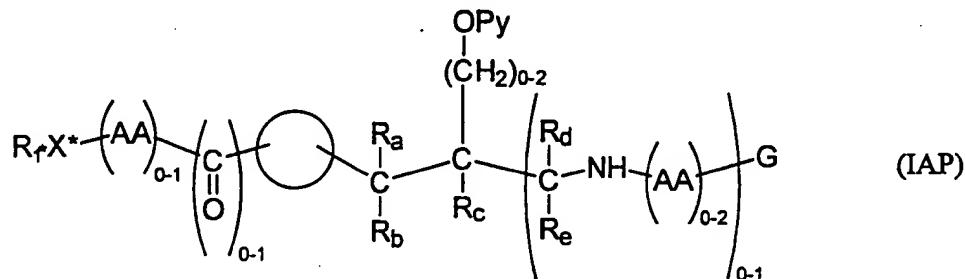
10 wherein G is selected from hydrogen and X*R1* and wherein represents a 4-10 membered saturated or unsaturated cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system as defined herein;



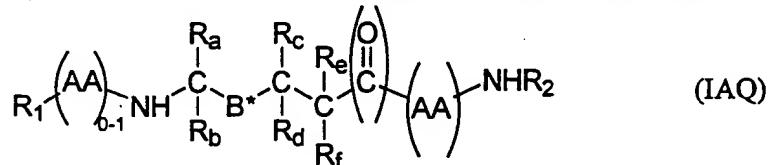
wherein Q is selected from O, S and NR_g, G and G* are independently selected from R₁, R_{1*}, -C(R₅)=NR₃ and -C(R₅)=NOR₃, wherein R₃ and R₅ are as defined in claim 1, R'_e and R'_f are R_e and R_f, and G** is R₂₀ as defined in claim 1;



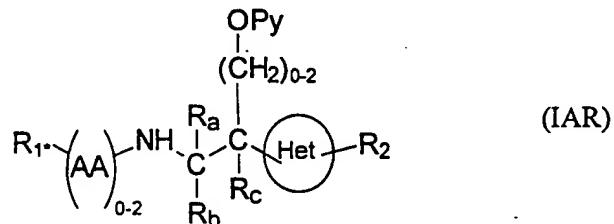
5 wherein each R_2 is independently selected from R_1 and PyOG* wherein G* is optionally substituted alkylene, provided that at least one R_2 is PyOG*, and G is $-NR_d-$ or CR_dR_e- ;



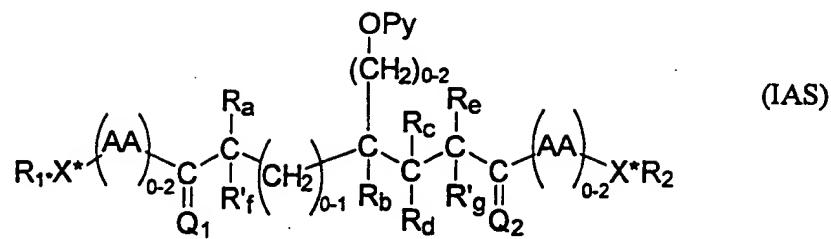
wherein  represents an optionally substituted saturated or unsaturated ring system optionally containing up to three heteroatoms selected from N, O and S, G is selected from R_1 , XR_1 or $X^*R_1^*$ and R_a and R_b taken together may optionally be $-C(O)-$;



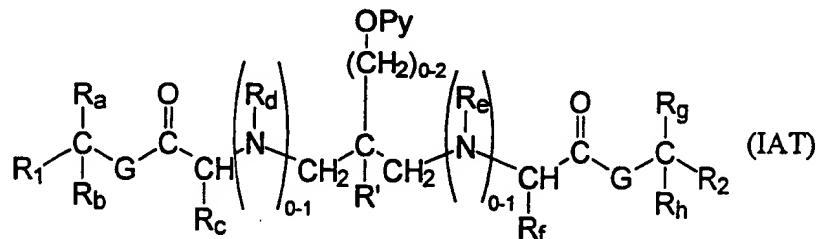
wherein B* is a group B, as previously defined, derivatised with a solubilising group Py;



wherein  represents an optionally substituted cyclic, bicyclic or fused ring system containing a nitrogen atom and optionally additionally from 1 to 3 heteroatoms selected from N, O and S;

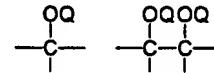
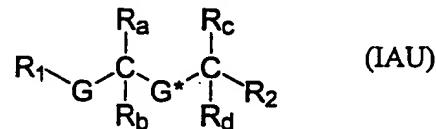


wherein Q_1 and Q_2 are independently selected from O and S, and R'_f and R'_g are respectively R_f and R_g or are selected from OR' , SR' and NR_hR' wherein R' is H, R_i or Py;



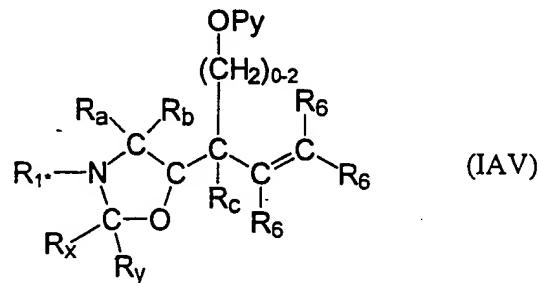
5

wherein each G is independently selected from O and NR_i , and R' is $(CH_2)_{1-2}OPy$ or R_6 ;

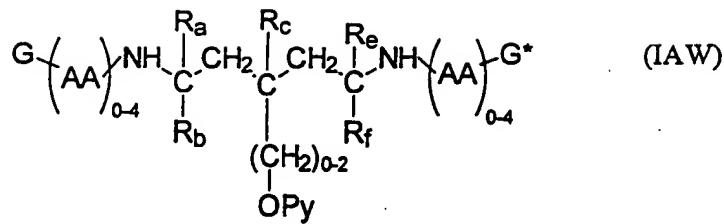


wherein G and G^* are independently selected from OR' , SR' , and L, wherein L is as defined in claim 1 and Q is H or Py, provided that at least one of G and G^* is other than L and provided that at least one Q is Py, or wherein two groups OQ taken together

are a cyclic group selected from $\text{HO}-\text{P}(\text{O}-\text{O}-)-\text{O}-$, $\text{H}-\text{P}(\text{O}-\text{O}-)-\text{O}-$ and $\text{O}-\text{S}(\text{O})_2-\text{O}-$;



wherein R_x and R_y are independently R_6 or $(CH_2)_{1-2}OPy$;



wherein G and G* are independently selected from R_1 , R_{1*} , $-\text{C}(\text{R}_5)=\text{NR}_3$ and $-\text{C}(\text{R}_5)\text{N}=\text{OR}_3$, wherein R_3 and R_5 are as defined in claim 1.

9. A compound according to claim 1 selected from the group consisting of

- 5 (i) t-butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)-amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,
- (ii) t-butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-valyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,
- (iii) t-butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,
- 10 (iv) t-butyl 3-(1-methyl-3-phenylpropen-3-yl)-3-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,
- (v) t-butyl 3-(1-methyl-3-phenylpropyl)-3-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,
- 15 (vi) cis-1,6-3-t-butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-amino-4-phenylbutyl]-3,4-diazabicyclo[4.4.0]decane,
- (vii) cis-1,6-3-t-butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-diazabicyclo[4.4.0]decane,
- (viii) cis-1,6-3-t-butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-valyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-3,4-diazabicyclo[4.4.0]decane
- 20 (ix) cis-1,6-3-t-butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-[N-(2-pyridyl)methoxycarbonyl]-L-valyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-3,4-diaza-bicyclo[4.4.0]decane
- (x) cis-1,6-3-t-butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-3,4-diazabicyclo[4.4.0]decane,
- 25 (xi) cis-1,6-3-t-butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-glutamyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-3,4-diazabicyclo[4.4.0]decane,
- (xii) cis-1,6-3-t-butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-threonyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-3,4-diazabicyclo[4.4.0]decane,
- 30 (xiii) 2-t-butoxycarbonyl-3-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-2,3-diazabicyclo[2.2.1]hept-5-ene,
- (xiv) 2-t-butoxycarbonyl-3-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-2,3-diaza-bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane,
- (xv) 2-t-butoxycarbonyl-3-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-(2-pyridyl)methoxy-L-valyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-2,3-diaza-bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane,

(xvi) 2-[N-(1S)(2-methyl-1-methoxycarbonylpropyl)carbamoyl]-3-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-[N-(2-pyridyl)methoxy-L-valyl]amino-4-phenylbutyl]-2,3-diazabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane,

5 (xvii) 2-t-butoxycarbonyl-3-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-2,3-diazabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane,

(xviii) 1-[2-(2-pyridyl)methoxycarbonylamino-]benzoyl-2-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-2-isopropylhydrazine,

10 (xix) 2-t-butoxycarbonyl-3-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-1,2,3,4-tetrahydrophthalazine,

(xx) 1-trimethylacetyl-2-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-2-isopropylhydrazine,

(xxi) 1-trimethylacetyl-2-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl) amino-4-phenylbutyl]-2-isopropylhydrazine,

15 (xxii) 1-(t-butylamino)carbonyl-2-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-2-isopropylhydrazine,

(xxiii) t-butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-picolinoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,

(xxiv) t-butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-(2-pyridyl)-methoxycarbonylanthraniloyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate.

20 (xxv) t-butyl 3-benzyl-3-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,

(xxvi) t-butyl 3-benzyl-3-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,

25 (xxvii) t-butyl 3-cyclohexyl-3-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(phenyl-methoxycarbonyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,

(xxviii) t-butyl 3-cyclohexyl-3-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,

(xxix) t-butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-(1-carbamoyl-methyl)-acryloyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,

30 (xxx) t-butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-(2(RS)-3-tert-butylthio-2-carbamoyl-methylpropionyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,

(xxxi) t-butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-(1-benzoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]carbazate,

35 (xxxii) 1-t-butyloxycarbonyl-2-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]hexahdropyridazine,

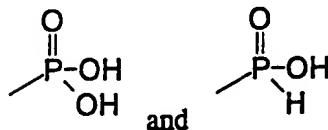
(xxxiii) 1-t-butyloxycarbonyl-2-[(2R or S,3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]hexahdropyridazine, and

(xxxiv) cis-1,6-3-t-butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2R or S, 3S)-2-hydroxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-3-cyano-L-alanyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-3,4-diaza-bicyclo[4,4,0]decane,

40

wherein the 2-hydroxy group has been derivatised with a solubilising group Px as herein defined.

10. A compound according to claim 9, wherein said solubilising group is selected from



5 11. A compound according to claim 10, which compound is selected from the group consisting of:

cis-1,6-3-t-Butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2S, 3S)-2-phosphonoxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-3,4-diaza-bicyclo[4.4.0]decane;

cis-1,6-3-t-Butoxycarbonyl-4-[(2S, 3S)-2-phosphitoxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutyl]-3,4-diaza-bicyclo[4.4.0]decane;

10 t-Butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2S, 3S)-2-phosphonoxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutylcarbazate and

t-Butyl 3-isopropyl-3-[(2S, 3S)-2-phosphitoxy-3-(N-quinaldoyl-L-asparaginyl)amino-4-phenylbutylcarbazate.

15 12. A process for preparing a compound of formula (I) according to claim 1, said process being selected from the group consisting of:

(a) reacting a compound W-(A)_n-B-(A*)_m-G with a compound H-V;

(b) reacting a compound W-(A)_n-B-(A*)_m-H with a compound G-V;

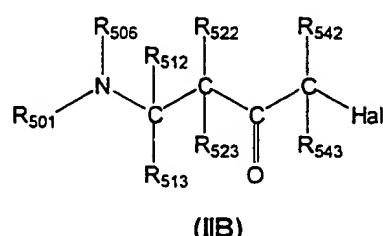
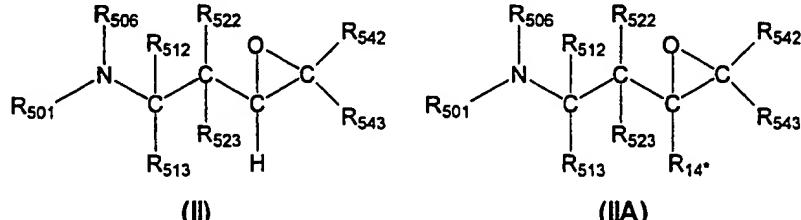
(c) reacting a compound W-H with a compound G-(A)_n-B-(A*)_m-V; and

20 (d) reacting a compound W-G with a compound H-(A)_n-B-(A*)_m-V;

wherein G is a leaving group; optionally in the presence of a strong base and/or a coupling agent.

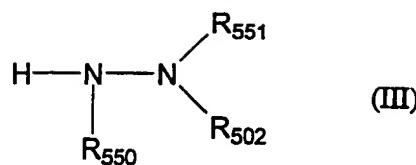
13. A process for preparing a compound of formula (IB) according to claim 3 wherein B is a substituted carbon atom and y is 0, said process being selected from:

25 (a) wherein x is 1, reacting a compound of formula (IIA), (IIB) or (IIC)



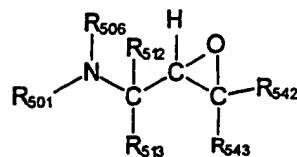
with a compound of formula (III)

183

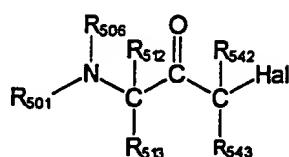


and

(b) wherein x is 0, reacting a compound of formula (IIC) or (IID)



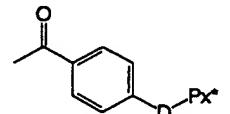
(IIC)



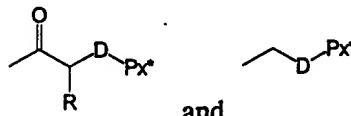
(IID)

5 with a compound of formula (III) as previously defined.

14. A process for enhancing the water-solubility of a pharmaceutical or veterinary substance, comprising derivatising a functional group of said substance with a solubilising



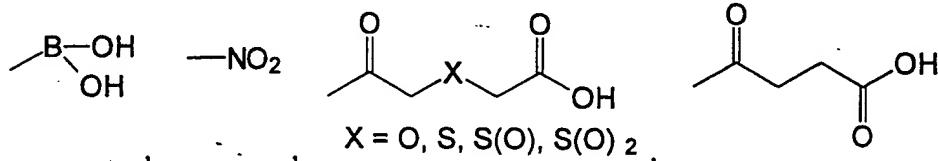
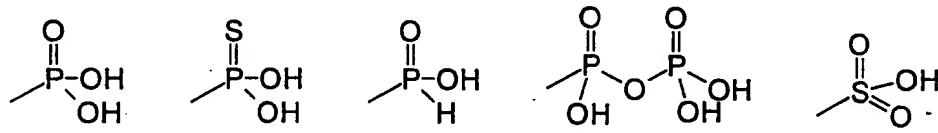
group Px, wherein Px is selected from the group consisting of Px*,

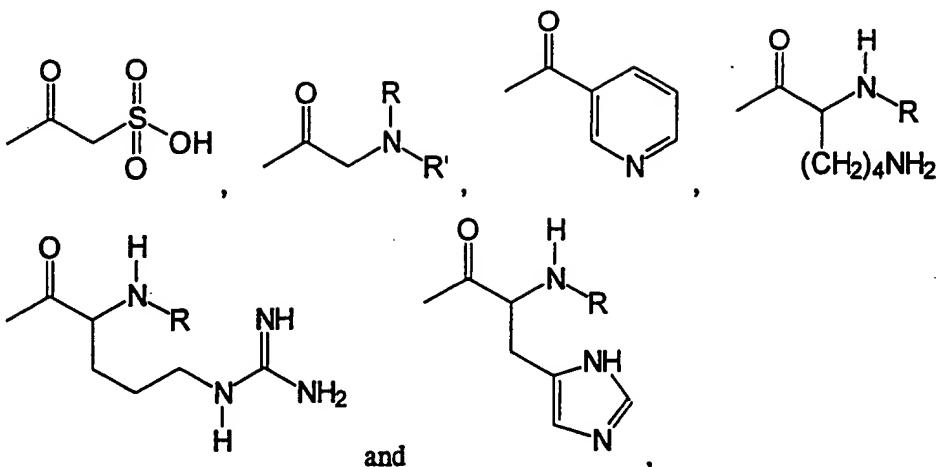


, and

wherein D is O or S, R is H or C₁-C₄ alkyl, and wherein

10 Px* is selected from:

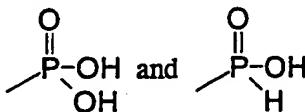




said functional group being capable of being derivatised with said solubilising group Px.

15. A process according to claim 14 wherein said substance is an HIV protease 5 inhibitor.

16. A process according to claim 14 wherein said solubilising group Px is selected from



17. A process according to claim 14 comprising reacting a hydroxyl group of said substance with phosphorous acid and optionally oxidising the product so obtained.

10 18. The product of the process of claim 12.

19. The product of the process of claim 14.

20. A pharmaceutical composition comprising an effective amount of a compound of any one of claims 1 to 11, 18 or 19 together with at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, diluent, excipient and/or adjuvant.

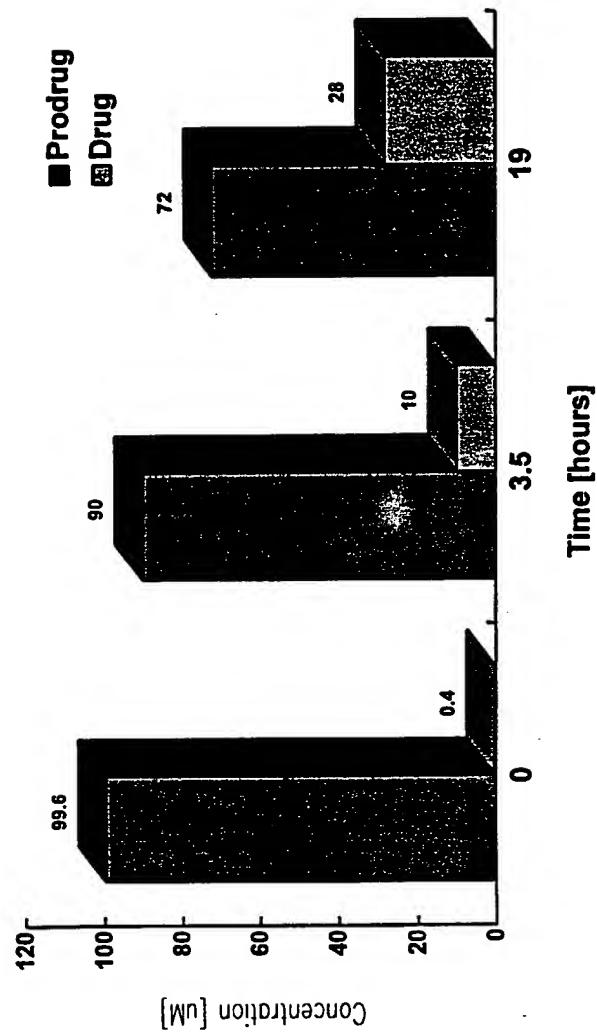
15 21. A process for preparing a pharmaceutical composition according to claim 20, comprising mixing a compound according to any one of claims 1 to 11, 18 or 19 with at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, diluent, excipient and/or adjuvant.

22. A method for the treatment or prophylaxis of a retroviral infection, comprising administering to a patient in need of such treatment or prophylaxis a therapeutically 20 effective amount of a compound according to any one of claims 1 to 11, 18 or 19, or of a composition according to claim 20.

23. A method according to claim 22 wherein said retroviral infection is AIDS.

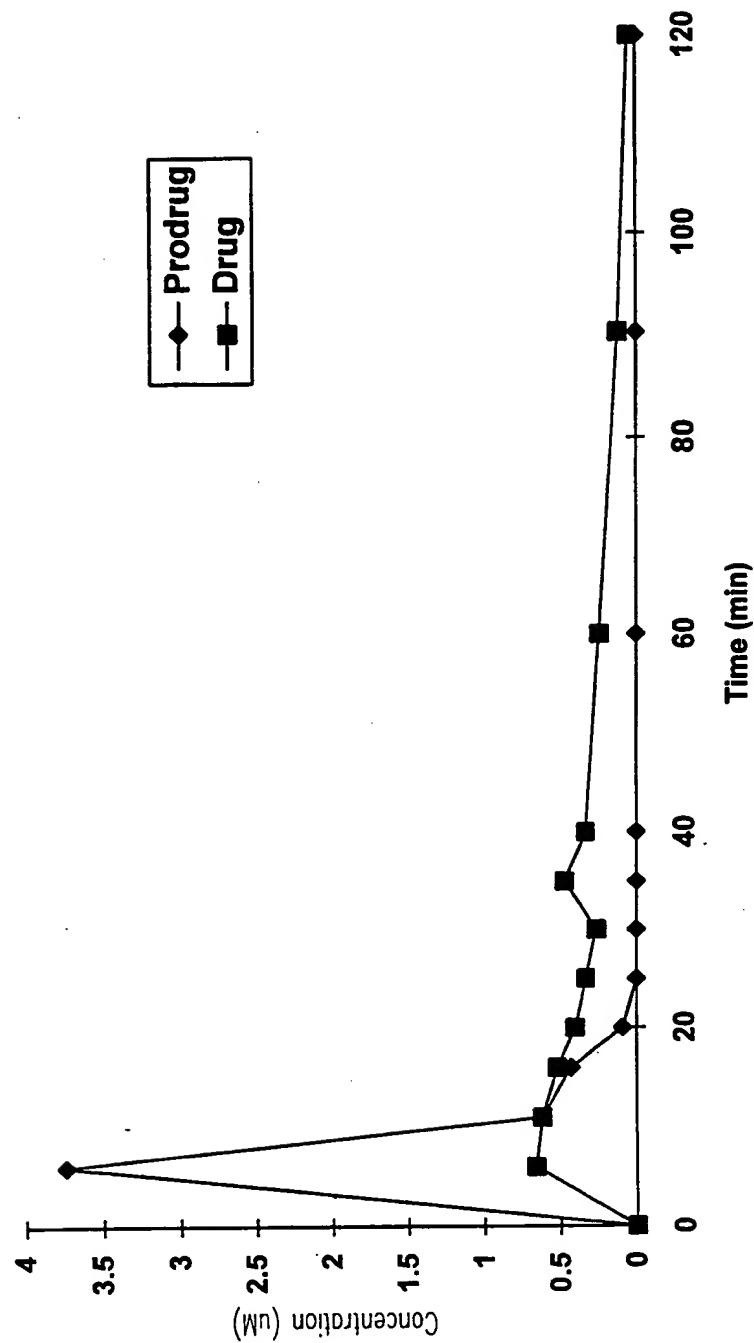
1/3

Figure 1



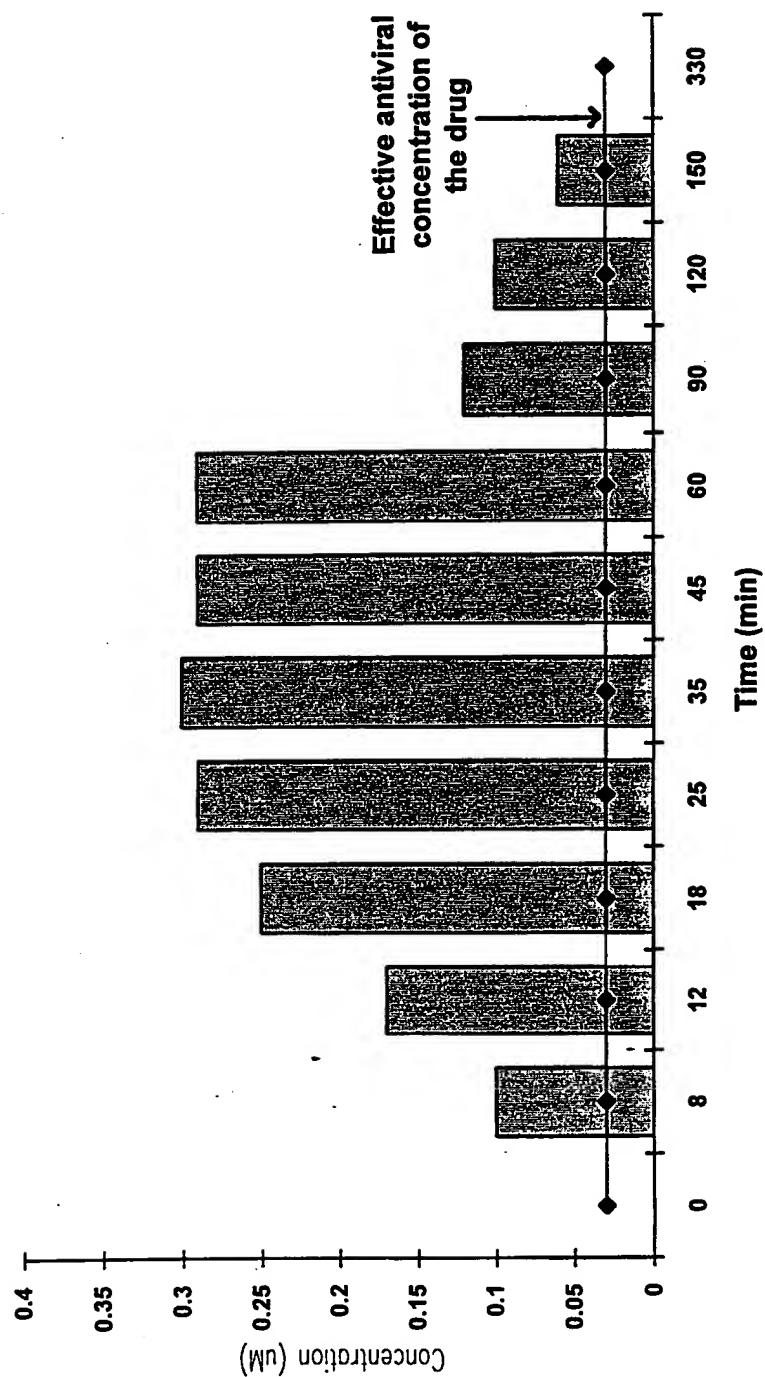
2/3

Figure 2



3/3

Figure 3



INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/AU 94/00538

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

Int. Cl.⁶ C07D 255/02 487/04 C07F 9/60 9/6509

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)
IPC C07C C07D C07F C07K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base, and where practicable, search terms used)

DERWENT AND JAPIO: (retroviral or HIV) protease: AND (solubil: or phosph: or hydrol: or polar:)

STN

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to Claim No.																																								
X	<p>S Budavari, "The Merck Index", 11th Edition, 1989, Merck & Co., Inc. (Rahway N J, USA), Monograph Numbers:</p> <table> <tr><td>32</td><td>36</td><td>47</td><td>423</td><td>481</td><td>1507</td><td>1540</td><td>1543</td></tr> <tr><td>1575</td><td>1591</td><td>1592</td><td>1593</td><td>1597</td><td>2785</td><td>3676</td><td>3679</td></tr> <tr><td>3680</td><td>3681</td><td>3716</td><td>3718</td><td>3751</td><td>3755</td><td>5760</td><td>5865</td></tr> <tr><td>5867</td><td>5868</td><td>5938</td><td>6001</td><td>6047</td><td>7809</td><td>7811</td><td>7835</td></tr> <tr><td>7836</td><td>7837</td><td>7839</td><td>7854</td><td>7855</td><td>9247</td><td>9257</td><td>9629</td></tr> </table>	32	36	47	423	481	1507	1540	1543	1575	1591	1592	1593	1597	2785	3676	3679	3680	3681	3716	3718	3751	3755	5760	5865	5867	5868	5938	6001	6047	7809	7811	7835	7836	7837	7839	7854	7855	9247	9257	9629	1-5
32	36	47	423	481	1507	1540	1543																																			
1575	1591	1592	1593	1597	2785	3676	3679																																			
3680	3681	3716	3718	3751	3755	5760	5865																																			
5867	5868	5938	6001	6047	7809	7811	7835																																			
7836	7837	7839	7854	7855	9247	9257	9629																																			

Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.

See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents :

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T"

later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X"

document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y"

document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art

"&"

document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search
23 December 1994 (23.12.94)

Date of mailing of the international search report
10 Jan 1995 (10.1.95)

Name and mailing address of the ISA/AU

AUSTRALIAN INDUSTRIAL PROPERTY ORGANISATION
PO BOX 200
WODEN ACT 2606
AUSTRALIA

Authorized officer

S R IDRUS



Facsimile No. 06 2853929

Telephone No. (06) 2832536

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/AU 94/00538

C(Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate of the relevant passages	Relevant to Claim No.
X	J Buckingham, "Dictionary of Organic Compounds", 5th Edition, Volumes One to Five, 1982, and First to Tenth Supplements, 1983-1992, Chapman & Hall (New York, USA), DOC Numbers: A-00943 A-01166 A-02605 A-02609 B-03483 C-03037 E-00484 E-00497 E-00671 E-00792 E-00802 E-01150 H-01166 H-1411 H-03303 M-00319 M-00463 M-00464 M-02065 M-03323 O-00774 P-02347 P-02360 P-02364 P-02365 P-02480 T-02031 M-10024 P-40199 H-50142 H-50163 M-60022 O-80089 A-90077 M-100052	1-5
P,X	AU,A,37391/93 (NARHEX LIMITED) 5 October 1993 (05.10.93) whole document	1-23
E	AU,A,62070/94 (HOECHST A G) 11 October 1994 (11.10.94) whole document & DE,A,4308096 15 September 1994 (15.09.94)	1-23
X	Chimica Oggi, May 1991, Tomasselli et al., "The complexities of AIDS: An assessment of the HIV protease as a therapeutic target," pages 6 to 27. Figure 8 and Tables II-IV.	1-5,20-23
X	Journal of Medicinal Chemistry, Volume 34, Number 8, August 1991, Huff J R., "HIV Protease: A novel chemotherapeutic target for AIDS", pages 2305 to 2314. Tables I-VIII, pages 2310-2313	1-5,20-23
X	US,A,5221665 (SKILES) 22 June 1993 (22.06.93) whole document	1-5,20,21
A		22,23
X	US,A,5116835 (RUEGER et al) 26 May 1992 (26.05.92) whole document	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	US,A,5126326 (ANDERSON et al) 30 June 1992 (30.06.92) whole document	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	US,A,5132400 (GAMMILL et al) 21 July 1992 (21.07.92)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	US,A,5145951 (VOGES et al) 8 September 1992 (08.09.92)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	US,A,5198426 (HAMBY et al) 30 March 1993 (30.03.93)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	US,A,5212157 (ANDERSON et al) 18 May 1993 (18.05.93)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	US,A,5215968 (NICKEL et al) 1 June 1993 (01.06.93)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	US,A,5221667 (KALTENBRONN et al) 22 June 1993 (22.06.93)	1-5,12,13,20-23
P,X	US,A,5250563 (CHEN et al) 5 October 1993 (05.10.93)	1-5,12,13,20-23
P,X	US,A,5268361 (ALMQUIST et al) 7 December 1993 (07.12.93)	1-5,12,13,20-23
P,X	US,A,5294720 (JADHAV et al) 15 March 1994 (15.03.94)	1-5,12,13,20-23
P,X	US,A,5296604 (HANKO et al) 22 March 1994 (22.03.94) cont....	1-5,12,13,20-23

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/AU 94/00538

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate of the relevant passages	Relevant to Claim No.
X	WO,A1,90/09191 (SCHRAMM et al) 23 August 1990 (23.08.90)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	WO,A1,91/08221 (WISCONSIN ALUMNI RESEARCH FOUNDATION) 13 June 1991 (13.06.91)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	WO,A1,91/10442 (SMITHKLINE BEECHAM CORPORATION) 25 July 1991 (25.07.91)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	WO,A1,92/15319 (SMITHKLINE BEECHAM CORPORATION) 17 September 1992 (17.09.92)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	WO,A1,92/21696 (SRIINTERNATIONAL) 10 December 1992 (10.12.92)	1-5,12,13,20-23
P,X	EP,A1,574135 (NIKKO KYODO CO LTD) 15 December 1993 (15.12.93)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	EP,A1,528242 (BAYER AG) 24 February 1993 (24.02.93)	1-5,12,13,20-23
P,X	EP,A1,519433 (HOECHST AG) 23 December 1993 (23.12.93)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	EP,A1,432595 (BAYER AG) 19 June 1991 (19.06.91)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,35700/89 (THE UPJOHN COMPANY) 29 November 1989 (29.11.89)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,42308/89 (MOLECULAR THERAPEUTICS,INC) 16 August 1990 (16.08.90)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,45665/89 (HOECHST AG) 7 June 1990 (07.06.90)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,46115/89 (HOECHST AG) 28 June 1990 (28.06.90)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,53716/90 (HOECHST AG) 8 November 1990 (08.11.90)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,63221/90 (HOECHST AG) 11 April 1991 (11.04.91)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,66334/90 (THE UPJOHN COMPANY) 31 May 1991 (31.05.91)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,71319/91 (BIO-MEGA/BOEHRINGER INGELHEIM RESEARCH INC) 29 August 1991 (29.08.91)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,71320/91 (BIO-MEGA/BOEHRINGER INGELHEIM RESEARCH INC) 19 September 1991 (19.09.91)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,71323/91 (BIO-MEGA/BOEHRINGER INGELHEIM RESEARCH INC) 29 August 1991 (29.08.91)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,77326/91 (CIBA-GEIGY AG) 5 December 1991 (05.12.91)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,81910/91 (SMITHKLINE BEECHAM CORPORATION) 4 February 1992 (04.02.92)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,82054/91 (THE DUPONT MERCK PHARMACEUTICAL COMPANY) 31 December 1991 (31.12.91)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,82313/91 (SMITHKLINE BEECHAM CORPORATION) 4 February 1992 (04.02.92)	1-5,12,13,20-23

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/AU 94/00538

(Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate of the relevant passages	Relevant to Claim No.
X	AU,A1,83206/91 (SMITHKLINE BEECHAM CORPORATION) 4 February 1992 (04.02.92)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,85877/91 (MERCK PATENT GMBH) 30 April 1992 (30.04.92)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,87309/91 (HOECHST AG) 26 May 1992 (26.05.92)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,87409/91 (THE UPJOHN COMPANY) 17 March 1992 (17.03.92)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,87594/91 (THE UPJOHN COMPANY) 30 April 1992 (30.04.92)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,88900/91 (JAPAN ENERGY CORPORATION) 18 June 1992 (18.06.92)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,89941/91 (AMERICAN CYANAMID COMPANY) 9 July 1992 (09.07.92)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,90531/91 (MONSANTO COMPANY) 11 June 1992 (11.06.92)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,90851/91 (MONSANTO COMPANY et al) 11 June 1992 (11.06.92)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,90925/91 (MONSANTO COMPANY et al) 11 June 1992 (11.06.92)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,91223/91 (SMITHKLINE BEECHAM CORPORATION) 25 June 1992 (25.06.92)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,91251/91 (MONSANTO COMPANY) 11 June 1992 (11.06.92)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,91332/91 (MONSANTO COMPANY) 11 June 1992 (11.06.92)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,91790/91 (MERRELL DOW PHARMACEUTICALS INC) 17 August 1992 (17.08.92)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,10812/92 (SANKYO COMPANY LIMITED) 13 August 1992 (13.08.92)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,18355/92 (HOECHST AG) 24 December 1992 (24.12.92)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,19373/92 (CIBA-GEIGY AG) 7 January 1993 (07.01.93)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,21944/92 (SANDOZ LTD) 11 February 1993 (11.02.93)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,22889/92 (CIBA-GEIGY AG) 18 March 1993 (18.03.93)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,24129/92 (SMITHKLINE BEECHAM CORPORATION) 23 February 1993 (23.02.93)-	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,24690/92 (SCHERING CORPORATION) 16 March 1993 (16.03.93)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,26424/92 (SMITHKLINE BEECHAM CORPORATION) 5 April 1993 (05.04.93)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,31628/93 (LABORATORIES MAYOLY SPINDLER (SARL) et al) 15 June 1993 (15.06.93)	1-5,12,13,20-23

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/AU 94/00538

C(Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate of the relevant passages	Relevant to Claim No.
P,X	AU,A1,35165/93 (BIO-MEGA INGELHEIM RESEARCH INC) 16 September 1993 (16.09.93)	1-5,12,13,20-23
P,X	AU,A1,35621/93 (CIBA-GEIGY AG) 7 October 1993 (07.10.93)	1-5,12,13,20-23
P,X	AU,A1,37160/93 (BAYER AG) 18 November 1993 (18.11.93)	1-5,12,13,20-23
P,X	AU,A1,38808/93 (BIO-MEGA/BOEHRINGER INGELHEIM RESEARCH INC) 5 October 1993 (05.10.93)	1-5,12,13,20-23
P,X	AU,A1,41230/93 (F HOFFMAN-LA ROCHE AG) 23 December 1993 (23.12.93)	1-5,12,13,20-23
P,X	AU,A1,41659/93 (E R SQUIBB & SONS INC) 27 January 1994 (27.01.94)	1-5,12,13,20-23
X	AU,A1,44930/93 (BAYER AG) 31 March 1993 (31.03.93)	1-5,12,13,20-23
P,X	AU,A1,49072/93 (CIBA-GEIGY AG) 5 May 1994 (05.05.94)	1-5,12,13,20-23

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT
Information on patent family memb

International application No.
PCT/AU 94/00538

This Annex lists the known "A" publication level patent family members relating to the patent documents cited in the above-mentioned international search report. The Australian Patent Office is in no way liable for these particulars which are merely given for the purpose of information.

Patent Document Cited in Search Report		Patent Family Member						
AU A1 37391/93		WO A1 9318006						
AU A1 62070/94		DE A1 4308096	WO A1 9421604					
US 5221665		CA AA 2002819	EP A3 369391	JP A2 2256657				
US 5116835		AU A1 46005/89 DE A1 3841520 FI A0 895845 HU B 203369 NO A 894943 ZA A 8909408	AU B2 630386 DK A 6204/89 HU A0 896480 IL A0 92589 NZ A 231662	CA AA 2005023 EP A3 372537 HU A2 52526 JP A2 2202898 PT A 92497				
US 5126326		AU A1 56288/90 EP A1 401675	AU B2 645751 JP A2 3041091	CA AA 2016663				
US 5132400		AU A1 25415/88 DK A0 977/90 JP T2 3500772 WO A1 8903842	AU B2 619222 EP A1 395664 NO A 901771	DK A 977/90 FI A0 902006 NO A0 901771				
US 5145951		DE A1 4001236	EP A3 437729	JP A2 4210948				
US 5198426		AU A1 48348/90 PT A 92756	CAAA 2006839 ZA A 8909967	EP A1 380805 WO A1 9007521				
US 5212157		AU A1 56289/90 EP A1 401676	AU B2 646806 JP A2 3047196	CA AA 2016656				
US 5215968		AU A1 46003/89 DD A5 290895 EP A3 373497 HU A2 54176 JP A2 2202899 ZA A 8909407	AU B2 634188 DEA1 3841732 FI A0 895874 HU B 206371 NO A 894944	CN A 1043132 DK A 6199/89 HU A0 896475 IL A0 92618 PT A 92496				
US 5221667		AU A1 72548/91	WOA2 9110679					
US 5268361		EP A1 587767	JP T2 6508137	WO A1 9221696				
US 5294720		AU A1 82054/91 EP A1 532693 HU A2 64738 NZ A 238395 ZA A 9104194	BR A 9106540 FI A 925441 IL A0 98390 OA A 9719	CA AA 2084087 HU A0 9203505 NO A 924615 WO A3 9118866				
WO A1 9009191		EP A1 409962	JP T2 4503214					
WO A1 9110442		EP A4 594586	JP T2 5503703					

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT
Information on patent family members

International application No.
PCT/AU 94/00538

WO A1 9215319	EP A4 575500	JP T2 6505495	
WO A1 9221696	CA AA 2110381 US A 5268361	EP A1 587767	JP T2 6508137
EP 574135	JP A2 5310687	JP A2 6247948	JP A2 6192246
EP 528242	CA AA 2075547	DEA1 4126485	JP A2 5294916
EP 519433	BR A 9202325 CZ A3 9201906 HU A0 9202062 MX A1 9203070 ZA A 9204522	CAAA 2071744 EP A1 519433 HU A2 61744 NO A 922426	CN A 1068112 FI A 922875 JP A2 5186461 PL A1 294870
EP 432595	CA AA 2032034 US A 5162538	DEA1 3941235	JP A2 3255073
AU A1 35700/89	EP A1 413750	JP T2 3504127	WO A1 8910920
AU A1 42308/89	DK A 4760/89 IL A0 91768 PT A 91828	EP A3 361341 JP A2 2191243 ZA A 8907338	FI A 894541 NO A 893834
AU A1 45665/89	CA AA 2004303 EP 371467 JP A2 2193997 PT A 92442	DEA1 3840452 FI A0 895718 NO A 894790 ZA A 8909152	DK A 6054/89 IL A0 92497 NZ A 231578
AU A1 46115/89	AT E 93863 DE C0 58905462 ES T3 2059688 HU A2 53664 JP A2 2204475 US A 5185324	CAAA 2005422 DK A 6298/89 FI A0 895921 HU B 205369 NO A 895002 ZA A 8909507	DE A1 3842067 EP B1 373549 HU A0 896606 IL A0 92660 PT A 92558
AU A1 53716/90	CA AA 2015070 DE A1 3913272 HU A0 902505 IL A0 94144 NZ A 233391	CN A 1047084 EP A1 394853 HU A2 54384 JP A2 2295998 PT A 93797	CS A2 9001979 FI A0 901957 HU B 205770 NO A 901759 ZA A 9002995
AU A1 63221/90	BR A 9004852 EP A3 428849 IL A0 95810 NZ A 235461	CAAA 2026382 HU A0 906244 JP A2 3120245 PL A1 287114	CN A 1050545 HU A2 55797 NO A 904208 PT A 95448
AU A1 66334/90	CA AA 2066644 WO A1 9106561	EP A1 497835	JP T2 5501879
AU A1 71319/91	CA AA 2036398 NZ A 237186	EP A3 443559	JP A2 4211697
AU A1 71320/91	CA AA 2036397	EP A3 443573	NZ A 237185
AU 71323/91	CA AA 2036413	EP A3 443560	NZ A 237184
AU A1 77326/91	CA AA 2043603 JP A2 4235999	EP A3 459465 PT A 97782	IL A0 98260 ZA A 9104136
AU A1 81910/91	EP A4 538374	JP T2 5508846	WO A1 9200954

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT
Information on patent family memb

International application No.
PCT/AU 94/00538

AU 82054/91	BR A 9106540 FI A 925441 IL A0 98390 OA A 9719 US A 5294720	CAAA 2084087 HUA0 9203505 NO A 924615 WOA3 9118866	EP A1 532693 HU A2 64738 NZ A 238395 ZA A 9104194
AU A1 82313/91	EP A4 538383 PT A1 98229	JP T2 5508851 WOA1 9200956	MX A1 9100121 ZA A 9105270
AU 83206/91	EP A4 538396 PT A 98227 ZA A 9105271	JP T2 6501681 PT A 98228	MX A1 9100120 WO A1 9200948
AU A1 85877/91	CA AA 2053573 EP A3 481311 PT A 99262	CS A3 9103164 HU A0 913277 ZA A 9108294	DE A1 4033062 JP A2 4316548
AU A1 87309/91	EP A1 483403	WOA1 9207845	
AU A1 87409/91	EP A1 546115	JP T2 6500561	WO A1 9203472
AU A1 87594/91	EP A1 552247	JP T2 6502403	WO A1 9206996
AU A1 88900/91	CA AA 2056911 NO A 920023	EP A3 490667 JP A2 5170722	FI A 915819 ZA A 9109721
AU A1 89941/91	CA AA 2057972 EP A3 492136 HU A2 59655 NO A 915030 ZA A 9110016	CN A 1062536 FI A 916022 IL A0 100161 PL A1 292869	CS A3 9103846 HU A0 914036 JP A2 4334349 PT A 99862
AU A1 90851/91	EP A1 554400 JP T2 6502859	ES T1 2059289 WOA1 9208698	HU A0 9301446
AU A1 90531/91 AU A1 90925/91 AU A1 91251/91 AU A1 91332/91	CA AA 2096407 CA AA 2096528 EP A1 558657 ES T1 2059294 HU A0 9301445 IL A0 100084 IL A0 100087 JP T2 6503092 PT A 99553 PT A 99552 WO A1 9208688	CAAA 2096409 EP A1 558603 EP A1 558673 ES T1 2059295 HUA0 9301447 IL A0 100085 JP T2 6502860 JP T2 6505963 PT A 99554 PT A 99552 WOA1 9208699 WOA1 9208701	CA AA 2096525 EP A1 558630 ES 2059293 ES T1 2059296 IL A0 100083 IL A0 100086 JP T2 6502866 PT A 99551 PT A 99555 WO A1 9208700
AU A1 91223/91	EP A4 559793 PT A 99653	JP T2 6503568 WOA1 9209297	MX A1 9102311 ZA A 9109439
AU A1 91790/91	EP A1 565631 HU A2 65739 NZ A 241099 ZA A 9110141	FI A 932997 IL A0 100477 PT A 99961	HU A0 9301918 NO A 932377 WO A1 9212123
AU A1 10812/92	CA AA 2060844 EP A1 498680 IL A0 100899	CN A 1064683 HUA0 9200392 JP A2 5078311	CS A3 9200356 HU A2 60282

AU A1 18355/92	BR A 9202327 CZ A3 9201879 HU A0 9202064 NO A 922428	CAAA 2071743 EP A3 519434 JP A2 5170768 PL A1 294866	CN A 1068117 FI A 922876 MX A1 9203076 ZA A 9204521
AU A1 19373/92	CA AA 2072785 EP A1 521827 HU A2 62602 MX A1 9203899 ZA A 9204914	CN A 1068333 FI A 923017 IL A0 102354 NO A 922611	CZ A3 9202062 HU A0 9202215 JP A2 5201945 PL A1 295100
AU A1 21944/92	CA AA 2109326 IL A0 102362	EP A1 594656 MXA1 9203836	GB A0 9203884 WO A1 9301166
AU A1 22889/92	CA AA 2077948 FI A 924035 IL A0 103126 NO A 923533	CZA3 9202802 HUA0 9202925 JP A2 5230095 PL A1 295905	EP A3 532466 HU A2 63632 MX A1 9205208
AU A1 24129/92	EP A1 602069 WO A1 9302057	IL A0 102534 APA0 9200410	PT A 100704 CN A 1071434
AU A1 24690/92	EP A1 533342	EP A1 599983	WO A1 9304043
AU A1 26424/92	EP A1 603309 WO A1 9305026	MXA1 9205222	PT A 100865
AU A1 31628/93	CA AA 2099490 JP T2 6504295	EP A3 542630 WOA3 9309791	FR A1 2683723
AU A1 35165/93	CA AA 2092653 JP A2 6025158	EP A1 560269 PL A1 298038	HU A0 9300729
AU A1 35621/93	CA AA 2093109 IL A0 105228	EP A3 565484 JP A2 6049093	FI A 931415 NO A 931242
AU A1 37160/93	CA AA 2095968 HU A0 9301388 JP A2 6009628	DEA1 4215874 HU A2 65911	EP A1 569811 IL A0 105669
AU A1 38808/93	AP A0 9300495 IL A0 105035	EP B1 560268 JP A2 6073004	FI A 944217 WO A1 9318003
AU A1 41230/93	BG A 97868 CN A 1081442 FI A 932767 IL A0 105977 PL A1 299312	BR A 9302359 CZA3 9301158 HUA0 9301704 JP A2 6056825 SI A 9300288	CA AA 2098063 EP A3 574781 HU A2 64536 NO A 932204
AU A1 41659/93	CA AA 2100894 FI A 933277 JP A2 6206857	CN A 1085546 HUA0 9302080 NO A 932620	EP A2 580402 IL A0 106431 PL A1 299738
AU A1 44930/93	CA AA 2106892 EP A1 589322 IL A0 107068	CN A 1086809 HUA0 9302706 JP A2 6239827	DE A1 4232173 HU A2 65291
AU A1 49072/93	CA AA 2108934 EP A1 594540 HU A2 65876 NO A 933816	CN A 1089606 FI A 934634 IL A0 107356	CZ A3 9302238 HU A0 9303011 JP A2 6228132